

# C++ Primer

Stanley B.Lippman

Josée Lajoie

Barbara E.Moo

# Preface

*To myself, keep calm and carry on.*

— KSC

# Contents

<b>Chapter 1 Getting Started</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Writing a Simple C++ Program . . . . .	2
1.1.1 Compiling and Executing Our Program . . . . .	3
1.2 A First Look at Input/Output . . . . .	4
1.3 A Word about Comments . . . . .	7
1.4 Flow of Control . . . . .	8
1.4.1 The while Statement . . . . .	8
1.4.2 The for Statement . . . . .	9
1.4.3 Reading an Unknown Number of Inputs . . . . .	10
1.4.4 The if Statement . . . . .	12
1.5 Introducing Classes . . . . .	14
1.5.1 The Sales_item Class . . . . .	14
1.5.2 A First Look at Member Functions . . . . .	16
1.6 The Bookstore Program . . . . .	17
Chapter Summary . . . . .	19
Defined Terms . . . . .	19

---

## Part I The Basics 22

---

<b>Chapter 2 Variables and Basic Types</b>	<b>24</b>
2.1 Primitive Built-in Types . . . . .	25
2.1.1 Arithmetic Types . . . . .	25
2.1.2 Type Conversions . . . . .	27
2.1.3 Literals . . . . .	29
2.2 Variables . . . . .	32
2.2.1 Variable Definitions . . . . .	32
2.2.2 Variable Declarations and Definitions . . . . .	35
2.2.3 Identifiers . . . . .	36
2.2.4 Scope of a Name . . . . .	37
2.3 Compound Types . . . . .	38
2.3.1 References . . . . .	39
2.3.2 Pointers . . . . .	40
2.3.3 Understanding Compound Type Declarations . . . . .	44
2.4 const Qualifier . . . . .	46
2.4.1 References to const . . . . .	47
2.4.2 Pointers and const . . . . .	48
2.4.3 Top-Level const . . . . .	50
2.4.4 constexpr and Constant Expressions . . . . .	51
2.5 Dealing with Types . . . . .	52
2.5.1 Type Aliases . . . . .	53
2.5.2 The auto Type Specifier . . . . .	53
2.5.3 The decltype Type Specifier . . . . .	54

2.6	Defining Our Own Data Structures . . . . .	56
2.6.1	Defining the Sales_data Type . . . . .	56
2.6.2	Using the Sales_data Type . . . . .	57
2.6.3	Writing Our Own Header Files . . . . .	59
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	61
	Defined Terms . . . . .	61

## Chapter 3 Strings, Vectors, and Arrays 64

3.1	Namespace using Declarations . . . . .	65
3.2	Library <b>string</b> Type . . . . .	66
3.2.1	Defining and Initializing strings . . . . .	66
3.2.2	Operations on strings . . . . .	67
3.2.3	Dealing with the Characters in a string . . . . .	70
3.3	Library <b>vector</b> Type . . . . .	74
3.3.1	Defining and Initializing vectors . . . . .	75
3.3.2	Adding Elements to a vector . . . . .	77
3.3.3	Other vector Operations . . . . .	78
3.4	Introducing Iterators . . . . .	81
3.4.1	Using Iterators . . . . .	81
3.4.2	Iterator Arithmetic . . . . .	84
3.5	Arrays . . . . .	86
3.5.1	Defining and Initializing Built-in Arrays . . . . .	86
3.5.2	Accessing the Elements of an Array . . . . .	88
3.5.3	Pointers and Arrays . . . . .	89
3.5.4	C-Style Character Strings . . . . .	93
3.5.5	Interfacing to Older Code . . . . .	94
3.6	Multidimensional Arrays . . . . .	95
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	100
	Defined Terms . . . . .	100

## Chapter 4 Expressions 102

4.1	Fundamentals . . . . .	103
4.1.1	Basic Concepts . . . . .	103
4.1.2	Precedence and Associativity . . . . .	104
4.1.3	Order of Evaluation . . . . .	105
4.2	Arithmetic Operators . . . . .	106
4.3	Logical and Relational Operators . . . . .	108
4.4	Assignment Operators . . . . .	110
4.5	Increment and Decrement Operators . . . . .	112
4.6	The Member Access Operators . . . . .	114
4.7	The Conditional Operator . . . . .	115
4.8	The Bitwise Operators . . . . .	116
4.9	The sizeof Operator . . . . .	119
4.10	Comma Operator . . . . .	120
4.11	Type Conversions . . . . .	121
4.11.1	The Arithmetic Conversions . . . . .	121
4.11.2	Other Implicit Conversions . . . . .	123
4.11.3	Explicit Conversions . . . . .	124
4.12	Operator Precedence Table . . . . .	126
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	128
	Defined Terms . . . . .	128

## Chapter 5 Statements 130

5.1	Simple Statements . . . . .	131
5.2	Statement Scope . . . . .	132
5.3	Conditional Statements . . . . .	133
5.3.1	The if Statement . . . . .	133
5.3.2	The switch Statement . . . . .	136
5.4	Iterative Statements . . . . .	141

5.4.1	The while Statement . . . . .	141
5.4.2	Traditional for Statement . . . . .	141
5.4.3	Range for Statement . . . . .	143
5.4.4	The do while Statement . . . . .	144
5.5	Jump Statements . . . . .	145
5.5.1	The break Statement . . . . .	145
5.5.2	The continue Statement . . . . .	146
5.5.3	The goto Statement . . . . .	146
5.6	try Blocks and Exception Handling . . . . .	147
5.6.1	A throw Expression . . . . .	147
5.6.2	The try Block . . . . .	148
5.6.3	Standard Exceptions . . . . .	150
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	152
	Defined Terms . . . . .	152

## Chapter 6 Functions 154

6.1	Function Basics . . . . .	155
6.1.1	Local Objects . . . . .	157
6.1.2	Function Declarations . . . . .	158
6.1.3	Separate Compilation . . . . .	159
6.2	Argument Passing . . . . .	159
6.2.1	Passing Arguments by Value . . . . .	160
6.2.2	Passing Arguments by Reference . . . . .	160
6.2.3	const Parameters and Arguments . . . . .	162
6.2.4	Array Parameters . . . . .	164
6.2.5	main: Handling Command-Line Options . . . . .	167
6.2.6	Functions with Varying Parameters . . . . .	168
6.3	Return Types and the return Statement . . . . .	170
6.3.1	Functions with No Return Value . . . . .	170
6.3.2	Functions That Return a Value . . . . .	170
6.3.3	Returning a Pointer to an Array . . . . .	174
6.4	Overloaded Functions . . . . .	175
6.4.1	Overloading and Scope . . . . .	178
6.5	Features for Specialized Uses . . . . .	179
6.5.1	Default Arguments . . . . .	179
6.5.2	Inline and constexpr Functions . . . . .	181
6.5.3	Aids for Debugging . . . . .	183
6.6	Function Matching . . . . .	184
6.6.1	Argument Type Conversions . . . . .	186
6.7	Pointers to Functions . . . . .	188
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	191
	Defined Terms . . . . .	191

## Chapter 7 Classes 193

7.1	Defining Abstract Data Types . . . . .	194
7.1.1	Designing the Sales_data Class . . . . .	194
7.1.2	Designing the revised Sales_data Class . . . . .	195
7.1.3	Defining Nonmember Class-Related Functions . . . . .	198
7.1.4	Constructors . . . . .	199
7.1.5	Copy, Assignment, and Destruction . . . . .	203
7.2	Access Control and Encapsulation . . . . .	203
7.2.1	Friends . . . . .	204
7.3	Additional Class Features . . . . .	206
7.3.1	Class Members Revisited . . . . .	206
7.3.2	Functions That Return *this . . . . .	209
7.3.3	Class Types . . . . .	211
7.3.4	Friendship Revisited . . . . .	212
7.4	Class Scope . . . . .	214
7.4.1	Name Lookup and Class Scope . . . . .	215

7.5	Constructors Revisited . . . . .	218
7.5.1	Constructor Initializer List . . . . .	219
7.5.2	Delegating Constructors . . . . .	221
7.5.3	The Role of the Default Constructor . . . . .	222
7.5.4	Implicit Class-Type Conversions . . . . .	224
7.5.5	Aggregate Classes . . . . .	226
7.5.6	Literal Classes . . . . .	227
7.6	static Class Members . . . . .	228
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	232
	Defined Terms . . . . .	232

## Part II The C++ Library

234

### Chapter 8 The IO Library 235

8.1	The IO Classes . . . . .	236
8.1.1	No Copy or Assign for IO Objects . . . . .	237
8.1.2	Condition States . . . . .	237
8.1.3	Managing the Output Buffer . . . . .	240
8.2	File Input and Output . . . . .	241
8.2.1	Using File Stream Objects . . . . .	242
8.2.2	File Modes . . . . .	244
8.3	string Streams . . . . .	245
8.3.1	Using an <code>istringstream</code> . . . . .	245
8.3.2	Using <code>ostringstreams</code> . . . . .	246
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	248
	Defined Terms . . . . .	248

### Chapter 9 Sequential Containers 249

9.1	Overview of the Sequential Containers . . . . .	250
9.2	Container Library Overview . . . . .	252
9.2.1	Iterators . . . . .	253
9.2.2	Container Type Members . . . . .	255
9.2.3	<code>begin</code> and <code>end</code> Members . . . . .	255
9.2.4	Defining and Initializing a Container . . . . .	256
9.2.5	Assignment and <code>swap</code> . . . . .	258
9.2.6	Container Size Operations . . . . .	260
9.2.7	Relational Operators . . . . .	260
9.3	Sequential Container Operations . . . . .	261
9.3.1	Adding Elements to a Sequential Container . . . . .	261
9.3.2	Accessing Elements . . . . .	265
9.3.3	Erasing Elements . . . . .	265
9.3.4	Specialized <code>forward_list</code> Operations . . . . .	265
9.3.5	Resizing a Container . . . . .	265
9.3.6	Container Operations May Invalidate Iterators . . . . .	265
9.4	How a vector Grows . . . . .	265
9.5	Additional string Operations . . . . .	265
9.5.1	Other Ways to Construct strings . . . . .	265
9.5.2	Other Ways to Change a string . . . . .	265
9.5.3	string Search Operations . . . . .	265
9.5.4	The <code>compare</code> Functions . . . . .	265
9.5.5	Numeric Conversions . . . . .	265
9.6	Container Adaptors . . . . .	265
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	266
	Defined Terms . . . . .	266

<b>Chapter 10 Generic Algorithms</b>	<b>267</b>
10.1 Overview	268
10.2 A First Look at the Algorithms	268
10.2.1 Read-Only Algorithms	268
10.2.2 Algorithms That Write Container Elements	268
10.2.3 Algorithms That Reorder Container Elements	268
10.3 Customizing Operations	268
10.3.1 Passing a Function to an Algorithm	268
10.3.2 Lambda Expressions	268
10.3.3 Lambda Captures and Returns	268
10.3.4 Binding Arguments	268
10.4 Revisiting Iterators	268
10.4.1 Insert Iterators	268
10.4.2 iostream Iterators	268
10.4.3 Reverse Iterators	268
10.5 Structure of Generic Algorithms	268
10.5.1 The Five Iterator Categories	268
10.5.2 Algorithm Parameter Patterns	268
10.5.3 Algorithm Naming Conventions	268
10.6 Container-Specific Algorithms	268
Chapter Summary	269
Defined Terms	269
<b>Chapter 11 Associative Containers</b>	<b>270</b>
11.1 Using an Associative Container	270
11.2 Overview of the Associative Containers	270
11.2.1 Defining an Associative Container	270
11.2.2 Requirements on Key Type	270
11.2.3 The pair Type	270
11.3 Operations on Associative Containers	270
11.3.1 Associative Container Iterators	270
11.3.2 Adding Elements	270
11.3.3 Erasing Elements	270
11.3.4 Subscripting a map	270
11.3.5 Accessing Elements	270
11.3.6 A Word Transformation Map	271
11.4 The Unordered Containers	271
Chapter Summary	272
Defined Terms	272
<b>Chapter 12 Dynamic Memory</b>	<b>273</b>
12.1 Dynamic Memory and Smart Pointers	274
12.1.1 The shared_ptr Class	274
12.1.2 Managing Memory Directly	274
12.1.3 Using shared_ptr with new	274
12.1.4 Smart Pointers and Exceptions	274
12.1.5 unique_ptr	274
12.1.6 weak_ptr	274
12.2 Dynamic Arrays	274
12.2.1 new and Arrays	274
12.2.2 The allocator Class	274
12.3 Using the Library: A Text-Query Program	274
12.3.1 Design of the Query Program	274
12.3.2 Defining the Query Program Classes	274
Chapter Summary	275
Defined Terms	275

---

## Part III Tools for Class Authors 276

---

### Chapter 13 Copy Control 277

13.1 Copy, Assign, and Destroy . . . . .	278
13.1.1 The Copy Constructor . . . . .	278
13.1.2 The Copy-Assignment Operator . . . . .	278
13.1.3 The Destructor . . . . .	278
13.1.4 The Rule of Three/Five/Zero . . . . .	279
13.1.5 Using = default . . . . .	283
13.1.6 Preventing Copies . . . . .	283
13.2 Copy Control and Resource Management . . . . .	283
13.2.1 Classes That Act Like Values . . . . .	283
13.2.2 Defining Classes That Act Like Pointers . . . . .	283
13.3 Swap . . . . .	283
13.4 A Copy-Control Example . . . . .	283
13.5 Classes That Manage Dynamic Memory . . . . .	283
13.6 Moving Objects . . . . .	283
13.6.1 Rvalue References . . . . .	283
13.6.2 Move Constructor and Move Assignment . . . . .	283
13.6.3 Rvalue References and Member Functions . . . . .	283
Chapter Summary . . . . .	284
Defined Terms . . . . .	284

### Chapter 14 Overloaded Operations and Conversions 285

14.1 Basic Concepts . . . . .	286
14.2 Input and Output Operators . . . . .	286
14.2.1 Overloading the Output Operator « . . . . .	286
14.2.2 Overloading the Input Operator » . . . . .	286
14.3 Arithmetic and Relational Operators . . . . .	286
14.3.1 Equality Operators . . . . .	286
14.3.2 Relational Operators . . . . .	286
14.4 Assignment Operators . . . . .	286
14.5 Subscript Operator . . . . .	286
14.6 Increment and Decrement Operators . . . . .	286
14.7 Member Access Operators . . . . .	286
14.8 Function-Call Operator . . . . .	286
14.8.1 Lambdas Are Function Objects . . . . .	286
14.8.2 Library-Defined Function Objects . . . . .	286
14.8.3 Callable Objects and function . . . . .	286
14.9 Overloading, Conversions, and Operators . . . . .	286
14.9.1 Conversion Operators . . . . .	286
14.9.2 Avoiding Ambiguous Conversions . . . . .	286
14.9.3 Function Matching and Overloaded Operators . . . . .	286
Chapter Summary . . . . .	287
Defined Terms . . . . .	287

### Chapter 15 Object-Oriented Programming 288

15.1 OOP: An Overview . . . . .	289
15.2 Defining Base and Derived Classes . . . . .	290
15.2.1 Defining a Base Class . . . . .	290
15.2.2 Defining a Derived Class . . . . .	291
15.2.3 Conversions and Inheritance . . . . .	295
15.3 Virtual Functions . . . . .	297
15.4 Abstract Base Classes . . . . .	301
15.5 Access Control and Inheritance . . . . .	302



15.6	Class Scope under Inheritance . . . . .	307
15.7	Constructors and Copy Control . . . . .	311
15.7.1	Virtual Destructors . . . . .	311
15.7.2	Synthesized Copy Control and Inheritance . . . . .	312
15.7.3	Derived-Class Copy-Control Members . . . . .	313
15.7.4	Inherited Constructors . . . . .	315
15.8	Containers and Inheritance . . . . .	316
15.8.1	Writing a Basket Class . . . . .	317
15.9	Text Queries Revisited . . . . .	320
15.9.1	An Object-Oriented Solution . . . . .	321
15.9.2	The Query_base and Query Classes . . . . .	321
15.9.3	The Derived Classes . . . . .	321
15.9.4	The eval Functions . . . . .	321
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	322
	Defined Terms . . . . .	322

## Chapter 16 Templates and Generic Programming 323

16.1	Defining a Template . . . . .	324
16.1.1	Function Templates . . . . .	324
16.1.2	Class Templates . . . . .	324
16.1.3	Template Parameters . . . . .	324
16.1.4	Member Templates . . . . .	324
16.1.5	Controlling Instantiations . . . . .	324
16.1.6	Efficiency and Flexibility . . . . .	324
16.2	Template Argument Deduction . . . . .	324
16.2.1	Conversions and Template Type Parameters . . . . .	324
16.2.2	Function-Template Explicit Arguments . . . . .	324
16.2.3	Trailing Return Types and Type Transformation . . . . .	324
16.2.4	Function Pointers and Argument Deduction . . . . .	324
16.2.5	Template Argument Deduction and References . . . . .	324
16.2.6	Understanding std::move . . . . .	324
16.2.7	Forwarding . . . . .	324
16.3	Overloading and Templates . . . . .	324
16.4	Variadic Templates . . . . .	324
16.4.1	Writing a Variadic Function Template . . . . .	324
16.4.2	Pack Expansion . . . . .	324
16.4.3	Forwarding Parameter Packs . . . . .	324
16.5	Template Specializations . . . . .	324
	Chapter Summary . . . . .	325
	Defined Terms . . . . .	325

---

# Part IV Advanced Topics 326

---

## Chapter 17 Specialized Library Facilities 327

17.1	The tuple Type . . . . .	328
17.1.1	Defining and Initializing tuples . . . . .	328
17.1.2	Using a tuple to Return Multiple Values . . . . .	328
17.2	The bitset Type . . . . .	328
17.2.1	Defining and Initializing bitsets . . . . .	328
17.2.2	Operations on bitsets . . . . .	328
17.3	Regular Expressions . . . . .	328
17.3.1	Using the Regular Expression Library . . . . .	328
17.3.2	The Match and Regex Iterator Types . . . . .	328
17.3.3	Using Subexpressions . . . . .	328
17.3.4	Using regex_replace . . . . .	328

17.4 Random Numbers . . . . .	328
17.4.1 Random-Number Engines and Distribution . . . . .	328
17.4.2 Other Kinds of Distributions . . . . .	328
17.5 The IO Library Revisited . . . . .	328
17.5.1 Formatted Input and Output . . . . .	328
17.5.2 Unformatted Input/Output Operations . . . . .	328
17.5.3 Random Access to a Stream . . . . .	328
Chapter Summary . . . . .	329
Defined Terms . . . . .	329

## Chapter 18 Tools for Large Programs 330

18.1 Exception Handling . . . . .	330
18.1.1 Throwing an Exception . . . . .	330
18.1.2 Catching an Exception . . . . .	330
18.1.3 Function try Blocks and Constructors . . . . .	330
18.1.4 The noexcept Exception Specification . . . . .	330
18.1.5 Exception Class Hierarchies . . . . .	330
18.2 Namespaces . . . . .	330
18.2.1 Namespace Definitions . . . . .	330
18.2.2 Using Namespace Members . . . . .	330
18.2.3 Classes, Namespaces, and Scope . . . . .	330
18.2.4 Overloading and Namespaces . . . . .	330
18.3 Multiple and Virtual Inheritance . . . . .	330
18.3.1 Multiple Inheritance . . . . .	330
18.3.2 Multiple Inheritance . . . . .	330
18.3.3 Class Scope under Multiple Inheritance . . . . .	330
18.3.4 Virtual Inheritance . . . . .	330
18.3.5 Constructors and Virtual Inheritance . . . . .	330
Chapter Summary . . . . .	331
Defined Terms . . . . .	331

## Chapter 19 Specialized Tools and Techniques 332

19.1 Controlling Memory Allocation . . . . .	333
19.1.1 Overloading new and delete . . . . .	333
19.1.2 Placement new Expressions . . . . .	333
19.2 Run-Time Type Identification . . . . .	333
19.2.1 The dynamic_cast Operator . . . . .	333
19.2.2 The typeid Operator . . . . .	333
19.2.3 Using RTTI . . . . .	333
19.2.4 The type_info Class . . . . .	333
19.3 Enumerations . . . . .	333
19.4 Pointer to Class Member . . . . .	333
19.4.1 Pointers to Data Members . . . . .	333
19.4.2 Pointers to Member Functions . . . . .	333
19.4.3 Using Member Functions as Callable Objects . . . . .	333
19.5 Nested Classes . . . . .	333
19.6 union: A Space-Saving Class . . . . .	333
19.7 Local Classes . . . . .	333
19.8 Inherently Nonportable Features . . . . .	333
19.8.1 Bit-fields . . . . .	333
19.8.2 volatile Qualifier . . . . .	333
19.8.3 Linkage Directives: extern "C" . . . . .	333
Chapter Summary . . . . .	334
Defined Terms . . . . .	334

## Appendix A The Library 335

A.1 Library Names and Headers . . . . .	336
A.2 Brief Tour of the Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.2.1 Algorithms to Find an Object . . . . .	339

A.2.2	Other Read-Only Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.2.3	Binary Search Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.2.4	Algorithms That Write Container Elements . . . . .	339
A.2.5	Partitioning and Sorting Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.2.6	General Reordering Operations . . . . .	339
A.2.7	Permutation Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.2.8	Set Algorithms for Sorted Sequences . . . . .	339
A.2.9	Minimum and Maximum Values . . . . .	339
A.2.10	Numeric Algorithms . . . . .	339
A.3	Random Numbers . . . . .	339
A.3.1	Random Number Distributions . . . . .	339
A.3.2	Random Number Engines . . . . .	339

**Index****340**

# New features in C++11

2.1.1 long long Type .....	25
2.2.1 List Initialization .....	33

# Chapter 1

## Getting Started

### Contents

1.1 Writing a Simple C++ Program .....	2
1.2 A First Look at Input/Output .....	4
1.3 A Word about Comments .....	7
1.4 Flow of Control .....	8
1.5 Introducing Classes .....	14
1.6 The Bookstore Program .....	17
Chapter Summary .....	19
Defined Terms .....	19

This chapter introduces most of the basic elements of C++: types, variables, expressions, statements, and functions. Along the way, we'll briefly explain how to compile and execute a program.

After having read this chapter and worked through the exercises, you should be able to write, compile, and execute simple programs. Later chapters will assume that you can use the features introduced in this chapter, and will explain these features in more detail.

The way to learn a new programming language is to write programs. In this chapter, we'll write a program to solve a simple problem for a bookstore.

Our store keeps a file of transactions, each of which records the sale of one or more copies of a single book. Each transaction contains three data elements:

**0-201-70353    4    24.99**

The first element is an ISBN (International Standard Book Number, a unique book identifier), the second is the number of copies sold, and the last is the price at which each of these copies was sold. From time to time, the bookstore owner reads this file and for each book computes the number of copies sold, the total revenue from that book, and the average sales price.

To be able to write this program, we need to cover a few basic C++ features. In addition, we'll need to know how to compile and execute a program.

Although we haven't yet designed our program, it's easy to see that it must

- Define variables
- Do input and output
- Use a data structure to hold the data
- Test whether two records have the same ISBN
- Contain a loop that will process every record in the transaction file

We'll start by reviewing how to solve these subproblems in C++ and then write our bookstore program.

## 1.1 Writing a Simple C++ Program

Every C++ program contains one or more *functions*, one of which must be named **main**. The operating system runs a C++ program by calling **main**. Here is a simple version of **main** that does nothing but return a value to the operating system:

```
int main ()
{
    return 0 ;
}
```

A function definition has four elements: a *return type*, a *function name*, a (possibly empty) *parameter list* enclosed in parentheses, and a *function body*. Although **main** is special in some ways, we define **main** the same way we define any other function.

In this example, **main** has an empty list of parameters (shown by the **()** with nothing inside). § 6.2.5 (p. 167) will discuss the other parameter types that we can define for **main**.

The **main** function is required to have a return type of **int**, which is a type that represents integers. The **int** type is a **built-in type**, which means that it is one of the types the language defines.

The final part of a function definition, the function body, is a *block of statements* starting with an open **curly brace** and ending with a close curly:

```
{
    return 0 ;
}
```

The only statement in this block is a **return**, which is a statement that terminates a function. As is the case here, a **return** can also send a value back to the function's caller. When a **return** statement includes a value, the value returned must have a type that is compatible with the return type of the function. In this case, the return type of **main** is **int** and the return value is 0, which is an **int**.



Note the semicolon at the end of the **return** statement. Semicolons mark the end of most statements in C++. They are easy to overlook but, when forgotten, can lead to mysterious compiler error messages.

On most systems, the value returned from **main** is a status indicator. A return value of 0 indicates success. A nonzero return has a meaning that is defined by the system. Ordinarily a nonzero return indicates what kind of error occurred.

**Key Concept: Types**

Types are one of the most fundamental concepts in programming and a concept that we will come back to over and over in this Primer. A type defines both the contents of a data element and the operations that are possible on those data. The data our programs manipulate are stored in variables and every variable has a type. When the type of a variable named *v* is *T*, we often say that “*v* has type *T*” or, interchangeably, that “*v* is a *T*.”

**1.1.1 Compiling and Executing Our Program**

Having written the program, we need to compile it. How you compile a program depends on your operating system and compiler. For details on how your particular compiler works, check the reference manual or ask a knowledgeable colleague.

Many PC-based compilers are run from an integrated development environment (IDE) that bundles the compiler with build and analysis tools. These environments can be a great asset in developing large programs but require a fair bit of time to learn how to use effectively. Learning how to use such environments is well beyond the scope of this book.

Most compilers, including those that come with an IDE, provide a command-line interface. Unless you already know the IDE, you may find it easier to start with the command-line interface. Doing so will let you concentrate on learning C++ first. Moreover, once you understand the language, the IDE is likely to be easier to learn.

**Program Source File Naming Convention**

Whether you use a command-line interface or an IDE, most compilers expect program source code to be stored in one or more files. Program files are normally referred to as a *source files*. On most systems, the name of a source file ends with a suffix, which is a period followed by one or more characters. The suffix tells the system that the file is a C++ program. Different compilers use different suffix conventions; the most common include `.cc`, `.cxx`, `.cpp`, `.cp`, and `.C`.

**Running the Compiler from the Command Line**

If we are using a command-line interface, we will typically compile a program in a console window (such as a shell window on a UNIX system or a Command Prompt window on Windows). Assuming that our main program is in a file named `prog1.cc`, we might compile it by using a command such as

```
$ CC prog1.cc
```

where `CC` names the compiler and `$` is the system prompt. The compiler generates an executable file. On a Windows system, that executable file is named `prog1.exe`. UNIX compilers tend to put their executables in files named `a.out`.

To run an executable on Windows, we supply the executable file name and can omit the `.exe` file extension:

```
$ prog1
```

On some systems you must specify the file’s location explicitly, even if the file is in the current directory or folder. In such cases, we would write

```
$ .\prog1
```

The “.” followed by a backslash indicates that the file is in the current directory.

To run an executable on UNIX, we use the full file name, including the file extension:

```
$ ./a.out
```

The value returned from `main` is accessed in a system-dependent manner. On both UNIX and Windows systems, after executing the program, you must issue an appropriate `echo` command.

On UNIX systems, we obtain the status by writing

```
$ echo $ ?
```

To see the status on a Windows system, we write

```
$ echo %ERRORLEVEL%
```

### Running the GNU or Microsoft Compilers

The command used to run the C++ compiler varies across compilers and operating systems. The most common compilers are the GNU compiler and the Microsoft Visual Studio compilers. By default, the command to run the GNU compiler is `g++`:

```
$ g++ -o prog1 prog1.cc
```

Here `$` is the system prompt. The `-o prog1` is an argument to the compiler and names the file in which to put the executable file. This command generates an executable file named `prog1` or `prog1.exe`, depending on the operating system. On UNIX, executable files have no suffix; on Windows, the suffix is `.exe`. If the `-o prog1` is omitted, the compiler generates an executable named `a.out` on UNIX systems and `a.exe` on Windows. (Note: Depending on the release of the GNU compiler you are using, you may need to specify `-std=c++0x` to turn on C++ 11 support.)

The command to run the Microsoft Visual Studio 2010 compiler is `cl`:

```
C:\Users\me\Programs> cl /EHsc prog1.cpp
```

Here `C:\Users\me\Programs>` is the system prompt and `\Users\me\Programs` is the name of the current directory (aka the current folder). The `cl` command invokes the compiler, and `/EHsc` is the compiler option that turns on standard exception handling. The Microsoft compiler automatically generates an executable with a name that corresponds to the first source file name. The executable has the suffix `.exe` and the same name as the source file name. In this case, the executable is named `prog1.exe`.

Compilers usually include options to generate warnings about problematic constructs. It is usually a good idea to use these options. Our preference is to use `-Wall` with the GNU compiler, and to use `/W4` with the Microsoft compilers.

For further information consult your compiler's user's guide.

### Exercises Section 1.1.1

**Exercise 1.1:** Review the documentation for your compiler and determine what file naming convention it uses. Compile and run the `main` program from page 2.

**Exercise 1.2:** Change the program to return `-1`. A return value of `-1` is often treated as an indicator that the program failed. Recompile and rerun your program to see how your system treats a failure indicator from `main`.

## 1.2 A First Look at Input/Output

The C++ language does not define any statements to do input or output (IO). Instead, C++ includes an extensive **standard library** that provides IO (and many other facilities). For many purposes, including the examples in this book, one needs to know only a few basic concepts and operations from the IO library.

Most of the examples in this book use the **iostream** library. Fundamental to the **iostream** library are two types named **istream** and **ostream**, which represent input and output streams, respectively. A stream is a sequence of characters read from or written to an IO device. The term stream is intended to suggest that the characters are generated, or consumed, sequentially over time.

### Standard Input and Output Objects

The library defines four IO objects. To handle input, we use an object of type **istream** named **cin** (pronounced see-in). This object is also referred to as the **standard input**. For output, we use an **ostream** object named **cout** (pronounced see-out). This object is also known as the **standard output**. The library also defines two other **ostream** objects, named **cerr** and **clog** (pronounced see-err and see-log, respectively). We typically use **cerr**, referred to as the **standard error**, for warning and error messages and **clog** for general information about the execution of the program. Ordinarily, the system associates each of these objects with the window in which the program is executed. So, when we read from **cin**, data are read from the window in which the program is executing, and when we write to **cout**, **cerr**, or **clog**, the output is written to the same window.

### A Program That Uses the IO Library

In our bookstore problem, we'll have several records that we'll want to combine into a single total. As a simpler, related problem, let's look first at how we might add two numbers. Using the IO library, we can extend our `main` program to prompt the user to give us two numbers and then print their sum:

```
#include <iostream>
```



```
int main()
{
    std::cout << "Enter two numbers:" << std::endl;
    int v1 = 0, v2 = 0;
    std::cin >> v1 >> v2;
    std::cout << "The sum of " << v1 << " and " << v2
                << " is " << v1 + v2 << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

This program starts by printing

**Enter two numbers:**

on the user's screen and then waits for input from the user. If the user enters followed by a newline, then the program produces the following output:

**The sum of 3 and 7 is 10**

The first line of our program

```
#include <iostream>
```

tells the compiler that we want to use the `iostream` library. The name inside angle brackets (`iostream` in this case) refers to a **header**. Every program that uses a library facility must include its associated header. The `#include` directive must be written on a single line—the name of the header and the `#include` must appear on the same line. In general, `#include` directives must appear outside any function. Typically, we put all the `#include` directives for a program at the beginning of the source file.

## Writing to a Stream

The first statement in the body of `main` executes an **expression**. In C++ an expression yields a result and is composed of one or more operands and (usually) an operator. The expressions in this statement use the output operator (the `<<` operator) to print a message on the standard output:

```
std::cout << "Enter two numbers:" << std::endl;
```

The `<<` operator takes two operands: The left-hand operand must be an `ostream` object; the right-hand operand is a value to print. The operator writes the given value on the given `ostream`. The result of the output operator is its left-hand operand. That is, the result is the `ostream` on which we wrote the given value.

Our output statement uses the `<<` operator twice. Because the operator returns its left-hand operand, the result of the first operator becomes the left-hand operand of the second. As a result, we can chain together output requests. Thus, our expression is equivalent to

```
(std::cout << "Enter two numbers:") << std::endl;
```

Each operator in the chain has the same object as its left-hand operand, in this case `std::cout`. Alternatively, we can generate the same output using two statements:

```
std::cout << "Enter two numbers:";
std::cout << std::endl;
```

The first output operator prints a message to the user. That message is a **string literal**, which is a sequence of characters enclosed in double quotation marks. The text between the quotation marks is printed to the standard output.

The second operator prints `endl`, which is a special value called a **manipulator**. Writing `endl` has the effect of ending the current line and flushing the **buffer** associated with that device. Flushing the buffer ensures that all the output the program has generated so far is actually written to the output stream, rather than sitting in memory waiting to be written.



Programmers often add print statements during debugging. Such statements should always flush the stream. Otherwise, if the program crashes, output may be left in the buffer, leading to incorrect inferences about where the program crashed.

## Using Names from the Standard Library

Careful readers will note that this program uses `std::cout` and `std::endl` rather than just `cout` and `endl`. The prefix `std::` indicates that the names `cout` and `endl` are defined inside the [namespace](#) named `std`. Namespaces allow us to avoid inadvertent collisions between the names we define and uses of those same names inside a library. All the names defined by the standard library are in the `std` namespace.

One side effect of the library's use of a namespace is that when we use a name from the library, we must say explicitly that we want to use the name from the `std` namespace. Writing `std::cout` uses the scope operator (the `::` [operator](#)) to say that we want to use the name `cout` that is defined in the namespace `std`. § 3.1 (p. 65) will show a simpler way to access names from the library.

## Reading from a Stream

Having asked the user for input, we next want to read that input. We start by defining two [variables](#) named `v1` and `v2` to hold the input:

```
int v1 = 0, v2 = 0;
```

We define these variables as type `int`, which is a built-in type representing integers. We also [initialize](#) them to 0. When we initialize a variable, we give it the indicated value at the same time as the variable is created.

The next statement

```
std::cin >> v1 >> v2;
```

reads the input. The input operator (the `>>` operator) behaves analogously to the output operator. It takes an [istream](#) as its left-hand operand and an object as its right-hand operand. It reads data from the given [istream](#) and stores what was read in the given object. Like the output operator, the input operator returns its left-hand operand as its result. Hence, this expression is equivalent to

```
(std::cin >> v1) >> v2;
```

Because the operator returns its left-hand operand, we can combine a sequence of input requests into a single statement. Our input operation reads two values from `std::cin`, storing the first in `v1` and the second in `v2`. In other words, our input operation executes as

```
std::cin >> v1;
std::cin >> v2;
```

## Completing the Program

What remains is to print our result:

```
std::cout << "The sum of " << v1 << " and " << v2
          << " is " << v1 + v2 << std::endl;
```

This statement, although longer than the one that prompted the user for input, is conceptually similar. It prints each of its operands on the standard output. What is interesting in this example is that the operands are not all the same kinds of values. Some operands are string literals, such as `"The sum of "`. Others are `int` values, such as `v1`, `v2`, and the result of evaluating the arithmetic expression `v1 + v2`. The library defines versions of the input and output operators that handle operands of each of these differing types.

### Exercises Section 1.2.0

**Exercise 1.3:** Write a program to print `Hello, World` on the standard output.

**Exercise 1.4:** Our program used the addition operator, `+`, to add two numbers. Write a program that uses the multiplication operator, `*`, to print the product instead.

**Exercise 1.5:** We wrote the output in one large statement. Rewrite the program to use a separate statement to print each operand.

**Exercise 1.6:** Explain whether the following program fragment is legal.

```
std::cout << "The sum of " << v1;
          << " and " << v2;
          << " is " << v1 + v2 << std::endl;
```

If the program is legal, what does it do? If the program is not legal, why not? How would you fix it?

## 1.3 A Word about Comments

Before our programs get much more complicated, we should see how C++ handles *comments*. Comments help the human readers of our programs. They are typically used to summarize an algorithm, identify the purpose of a variable, or clarify an otherwise obscure segment of code. The compiler ignores comments, so they have no effect on the program's behavior or performance.

Although the compiler ignores comments, readers of our code do not. Programmers tend to believe comments even when other parts of the system documentation are out of date. An incorrect comment is worse than no comment at all because it may mislead the reader. When you change your code, be sure to update the comments, too!

### Kinds of Comments in C++

There are two kinds of comments in C++: single-line and paired. A single-line comment starts with a double slash (//) and ends with a newline. Everything to the right of the slashes on the current line is ignored by the compiler. A comment of this kind can contain any text, including additional double slashes.

The other kind of comment uses two delimiters (*/\** and *\*/*) that are inherited from C. Such comments begin with a */\** and end with the next *\*/*. These comments can include anything that is not a *\*/*, including newlines. The compiler treats everything that falls between the */\** and *\*/* as part of the comment.

A comment pair can be placed anywhere a tab, space, or newline is permitted. Comment pairs can span multiple lines of a program but are not required to do so. When a comment pair does span multiple lines, it is often a good idea to indicate visually that the inner lines are part of a multiline comment. Our style is to begin each line in the comment with an asterisk, thus indicating that the entire range is part of a multiline comment.

Programs typically contain a mixture of both comment forms. Comment pairs generally are used for multiline explanations, whereas double-slash comments tend to be used for half-line and single-line remarks:

```
#include <iostream>
/*
 * Simple main function:
 * Read two numbers and write their sum
 */
int main()
{
    // prompt user to enter two numbers
    std::cout << "Enter two numbers:" << std::endl;
    int v1 = 0, v2 = 0; // variables to hold the input we read
    std::cin >> v1 >> v2; // read input
    std::cout << "The sum of " << v1 << " and " << v2
                << " is " << v1 + v2 << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```



In this book, we italicize comments to make them stand out from the normal program text. In actual programs, whether comment text is distinguished from the text used for program code depends on the sophistication of the programming environment you are using.

### Comment Pairs Do Not Nest

A comment that begins with */\** ends with the next *\*/*. As a result, one comment pair cannot appear inside another. The compiler error messages that result from this kind of mistake can be mysterious and confusing. As an example, compile the following program on your system:

```
/*
 * comment pairs /* */ cannot nest.
 * ''cannot nest'' is considered source code,
 * as is the rest of the program
 */
int main()
{
    return 0;
}
```

We often need to comment out a block of code during debugging. Because that code might contain nested comment pairs, the best way to comment a block of code is to insert single-line comments at the beginning of each line in the section we want to ignore:

```
// /*
// * everything inside a single-line comment is ignored
// * including nested comment pairs
// */
```

### Exercises Section 1.3.0

**Exercise 1.7:** Compile a program that has incorrectly nested comments.

**Exercise 1.8:** Indicate which, if any, of the following output statements are legal:

```
std::cout << "/*";
std::cout << "*/";
std::cout << /* "*/" */;
std::cout << /* "*/" /* "/*" */;
```

After you've predicted what will happen, test your answers by compiling a program with each of these statements. Correct any errors you encounter.

## 1.4 Flow of Control

Statements normally execute sequentially: The first statement in a block is executed first, followed by the second, and so on. Of course, few programs—including the one to solve our bookstore problem—can be written using only sequential execution. Instead, programming languages provide various flow-of-control statements that allow for more complicated execution paths.

### 1.4.1 The while Statement

A **while statement** repeatedly executes a section of code so long as a given condition is true. We can use a **while** to write a program to sum the numbers from 1 through 10 inclusive as follows:

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    int sum = 0, val = 1;
    // keep executing the while as long as val is less than or equal to 10
    while (val <= 10) {
        sum += val; // assigns sum + val to sum
        ++val; // add 1 to val
    }
    std::cout << "Sum of 1 to 10 inclusive is "
              << sum << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

When we compile and execute this program, it prints

**Sum of 1 to 10 inclusive is 55**

As before, we start by including the `iostream` header and defining `main`. Inside `main` we define two `int` variables: `sum`, which will hold our summation, and `val`, which will represent each of the values from 1 through 10. We give `sum` an initial value of 0 and start `val` off with the value 1.

The new part of this program is the **while** statement. A **while** has the form

```
while (condition)
    statement
```

A **while** executes by (alternately) testing the condition and executing the associated statement until the condition is false. A **condition** is an expression that yields a result that is either true or false. So long as condition is true, statement is executed. After executing statement, condition is tested again. If condition is again true, then

statement is again executed. The `while` continues, alternately testing the condition and executing statement until the condition is false.

In this program, the `while` statement is

```
// keep executing the while as long as val is less than or equal to 10
while (val <= 10) {
    sum += val; // assigns sum + val to sum
    ++val; // add 1 to val
}
```

The condition uses the less-than-or-equal operator (the `<=` operator) to compare the current value of `val` and 10. As long as `val` is less than or equal to 10, the condition is true. If the condition is true, we execute the body of the `while`. In this case, that body is a block with two statements:

```
{
    sum += val; // assigns sum + val to sum
    ++val; // add 1 to val
}
```

A block is a sequence of zero or more statements enclosed by curly braces. A block is a statement and may be used wherever a statement is required. The first statement in this block uses the compound assignment operator (the `+=` operator). This operator adds its right-hand operand to its left-hand operand and stores the result in the lefthand operand. It has essentially the same effect as writing an addition and an **assignment**:

```
sum = sum + val; // assign sum + val to sum
```

Thus, the first statement in the block adds the value of `val` to the current value of `sum` and stores the result back into `sum`.

The next statement

```
++val; // add 1 to val
```

uses the prefix increment operator (the `++` operator). The increment operator adds 1 to its operand. Writing `++val` is the same as writing `val = val + 1`.

After executing the `while` body, the loop evaluates the condition again. If the (now incremented) value of `val` is still less than or equal to 10, then the body of the `while` is executed again. The loop continues, testing the condition and executing the body, until `val` is no longer less than or equal to 10.

Once `val` is greater than 10, the program falls out of the `while` loop and continues execution with the statement following the `while`. In this case, that statement prints our output, followed by the `return`, which completes our `main` program.

### Exercises Section 1.4.1

**Exercise 1.9:** Write a program that uses a `while` to sum the numbers from 50 to 100.

**Exercise 1.10:** In addition to the `++` operator that adds 1 to its operand, there is a decrement operator (`--`) that subtracts 1. Use the decrement operator to write a `while` that prints the numbers from ten down to zero.

**Exercise 1.11:** Write a program that prompts the user for two integers. Print each number in the range specified by those two integers.

## 1.4.2 The for Statement

In our `while` loop we used the variable `val` to control how many times we executed the loop. We tested the value of `val` in the condition and incremented `val` in the `while` body.

This pattern—using a variable in a condition and incrementing that variable in the body—happens so often that the language defines a second statement, the **for statement**, that abbreviates code that follows this pattern. We can rewrite this program using a `for` loop to sum the numbers from 1 through 10 as follows:

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    int sum = 0;
    // sum values from 1 through 10 inclusive
    for (int val = 1; val <= 10; ++val)
        sum += val; // equivalent to sum = sum + val
}
```

```

    std::cout << "Sum of 1 to 10 inclusive is "
              << sum << std::endl;
    return 0;
}

```

As before, we define `sum` and initialize it to zero. In this version, we define `val` as part of the `for` statement itself:

```

for (int val = 1; val <= 10; ++val)
    sum += val;

```

Each `for` statement has two parts: a header and a body. The header controls how often the body is executed. The header itself consists of three parts: an initstatement, a condition, and an expression. In this case, the init-statement

```
int val = 1;
```

defines an `int` object named `val` and gives it an initial value of 1. The variable `val` exists only inside the `for`; it is not possible to use `val` after this loop terminates. The init-statement is executed only once, on entry to the `for`. The condition

```
val <= 10
```

compares the current value in `val` to 10. The condition is tested each time through the loop. As long as `val` is less than or equal to 10, we execute the `for` body. The expression is executed after the `for` body. Here, the expression

```
++val
```

uses the prefix increment operator, which adds 1 to the value of `val`. After executing the expression, the `for` retests the condition. If the new value of `val` is still less than or equal to 10, then the `for` loop body is executed again. After executing the body, `val` is incremented again. The loop continues until the condition fails.

In this loop, the `for` body performs the summation

```
sum += val; // equivalent to sum = sum + val
```

To recap, the overall execution flow of this `for` is:

1. Create `val` and initialize it to 1.
2. Test whether `val` is less than or equal to 10. If the test succeeds, execute the `for` body. If the test fails, exit the loop and continue execution with the first statement following the `for` body.
3. Increment `val`.
4. Repeat the test in step 2, continuing with the remaining steps as long as the condition is true.

### Exercises Section 1.4.2

**Exercise 1.12:** What does the following `for` loop do? What is the final value of `sum`?

```

int sum = 0;
for (int i = -100; i <= 100; ++i)
    sum += i;

```

**Exercise 1.13:** Rewrite the exercises from § 1.4.1(p. 8) using `for` loops.

**Exercise 1.14:** Compare and contrast the loops that used a `for` with those using a `while`. Are there advantages or disadvantages to using either form?

**Exercise 1.15:** Write programs that contain the common errors discussed in the box on page 12. Familiarize yourself with the messages the compiler generates.

### 1.4.3 Reading an Unknown Number of Inputs

In the preceding sections, we wrote programs that summed the numbers from 1 through 10. A logical extension of this program would be to ask the user to input a set of numbers to sum. In this case, we won't know how many numbers to add. Instead, we'll keep reading numbers until there are no more numbers to read:

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    int sum = 0, value = 0;
    // read until end-of-file, calculating a running total of all values read
    while (std::cin >> value)
        sum += value; // equivalent to sum = sum + value
    std::cout << "Sum is: " << sum << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

If we give this program the input

**3 4 5 6**

then our output will be

**Sum is: 18**

The first line inside `main` defines two `int` variables, named `sum` and `value`, which we initialize to 0. We'll use `value` to hold each number as we read it from the input. We read the data inside the condition of the `while`:

```
while (std::cin >> value)
```

Evaluating the `while` condition executes the expression

```
std::cin >> value
```

That expression reads the next number from the standard input and stores that number in `value`. The input operator (§ 1.2, p. 4) returns its left operand, which in this case is `std::cin`. This condition, therefore, tests `std::cin`.

When we use an `istream` as a condition, the effect is to test the state of the stream. If the stream is valid—that is, if the stream hasn't encountered an error—then the test succeeds. An `istream` becomes invalid when we hit *end-of-file* or encounter an invalid input, such as reading a value that is not an integer. An `istream` that is in an invalid state will cause the condition to yield false.

Thus, our `while` executes until we encounter end-of-file (or an input error). The `while` body uses the compound assignment operator to add the current value to the evolving sum. Once the condition fails, the `while` ends. We fall through and execute the next statement, which prints the `sum` followed by `endl`.

### Entering an End-of-File from the Keyboard

When we enter input to a program from the keyboard, different operating systems use different conventions to allow us to indicate end-of-file. On Windows systems we enter an end-of-file by typing a control-z—hold down the Ctrl key and press z—followed by hitting either the Enter or Return key. On UNIX systems, including on Mac OS X machines, end-of-file is usually control-d.

## Compilation Revisited

Part of the compiler's job is to look for errors in the program text. A compiler cannot detect whether a program does what its author intends, but it can detect errors in the form of the program. The following are the most common kinds of errors a compiler will detect. Syntax errors: The programmer has made a grammatical error in the C++ language. The following program illustrates common syntax errors; each comment describes the error on the following line:

```
// error: missing ) in parameter list for main
int main ( {
    // error: used colon, not a semicolon, after endl
    std::cout << "Read each file." << std::endl:
    // error: missing quotes around string literal
    std::cout << Update master. << std::endl;
    // error: second output operator is missing
    std::cout << "Write new master." std::endl;
    // error: missing ; on return statement
    return 0
}
```

Type errors: Each item of data in C++ has an associated type. The value 10, for example, has a type of `int` (or, more colloquially, “is an `int`”). The word “hello”, including the double quotation marks, is a string literal. One example of a type error is passing a string literal to a function that expects an `int` argument.

Declaration errors: Every name used in a C++ program must be declared before it is used. Failure to declare a name usually results in an error message. The two most common declaration errors are forgetting to use `std::` for a name from the library and misspelling the name of an identifier:

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    int v1 = 0, v2 = 0;
    std::cin >> v >> v2; // error: uses "v" not "v1"
    // error: cout not defined; should be std::cout
    cout << v1 + v2 << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

Error messages usually contain a line number and a brief description of what the compiler believes we have done wrong. It is a good practice to correct errors in the sequence they are reported. Often a single error can have a cascading effect and cause a compiler to report more errors than actually are present. It is also a good idea to recompile the code after each fix—or after making at most a small number of obvious fixes. This cycle is known as *edit-compile-debug*.

## Exercises Section 1.4.3

**Exercise 1.16:** Write your own version of a program that prints the sum of a set of integers read from `cin`.

### 1.4.4 The if Statement

Like most languages, C++ provides an **if statement** that supports conditional execution. We can use an `if` to write a program to count how many consecutive times each distinct value appears in the input:

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    // currVal is the number we're counting; we'll read new values into val
    int currVal = 0, val = 0;
    // read first number and ensure that we have data to process
    if (std::cin >> currVal) {
        int cnt = 1; // store the count for the current value we're processing
        while (std::cin >> val) { // read the remaining numbers
            if (val == currVal) // if the values are the same
                ++cnt; // add 1 to cnt
        }
    }
```



```

        else { // otherwise, print the count for the previous value
            std::cout << currVal << " occurs "
                << cnt << " times" << std::endl;
            currVal = val; // remember the new value
            cnt = 1; // reset the counter
        }
    } // while loop ends here
    // remember to print the count for the last value in the file
    std::cout << currVal << " occurs "
        << cnt << " times" << std::endl;
} // outermost if statement ends here
return 0;
}

```

If we give this program the following input:

```
42 42 42 42 42 55 55 62 100 100 100
```

then the output should be

```
42 occurs 5 times
55 occurs 2 times
62 occurs 1 times
100 occurs 3 times
```

Much of the code in this program should be familiar from our earlier programs. We start by defining `val` and `currVal`: `currVal` will keep track of which number we are counting; `val` will hold each number as we read it from the input. What's new are the two `if` statements. The first `if`

```

if (std::cin >> currVal) {
    // ...
} // outermost if statement ends here

```

ensures that the input is not empty. Like a `while`, an `if` evaluates a condition. The condition in the first `if` reads a value into `currVal`. If the read succeeds, then the condition is true and we execute the block that starts with the open curly following the condition. That block ends with the close curly just before the `return` statement.

Once we know there are numbers to count, we define `cnt`, which will count how often each distinct number occurs. We use a `while` loop similar to the one in the previous section to (repeatedly) read numbers from the standard input.

The body of the `while` is a block that contains the second `if` statement:

```

if (val == currVal) // if the values are the same
    ++cnt; // add 1 to cnt
else { // otherwise, print the count for the previous value
    std::cout << currVal << " occurs "
        << cnt << " times" << std::endl;
    currVal = val; // remember the new value
    cnt = 1; // reset the counter
}

```

The condition in this `if` uses the equality operator (the `==` operator) to test whether `val` is equal to `currVal`. If so, we execute the statement that immediately follows the condition. That statement increments `cnt`, indicating that we have seen `currVal` once more.

If the condition is false—that is, if `val` is not equal to `currVal`—then we execute the statement following the `else`. This statement is a block consisting of an output statement and two assignments. The output statement prints the count for the value we just finished processing. The assignments reset `cnt` to 1 and `currVal` to `val`, which is the number we just read.



C++ uses `=` for assignment and `==` for equality. Both operators can appear inside a condition. It is a common mistake to write `=` when you mean `==` inside a condition.

### Exercises Section 1.4.4

**Exercise 1.17:** What happens in the program presented in this section if the input values are all equal? What if there are no duplicated values?

**Exercise 1.18:** Compile and run the program from this section giving it only equal values as input. Run it again giving it values in which no number is repeated.

**Exercise 1.19:** Revise the program you wrote for the exercises in § 1.4.1 (p. 8) that printed a range of numbers so that it handles input in which the first number is smaller than the second.

### Key Concept: Indentation and Formatting of C++ Programs

C++ programs are largely free-format, meaning that where we put curly braces, indentation, comments, and newlines usually has no effect on what our programs mean. For example, the curly brace that denotes the beginning of the body of `main` could be on the same line as `main`; positioned as we have done, at the beginning of the next line; or placed anywhere else we'd like. The only requirement is that the open curly must be the first nonblank, noncomment character following `main`'s parameter list. Although we are largely free to format programs as we wish, the choices we make affect the readability of our programs. We could, for example, have written `main` on a single long line. Such a definition, although legal, would be hard to read. Endless debates occur as to the right way to format C or C++ programs. Our belief is that there is no single correct style but that there is value in consistency. Most programmers indent subsidiary parts of their programs, as we've done with the statements inside `main` and the bodies of our loops. We tend to put the curly braces that delimit functions on their own lines. We also indent compound IO expressions so that the operators line up. Other indentation conventions will become clear as our programs become more sophisticated. The important thing to keep in mind is that other ways to format programs are possible. When you choose a formatting style, think about how it affects readability and comprehension. Once you've chosen a style, use it consistently.

## 1.5 Introducing Classes

The only remaining feature we need to understand before solving our bookstore problem is how to define a *data structure* to represent our transaction data. In C++ we define our own data structures by defining a *class*. A class defines a type along with a collection of operations that are related to that type. The class mechanism is one of the most important features in C++. In fact, a primary focus of the design of C++ is to make it possible to define *class types* that behave as naturally as the built-in types.

In this section, we'll describe a simple class that we can use in writing our bookstore program. We'll implement this class in later chapters as we learn more about types, expressions, statements, and functions.

To use a class we need to know three things:

- What is its name?
- Where is it defined?
- What operations does it support?

For our bookstore problem, we'll assume that the class is named `Sales_item` and that it is already defined in a header named `Sales_item.h`.

As we've seen, to use a library facility, we must include the associated header. Similarly, we use headers to access classes defined for our own applications. Conventionally, header file names are derived from the name of a class defined in that header. Header files that we write usually have a suffix of `.h`, but some programmers use `.H`, `.hpp`, or `.hxx`. The standard library headers typically have no suffix at all. Compilers usually don't care about the form of header file names, but IDEs sometimes do.

### 1.5.1 The `Sales_item` Class

The purpose of the `Sales_item` class is to represent the total revenue, number of copies sold, and average sales price for a book. How these data are stored or computed is not our concern. To use a class, we need not care about how it is implemented. Instead, what we need to know is what operations objects of that type can perform.

Every class defines a type. The type name is the same as the name of the class. Hence, our `Sales_item` class defines a type named `Sales_item`. As with the builtin types, we can define a variable of a class type. When we write

```
Sales_item item;
```

we are saying that `item` is an object of type `Sales_item`. We often contract the phrase “an object of type `Sales_item`” to “a `Sales_item` object” or even more simply to “a `Sales_item`.”

In addition to being able to define variables of type `Sales_item`, we can:

- Call a function named `isbn` to fetch the from a `Sales_item` object.
- Use the input (`>>`) and output (`<<`) operators to read and write objects of type `Sales_item`.
- Use the assignment operator (`=`) to assign one `Sales_item` object to another.
- Use the addition operator (`+`) to add two `Sales_item` objects. The two objects must refer to the same ISBN. The result is a new `Sales_item` object whose ISBN is that of its operands and whose number sold and revenue are the sum of the corresponding values in its operands.
- Use the compound assignment operator (`+=`) to add one `Sales_item` object into another.

### Key Concept: Classes Define Behavior

The important thing to keep in mind when you read these programs is that the author of the `Sales_item` class defines all the actions that can be performed by objects of this class. That is, the `Sales_item` class defines what happens when a `Sales_item` object is created and what happens when the assignment, addition, or the input and output operators are applied to `Sales_items`. In general, the class author determines all the operations that can be used on objects of the class type. For now, the only operations we know we can perform on `Sales_item` objects are the ones listed in this section.

### Reading and Writing `Sales_items`

Now that we know what operations we can use with `Sales_item` objects, we can write programs that use the class. For example, the following program reads data from the standard input into a `Sales_item` object and writes that `Sales_item` back onto the standard output:

```
#include <iostream>
#include "Sales_item.h"
int main()
{
    Sales_item book;
    // read ISBN, number of copies sold, and sales price
    std::cin >> book;
    // write ISBN, number of copies sold, total revenue, and average price
    std::cout << book << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

If the input to this program is

```
0-201-70353-X 4 24.99
```

then the output will be

```
0-201-70353-X 4 99.96 24.99
```

Our input says that we sold four copies of the book at \$24.99 each, and the output indicates that the total sold was four, the total revenue was \$99.96, and the average price per book was \$24.99.

This program starts with two `#include` directives, one of which uses a new form. Headers from the standard library are enclosed in angle brackets (`< >`). Those that are not part of the library are enclosed in double quotes (`" "`)

Inside `main` we define an object, named `book`, that we'll use to hold the data that we read from the standard input. The next statement reads into that object, and the third statement prints it to the standard output followed by printing `endl`.

### Adding `Sales_items`

```
#include <iostream>
#include "Sales_item.h"
int main()
{
```

```

    Sales_item item1, item2;
    std::cin >> item1 >> item2; // read a pair of transactions
    std::cout << item1 + item2 << std::endl; // print their sum
    return 0;
}

```

If we give this program the following input

```

0-201-78345-X 3 20.00
0-201-78345-X 2 25.00

```

our output is

```

0-201-78345-X 5 110 22

```

This program starts by including the `Sales_item` and `iostream` headers. Next we define two `Sales_item` objects to hold the transactions. We read data into these objects from the standard input. The output expression does the addition and prints the result.

It's worth noting how similar this program looks to the one on page 4: We read two inputs and write their sum. What makes this similarity noteworthy is that instead of reading and printing the sum of two integers, we're reading and printing the sum of two `Sales_item` objects. Moreover, the whole idea of “sum” is different. In the case of `ints` we are generating a conventional sum—the result of adding two numeric values. In the case of `Sales_item` objects we use a conceptually new meaning for sum—the result of adding the components of two `Sales_item` objects.

### Using File Redirection

It can be tedious to repeatedly type these transactions as input to the programs you are testing. Most operating systems support file redirection, which lets us associate a named file with the standard input and the standard output:

```
$ addItems <infile >outfile
```

Assuming `$` is the system prompt and our addition program has been compiled into an executable file named `addItems.exe` (or `addItems` on UNIX systems), this command will read transactions from a file named `infile` and write its output to a file named `outfile` in the current directory.

### Exercises Section 1.5.1

**Exercise 1.20:** <http://www.informit.com/title/032174113> contains a copy of `Sales_item.h` in the Chapter 1 code directory. Copy that file to your working directory. Use it to write a program that reads a set of book sales transactions, writing each transaction to the standard output.

**Exercise 1.21:** Write a program that reads two `Sales_item` objects that have the same ISBN and produces their sum.

**Exercise 1.22:** Write a program that reads several transactions for the same ISBN. Write the sum of all the transactions that were read.

## 1.5.2 A First Look at Member Functions

Our program that adds two `Sales_items` should check whether the objects have the same ISBN. We'll do so as follows:

```

#include <iostream>
#include "Sales_item.h"
int main()
{
    Sales_item item1, item2;
    std::cin >> item1 >> item2;
    // first check that item1 and item2 represent the same book
    if (item1.isbn() == item2.isbn()) {
        std::cout << item1 + item2 << std::endl;
        return 0; // indicate success
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Data must refer to same ISBN"

```

```

        << std::endl;
    return -1; // indicate failure
}
}

```

The difference between this program and the previous version is the `if` and its associated `else` branch. Even without understanding the `if` condition, we know what this program does. If the condition succeeds, then we write the same output as before and return 0, indicating success. If the condition fails, we execute the block following the `else`, which prints a message and returns an error indicator.

### What Is a Member Function?

The `if` condition

```
item1.isbn() == item2.isbn()
```

calls a **member function** named `isbn`. A member function is a function that is defined as part of a class. Member functions are sometimes referred to as **methods**.

Ordinarily, we call a member function on behalf of an object. For example, the first part of the left-hand operand of the equality expression

```
item1.isbn
```

uses the dot operator (the **"."** operator) to say that we want “the `isbn` member of the object named `item1`.” The dot operator applies only to objects of class type. The left-hand operand must be an object of class type, and the right-hand operand must name a member of that type. The result of the dot operator is the member named by the right-hand operand.

When we use the dot operator to access a member function, we usually do so to call that function. We call a function using the call operator (the **()** operator). The call operator is a pair of parentheses that enclose a (possibly empty) list of *arguments*. The `isbn` member function does not take an argument. Thus,

```
item1.isbn()
```

calls the `isbn` function that is a member of the object named `item1`. This function returns the ISBN stored in `item1`.

The right-hand operand of the equality operator executes in the same way—it returns the ISBN stored in `item2`. If the ISBNs are the same, the condition is `true`; otherwise it is `false`.

#### Exercises Section 1.5.2

**Exercise 1.23:** Write a program that reads several transactions and counts how many transactions occur for each ISBN.

**Exercise 1.24:** Test the previous program by giving multiple transactions representing multiple ISBNs. The records for each ISBN should be grouped together.

## 1.6 The Bookstore Program

We are now ready to solve our original bookstore problem. We need to read a file of sales transactions and produce a report that shows, for each book, the total number of copies sold, the total revenue, and the average sales price. We'll assume that all the transactions for each ISBN are grouped together in the input.

Our program will combine the data for each ISBN in a variable named `total`. We'll use a second variable named `trans` to hold each transaction we read. If `trans` and `total` refer to the same ISBN, we'll update `total`. Otherwise we'll print `total` and reset it using the transaction we just read:

```

#include <iostream>
#include "Sales_item.h"
int main()
{
    Sales_item total; // variable to hold the running sum
    // read the first transaction and ensure that there are data to process
    if (std::cin >> total) {
        Sales_item trans; // variable to hold data for the next transaction
        // read and process the remaining transactions
    }
}

```

```

while (std::cin >> trans) {
    // if we're still processing the same book
    if (total.isbn() == trans.isbn())
        total += trans; // update the running total
    else {
        // print results for the previous book
        std::cout << total << std::endl;
        total = trans; // total now refers to the next book
    }
}
std::cout << total << std::endl; // print the last transaction
}
else {
    // no input! warn the user
    std::cerr << "No data?!" << std::endl;
    return -1; // indicate failure
}
return 0;
}

```

This program is the most complicated one we've seen so far, but it uses only facilities that we have already seen.

As usual, we begin by including the headers that we use, `iostream` from the library and our own `Sales_item.h`. Inside `main` we define an object named `total`, which we'll use to sum the data for a given ISBN. We start by reading the first transaction into `total` and testing whether the read was successful. If the read fails, then there are no records and we fall through to the outermost `else` branch, which tells the user that there was no input.

Assuming we have successfully read a record, we execute the block following the outermost `if`. That block starts by defining the object named `trans`, which will hold our transactions as we read them. The `while` statement will read all the remaining records. As in our earlier programs, the `while` condition reads a value from the standard input. In this case, we read a `Sales_item` object into `trans`. As long as the read succeeds, we execute the body of the `while`.

The body of the `while` is a single `if` statement. The `if` checks whether the ISBNs are equal. If so, we use the compound assignment operator to add `trans` to `total`. If the ISBNs are not equal, we print the value stored in `total` and reset `total` by assigning `trans` to it. After executing the `if`, we return to the condition in the `while`, reading the next transaction, and so on until we run out of records.

When the `while` terminates, `total` contains the data for the last ISBN in the file. We write the data for the last ISBN in the last statement of the block that concludes the outermost `if` statement.

### Exercises Section 1.6.0

**Exercise 1.25:** Using the `Sales_item.h` header from the Web site, compile and execute the bookstore program presented in this section.

## Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced enough of C++ to let you compile and execute simple C++ programs. We saw how to define a `main` function, which is the function that the operating system calls to execute our program. We also saw how to define variables, how to do input and output, and how to write `if`, `for`, and `while` statements. The chapter closed by introducing the most fundamental facility in C++: the class. In this chapter, we saw how to create and use objects of a class that someone else has defined. Later chapters will show how to define our own classes.

## Defined Terms

**argument** Value passed to a function.

**assignment** Obliterates an object's current value and replaces that value by a new one.

**block** Sequence of zero or more statements enclosed in curly braces.

**buffer** A region of storage used to hold data. IO facilities often store input (or output) in a buffer and read or write the buffer independently from actions in the program. Output buffers can be explicitly flushed to force the buffer to be written. By default, reading `cin` flushes `cout`; `cout` is also flushed when the program ends normally.

**built-in type** Type, such as `int`, defined by the language.

**`cerr` ostream** object tied to the standard error, which often writes to the same device as the standard output. By default, writes to `cerr` are not buffered. Usually used for error messages or other output that is not part of the normal logic of the program.

**character string literal** Another term for string literal.

**`cin` istream** object used to read from the standard input.

**class** Facility for defining our own data structures together with associated operations. The class is one of the most fundamental features in C++. Library types, such as `istream` and `ostream`, are classes.

**class type** A type defined by a class. The name of the type is the class name.

**`clog` ostream** object tied to the standard error. By default, writes to `clog` are buffered. Usually used to report information about program execution to a log file.

**comment** Program text that is ignored by the compiler. C++ has two kinds of comments: single-line and paired. Single-line comments start with a `//`. Everything from the `//` to the end of the line is a comment. Paired comments begin with a `/*` and include all text up to the next `*/`.

**condition** An expression that is evaluated as true or false. A value of zero is false; any other value yields true.

**`cout` ostream** object used to write to the standard output. Ordinarily used to write the output of a program.

**curly brace** Curly braces delimit blocks. An open curly (`{`) starts a block; a close curly (`}`) ends one.

**data structure** A logical grouping of data and operations on that data.

**edit-compile-debug** The process of getting a program to execute properly.

**end-of-file** System-specific marker that indicates that there is no more input in a file.

**expression** The smallest unit of computation. An expression consists of one or more operands and usually one or more operators. Expressions are evaluated to produce a result. For example, assuming `i` and `j` are `ints`, then `i + j` is an expression and yields the sum of the two `int` values.

**for statement** Iteration statement that provides iterative execution. Often used to repeat a calculation a fixed number of times.

**function** Named unit of computation.

**function body** Block that defines the actions performed by a function.

**function name** Name by which a function is known and can be called.

**header** Mechanism whereby the definitions of a class or other names are made available to multiple programs. A program uses a header through a `#include` directive.

**if statement** Conditional execution based on the value of a specified condition. If the condition is true, the `if` body is executed. If not, the `else` body is executed if there is one.

**initialize** Give an object a value at the same time that it is created.



**iostream** Header that provides the library types for stream-oriented input and output.

**istream** Library type providing stream-oriented input.

**library type** Type, such as `istream`, defined by the standard library.

**main** Function called by the operating system to execute a C++ program. Each program must have one and only one function named `main`.

**manipulator** Object, such as `std::endl`, that when read or written “manipulates” the stream itself.

**member function** Operation defined by a class. Member functions ordinarily are called to operate on a specific object.

**method** Synonym for member function.

**namespace** Mechanism for putting names defined by a library into a single place. Namespaces help avoid inadvertent name clashes. The names defined by the C++ library are in the namespace `std`.

**ostream** Library type providing stream-oriented output.

**parameter list** Part of the definition of a function. Possibly empty list that specifies what arguments can be used to call the function.

**return type** Type of the value returned by a function.

**source file** Term used to describe a file that contains a C++ program.

**standard error** Output stream used for error reporting. Ordinarily, the standard output and the standard error are tied to the window in which the program is executed.

**standard input** Input stream usually associated with the window in which the program executes.

**standard library** Collection of types and functions that every C++ compiler must support. The library provides the types that support IO. C++ programmers tend to talk about “the library,” meaning the entire standard library. They also tend to refer to particular parts of the library by referring to a library type, such as the “`iostream` library,” meaning the part of the standard library that defines the IO classes.

**standard output** Output stream usually associated with the window in which the program executes.

**statement** A part of a program that specifies an action to take place when the program is executed. An expression followed by a semicolon is a statement; other kinds of statements include blocks and `if`, `for`, and `while` statements, all of which contain other statements within themselves.

**std** Name of the namespace used by the standard library. `std::cout` indicates that we’re using the name `cout` defined in the `std` namespace.

**string literal** Sequence of zero or more characters enclosed in double quotes (“a string literal”).

**variable** A named object.

**while statement** Iteration statement that provides iterative execution so long as a specified condition is true. The body is executed zero or more times, depending on the truth value of the condition.

**() operator** Call operator. A pair of parentheses “()” following a function name. The operator causes a function to be invoked. Arguments to the function may be passed inside the parentheses.

**++ operator** Increment operator. Adds 1 to the operand; `++i` is equivalent to `i = i + 1`.

**+= operator** Compound assignment operator that adds the right-hand operand to the left and stores the result in the left-hand operand; `a += b` is equivalent to `a = a + b`.

**. operator** Dot operator. Left-hand operand must be an object of class type and the right-hand operand must be the name of a member of that object. The operator yields the named member of the given object.

**:: operator** Scope operator. Among other uses, the scope operator is used to access names in a namespace. For example, `std::cout` denotes the name `cout` from the namespace `std`.

**= operator** Assigns the value of the right-hand operand to the object denoted by the left-hand operand.

**-- operator** Decrement operator. Subtracts 1 from the operand; `--i` is equivalent to `i = i - 1`.

**<< operator** Output operator. Writes the right-hand operand to the output stream indicated by the left-hand operand: `cout << "hi"` writes `hi` to the standard output. Output operations can be chained together: `cout << "hi" << "bye"` writes `hibye`.

**>> operator** Input operator. Reads from the input stream specified by the left-hand operand into the right-hand operand: `cin >> i` reads the next value on the standard input into `i`. Input operations can be chained together: `cin >> i >> j` reads first into `i` and then into `j`.

**#include** Directive that makes code in a header available to a program.

**== operator** The equality operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is equal to the right-hand operand.

**!= operator** The inequality operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is not equal to the right-hand operand.



**<= operator** The less-than-or-equal operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is less than or equal to the right-hand operand.

**< operator** The less-than operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is less than the right-hand operand.

**>= operator** Greater-than-or-equal operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is greater than or equal to the right-hand operand.

**> operator** Greater-than operator. Tests whether the left-hand operand is greater than the right-hand operand.

# Part I

## The Basics

### Contents

Chapter 2 Variables and Basic Types .....	24
Chapter 3 Strings, Vectors, and Arrays .....	64
Chapter 4 Expressions .....	102
Chapter 5 Statements .....	130
Chapter 6 Functions .....	154
Chapter 7 Classes .....	193

Every widely used programming language provides a common set of features, which differ in detail from one language to another. Understanding the details of how a language provides these features is the first step toward understanding the language. Among the most fundamental of these common features are

- Built-in types such as integers, characters, and so forth
- Variables, which let us give names to the objects we use
- Expressions and statements to manipulate values of these types
- Control structures, such as `if` or `while`, that allow us to conditionally or repeatedly execute a set of actions
- Functions that let us define callable units of computation

Most programming languages supplement these basic features in two ways: They let programmers extend the language by defining their own types, and they provide library routines that define useful functions and types not otherwise built into the language.

In C++, as in most programming languages, the type of an object determines what operations can be performed on it. Whether a particular expression is legal depends on the type of the objects in that expression. Some languages, such as Smalltalk and Python, check types at run time. In contrast, C++ is a statically typed language; type checking is done at compile time. As a consequence, the compiler must know the type of every name used in the program.

C++ provides a set of built-in types, operators to manipulate those types, and a small set of statements for program flow control. These elements form an alphabet from which we can write large, complicated, real-world systems. At this basic level, C++ is a simple language. Its expressive power arises from its support for mechanisms that allow the programmer to define new data structures. Using these facilities, programmers can shape the language to their own purposes without the language designers having to anticipate the programmers' needs.

Perhaps the most important feature in C++ is the class, which lets programmers define their own types. In C++ such types are sometimes called “class types” to distinguish them from the types that are built into the language. Some languages let programmers define types that specify only what data make up the type. Others, like C++, allow programmers to define types that include operations as well as data. A major design goal of C++ is to let programmers define their own types that are as easy to use as the built-in types. The Standard C++ library uses these features to implement a rich library of class types and associated functions.

The first step in mastering C++—learning the basics of the language and library—is the topic of Part I. Chapter 2 covers the built-in types and looks briefly at the mechanisms for defining our own new types. Chapter 3 introduces two of the most fundamental library types: `string` and `vector`. That chapter also covers arrays, which are a lower-level data structure built into C++ and many other languages. Chapters 4 through 6 cover

expressions, statements, and functions. This part concludes in Chapter 7, which describes the basics of building our own class types. As we'll see, defining our own types brings together all that we've learned before, because writing a class entails using the facilities covered in Part I.

## Chapter 2

# Variables and Basic Types

### Contents

2.1 Primitive Built-in Types .....	25
2.2 Variables .....	32
2.3 Compound Types .....	38
2.4 const Qualifier .....	46
2.5 Dealing with Types .....	52
2.6 Defining Our Own Data Structures .....	56
Chapter Summary .....	61
Defined Terms .....	61

Types are fundamental to any program: They tell us what our data mean and what operations we can perform on those data.

C++ has extensive support for types. The language defines several primitive types (characters, integers, floating-point numbers, etc.) and provides mechanisms that let us define our own data types. The library uses these mechanisms to define more complicated types such as variable-length character strings, vectors, and so on. This chapter covers the built-in types and begins our coverage of how C++ supports more complicated types.

Types determine the meaning of the data and operations in our programs. The meaning of even as simple a statement as

```
i = i + j;
```

depends on the types of `i` and `j`. If `i` and `j` are integers, this statement has the ordinary, arithmetic meaning of `+`. However, if `i` and `j` are `Sales_item` objects (§ 1.5.1, p. 14), this statement adds the components of these two objects.

## 2.1 Primitive Built-in Types

C++ defines a set of primitive types that include the **arithmetic types** and a special type named **void**. The arithmetic types represent characters, integers, boolean values, and floating-point numbers. The **void** type has no associated values and can be used in only a few circumstances, most commonly as the return type for functions that do not return a value.

### 2.1.1 Arithmetic Types

The arithmetic types are divided into two categories: **integral types** (which include character and boolean types) and floating-point types.

The size of—that is, the number of bits in—the arithmetic types varies across machines. The standard guarantees minimum sizes as listed in Table 2.1. However, compilers are allowed to use larger sizes for these types. Because the number of bits varies, the largest (or smallest) value that a type can represent also varies.

Table 2.1: C++: Arithmetic Types

Type	Meaning	Minimum Size
<code>bool</code>	boolean	NA
<code>char</code>	character	8bits
<code>wchar_t</code>	wide character	16bits
<code>char16_t</code>	Unicode character	16bits
<code>char32_t</code>	Unicode character	32bits
<code>short</code>	short integer	16bits
<code>int</code>	integer	16bits
<code>long</code>	long integer	32bits
<code>long long</code>	long integer	64bits
<code>float</code>	single-precision floating-point	6 significant digits
<code>double</code>	double-precision floating-point	10 significant digits
<code>long double</code>	extended-precision floating-point	10 significant digits

The `bool` type represents the truth values `true` and `false`.

There are several character types, most of which exist to support internationalization. The basic character type is `char`. A `char` is guaranteed to be big enough to hold numeric values corresponding to the characters in the machine’s basic character set. That is, a `char` is the same size as a single machine byte.

The remaining character types—`wchar_t`, `char16_t`, and `char32_t`—are used for extended character sets. The `wchar_t` type is guaranteed to be large enough to hold any character in the machine’s largest extended character set. The types `char16_t` and `char32_t` are intended for Unicode characters. (Unicode is a standard for representing characters used in essentially any natural language.)

The remaining integral types represent integer values of (potentially) different sizes. The language guarantees that an `int` will be at least as large as `short`, a `long` at least as large as an `int`, and `long long` at least as large as `long`. The type `long long` was introduced by the new standard.

### Machine-Level Representation of the Built-in Types

Computers store data as a sequence of bits, each holding a 0 or 1, such as  
0001101101110001011001000111011 ...

Most computers deal with memory as chunks of bits of sizes that are powers of 2. The smallest chunk of addressable memory is referred to as a “byte.” The basic unit of storage, usually a small number of bytes, is referred to as a “word.” In C++ a byte has at least as many bits as are needed to hold a character in the machine’s basic character set. On most machines a byte contains 8 bits and a word is either 32 or 64 bits, that is, 4 or 8 bytes.

Most computers associate a number (called an “address”) with each byte in memory. On a machine with 8-bit bytes and 32-bit words, we might view a word of memory as follows

736424		0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	
736425		0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	
736426		0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	
736427		0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	

Here, the byte’s address is on the left, with the 8 bits of the byte following the address.

We can use an address to refer to any of several variously sized collections of bits starting at that address. It is possible to speak of the word at address 736424 or the byte at address 736427. To give meaning to memory at a given address, we must know the type of the value stored there. The type determines how many bits are used and how to interpret those bits.

If the object at location 736424 has type `float` and if `floats` on this machine are stored in 32 bits, then we know that the object at that address spans the entire word. The value of that `float` depends on the details of how the machine stores floating-point numbers. Alternatively, if the object at location 736424 is an `unsigned char` on a machine using the ISO-Latin-1 character set, then the byte at that address represents a semicolon.

The floating-point types represent single-, double-, and extended-precision values. The standard specifies a minimum number of significant digits. Most compilers provide more precision than the specified minimum. Typically, `floats` are represented in one word (32 bits), `doubles` in two words (64 bits), and long doubles in either three or four words (96 or 128 bits). The `float` and `double` types typically yield about 7 and 16 significant digits, respectively. The type `long double` is often used as a way to accommodate special-purpose floating-point hardware; its precision is more likely to vary from one implementation to another.

### Signed and Unsigned Types

Except for `bool` and the extended character types, the integral types may be **signed** or **unsigned**. A signed type represents negative or positive numbers (including zero); an unsigned type represents only values greater than or equal to zero.

The types `int`, `short`, `long`, and `long long` are all signed. We obtain the corresponding unsigned type by adding `unsigned` to the type, such as `unsigned long`. The type `unsigned int` may be abbreviated as `unsigned`.

Unlike the other integer types, there are three distinct basic character types: `char`, `signed char`, and `unsigned char`. In particular, `char` is not the same type as `signed char`. Although there are three character types, there are only two representations: signed and unsigned. The (plain) `char` type uses one of these representations. Which of the other two character representations is equivalent to `char` depends on the compiler.

The standard does not define how signed types are represented, but does specify that the range should be evenly divided between positive and negative values. Hence, an 8-bit `signed char` is guaranteed to be able to hold values from  $-127$  through  $127$ ; most modern machines use representations that allow values from  $-128$  through  $127$ .

**Advice: Deciding which Type to Use**

C++, like C, is designed to let programs get close to the hardware when necessary. The arithmetic types are defined to cater to the peculiarities of various kinds of hardware. Accordingly, the number of arithmetic types in C++ can be bewildering. Most programmers can (and should) ignore these complexities by restricting the types they use. A few rules of thumb can be useful in deciding which type to use:

- Use an unsigned type when you know that the values cannot be negative.
- Use `int` for integer arithmetic. `short` is usually too small and, in practice, `long` often has the same size as `int`. If your data values are larger than the minimum guaranteed size of an `int`, then use `long long`.
- Do not use plain `char` or `bool` in arithmetic expressions. Use them only to hold characters or truth values. Computations using `char` are especially problematic because `char` is **signed** on some machines and **unsigned** on others. If you need a tiny integer, explicitly specify either **signed char** or **unsigned char**.
- Use `double` for floating-point computations; `float` usually does not have enough precision, and the cost of double-precision calculations versus single-precision is negligible. In fact, on some machines, double-precision operations are faster than single. The precision offered by `long double` usually is unnecessary and often entails considerable run-time cost.

**Exercises Section 2.1.1**

**Exercise 2.1:** What are the differences between `int`, `long`, `long long`, and `short`? Between an unsigned and a signed type? Between a `float` and a `double`?

**Exercise 2.2:** To calculate a mortgage payment, what types would you use for the rate, principal, and payment? Explain why you selected each type.

**2.1.2 Type Conversions**

The type of an object defines the data that an object might contain and what operations that object can perform. Among the operations that many types support is the ability to **convert** objects of the given type to other, related types.

Type conversions happen automatically when we use an object of one type where an object of another type is expected. We'll have more to say about conversions in § 4.11 (p. 121), but for now it is useful to understand what happens when we assign a value of one type to an object of another type.

When we assign one arithmetic type to another:

```
bool b = 42;    // b is true
int i = b;      // i has value 1
i = 3.14;       // i has value 3
double pi = i;  // pi has value 3.0
unsigned char c = -1; // assuming 8-bit chars, c has value 255
signed char c2 = 256; // assuming 8-bit chars, the value of c2 is undefined
```

what happens depends on the range of the values that the types permit:

- When we assign one of the nonbool arithmetic types to a `bool` object, the result is `false` if the value is 0 and `true` otherwise.
- When we assign a `bool` to one of the other arithmetic types, the resulting value is 1 if the `bool` is `true` and 0 if the `bool` is `false`.
- When we assign an integral value to an object of floating-point type, the fractional part is zero. Precision may be lost if the integer has more bits than the floating-point object can accommodate.
- If we assign an out-of-range value to an object of unsigned type, the result is the remainder of the value modulo the number of values the target type can hold. For example, an 8-bit **unsigned char** can hold values from 0 through 255, inclusive. If we assign a value outside this range, the compiler assigns the remainder of that value modulo 256. Therefore, assigning `-1` to an 8-bit **unsigned char** gives that object the value 255.
- If we assign an out-of-range value to an object of signed type, the result is **undefined**. The program might appear to work, it might crash, or it might produce garbage values.

**Advice: Avoid Undefined and Implementation-Defined Behavior**

Undefined behavior results from errors that the compiler is not required (and sometimes is not able) to detect. Even if the code compiles, a program that executes an undefined expression is in error.

Unfortunately, programs that contain undefined behavior can appear to execute correctly in some circumstances and/or on some compilers. There is no guarantee that the same program, compiled under a different compiler or even a subsequent release of the same compiler, will continue to run correctly. Nor is there any guarantee that what works with one set of inputs will work with another.

Similarly, programs usually should avoid implementation-defined behavior, such as assuming that the size of an `int` is a fixed and known value. Such programs are said to be nonportable. When the program is moved to another machine, code that relied on implementation-defined behavior may fail. Tracking down these sorts of problems in previously working programs is, mildly put, unpleasant.

The compiler applies these same type conversions when we use a value of one arithmetic type where a value of another arithmetic type is expected. For example, when we use a `nonbool` value as a condition (§ 1.4.1, p. 8), the arithmetic value is converted to `bool` in the same way that it would be converted if we had assigned that arithmetic value to a `bool` variable:

```
int i = 42;
if (i)           // condition will evaluate as true
    i = 0;
```

If the value is 0, then the condition is `false`; all other (nonzero) values yield `true`.

By the same token, when we use a `bool` in an arithmetic expression, its value always converts to either 0 or 1. As a result, using a `bool` in an arithmetic expression is almost surely incorrect.

**Expressions Involving Unsigned Types**

Although we are unlikely to intentionally assign a negative value to an object of unsigned type, we can (all too easily) write code that does so implicitly. For example, if we use both `unsigned` and `int` values in an arithmetic expression, the `int` value ordinarily is converted to `unsigned`. Converting an `int` to `unsigned` executes the same way as if we assigned the `int` to an `unsigned`:

```
unsigned u = 10;
int i = -42;
std::cout << i + i << std::endl;           // prints -84
std::cout << u + i << std::endl;          // if 32-bit ints, prints 4294967264
```

In the first expression, we add two (negative) `int` values and obtain the expected result. In the second expression, the `int` value -42 is converted to `unsigned` before the addition is done. Converting a negative number to `unsigned` behaves exactly as if we had attempted to assign that negative value to an `unsigned` object. The value “wraps around” as described above.

Regardless of whether one or both operands are `unsigned`, if we subtract a value from an `unsigned`, we must be sure that the result cannot be negative:

```
unsigned u1 = 42, u2 = 10;
std::cout << u1 - u2 << std::endl; // ok: result is 32
std::cout << u2 - u1 << std::endl; // ok: but the result will wrap around
```

The fact that an `unsigned` cannot be less than zero also affects how we write loops. For example, in the exercises to § 1.4.1 (p. 8), you were to write a loop that used the decrement operator to print the numbers from 10 down to 0. The loop you wrote probably looked something like

```
for (int i = 10; i >= 0; --i)
    std::cout << i << std::endl;
```

We might think we could rewrite this loop using an `unsigned`. After all, we don’t plan to print negative numbers. However, this simple change in type means that our loop will never terminate:

```
// WRONG: u can never be less than 0; the condition will always succeed
for (unsigned u = 10; u >= 0; --u)
    std::cout << u << std::endl;
```

Consider what happens when `u` is 0. On that iteration, we’ll print 0 and then execute the expression in the `for` loop. That expression, `--u`, subtracts 1 from `u`. That result, -1, won’t fit in an `unsigned` value. As with any other out-of-range value, -1 will be transformed to an `unsigned` value. Assuming 32-bit ints, the result of `--u`, when `u` is 0, is 4294967295.



One way to write this loop is to use a **while** instead of a **for**. Using a **while** lets us decrement before (rather than after) printing our value:

```
unsigned u = 11; // start the loop one past the first element we want to print
while (u > 0) {
    --u; // decrement first, so that the last iteration will print 0
    std::cout << u << std::endl;
}
```

This loop starts by decrementing the value of the loop control variable. On the last iteration, *u* will be 1 on entry to the loop. We'll decrement that value, meaning that we'll print 0 on this iteration. When we next test *u* in the **while** condition, its value will be 0 and the loop will exit. Because we start by decrementing *u*, we have to initialize *u* to a value one greater than the first value we want to print. Hence, we initialize *u* to 11, so that the first value printed is 10.

### Caution: Don't Mix Signed and Unsigned Types

Expressions that mix signed and unsigned values can yield surprising results when the signed value is negative. It is essential to remember that signed values are automatically converted to unsigned. For example, in an expression like *a \* b*, if *a* is -1 and *b* is 1, then if both *a* and *b* are **ints**, the value is, as expected -1. However, if *a* is **int** and *b* is an **unsigned**, then the value of this expression depends on how many bits an **int** has on the particular machine. On our machine, this expression yields 4294967295.

## Exercises Section 2.1.2

**Exercise 2.3:** What output will the following code produce?

```
unsigned u = 10, u2 = 42;
std::cout << u2 - u << std::endl;
std::cout << u - u2 << std::endl;

int i = 10, i2 = 42;
std::cout << i2 - i << std::endl;
std::cout << i - i2 << std::endl;

std::cout << i - u << std::endl;
std::cout << u - i << std::endl;
```

**Exercise 2.4:** Write a program to check whether your predictions were correct. If not, study this section until you understand what the problem is.

## 2.1.3 Literals

A value, such as 42, is known as a **literal** because its value self-evident. Every literal has a type. The form and value of a literal determine its type.

### Integer and Floating-Point Literals

We can write an integer literal using decimal, octal, or hexadecimal notation. Integer literals that begin with 0 (zero) are interpreted as octal. Those that begin with either 0x or 0X are interpreted as hexadecimal. For example, we can write the value 20 in any of the following three ways:

```
20 /* decimal */    024 /* octal */    0x14 /* hexadecimal */
```

The type of an integer literal depends on its value and notation. By default, decimal literals are signed whereas octal and hexadecimal literals can be either signed or unsigned types. A decimal literal has the smallest type of **int**, **long**, or **long long** (i.e., the first type in this list) in which the literal's value fits. Octal and hexadecimal literals have the smallest type of **int**, **unsigned int**, **long**, **unsigned long**, **long long**, or **unsigned long long** in which the literal's value fits. It is an error to use a literal that is too large to fit in the largest related type. There are no literals of type **short**. We'll see in Table 2.2 (p. 30) that we can override these defaults by using a suffix.

Table 2.2: Specifying the Type of a Literal

Character and Character String Literals			
Prefix	Meaning	Type	
u	Unicode 16 character	char16_t	
U	Unicode 32 character	char32_t	
L	wide character	wchar_t	
Integer and Floating-Point Literals			
Suffix	Integer Minimum Type	Suffix	Floating-Point Type
u or U	unsigned	f or F	float
l or L	long	l or L	long double
ll or LL	long long		

Although integer literals may be stored in signed types, technically speaking, the value of a decimal literal is never a negative number. If we write what appears to be a negative decimal literal, for example, -42, the minus sign is not part of the literal. The minus sign is an operator that negates the value of its (literal) operand.

Floating-point literals include either a decimal point or an exponent specified using scientific notation. Using scientific notation, the exponent is indicated by either E or e:

```
3.14159 3.14159E0 0. 0e0 .001
```

By default, floating-point literals have type `double`. We can override the default using a suffix from Table 2.2.

### Character and Character String Literals

A character enclosed within single quotes is a literal of type `char`. Zero or more characters enclosed in double quotation marks is a string literal:

```
'a' // character literal
"Hello World!" // string literal
```

The type of a string literal is `array` of constant chars, a type we'll discuss in § 3.5.4 (p. 93). The compiler appends a null character (`'\0'`) to every string literal. Thus, the actual size of a string literal is one more than its apparent size. For example, the literal `'A'` represents the single character A, whereas the string literal `"A"` represents an array of two characters, the letter A and the null character.

Two string literals that appear adjacent to one another and that are separated only by spaces, tabs, or newlines are concatenated into a single literal. We use this form of literal when we need to write a literal that would otherwise be too large to fit comfortably on a single line:

```
// multiline string literal
std::cout << "a really, really long string literal "
             "that spans two lines" << std::endl;
```

### Escape Sequences

Some characters, such as backspace or control characters, have no visible image. Such characters are **non-printable**. Other characters (single and double quotation marks, question mark, and backslash) have special meaning in the language. Our programs cannot use any of these characters directly. Instead, we use an **escape sequence** to represent such characters. An escape sequence begins with a backslash. The language defines several escape sequences:

newline	<code>\n</code>	horizontal tab	<code>\t</code>	alert(bell)	<code>\a</code>
vertical tab	<code>\v</code>	backspace	<code>\b</code>	double quote	<code>\"</code>
backslash	<code>\\</code>	question mark	<code>\?</code>	single quote	<code>\'</code>
carriage return	<code>\r</code>	formfeed	<code>\f</code>		

We use an escape sequence as if it were a single character:

```
std::cout << '\n'; // prints a newline
std::cout << "\tHi!\n"; // prints a tab followed by "Hi!" and a newline
```

We can also write a generalized escape sequence, which is `\x` followed by one or more hexadecimal digits or a `\` followed by one, two, or three octal digits. The value represents the numerical value of the character. Some examples (assuming the Latin-1 character set):

\7	(bell)	\12	(newline)	\40	(blank)
\0	(null)	\115	('M')	\x4d	('M')

As with an escape sequence defined by the language, we use these escape sequences as we would any other character:

```
std::cout << "Hi \x4d0\x115!\n"; // prints Hi MOM! followed by a newline
std::cout << '\115' << '\n'; // prints M followed by a newline
```

Note that if a \ is followed by more than three octal digits, only the first three are associated with the For example, "\1234" represents two characters: the character represented by the octal value 123 and the character 4. In contrast, \x uses up all the hex digits following it; "\x1234" represents a single, 16-bit character composed from the bits corresponding to these four hexadecimal digits. Because most machines have 8-bit chars, such values are unlikely to be useful. Ordinarily, hexadecimal characters with more than 8 bits are used with extended characters sets using one of the prefixes from Table 2.2.

### Specifying the Type of a Literal

We can override the default type of an integer, floating- point, or character literal by supplying a suffix or prefix as listed in Table 2.2.

```
L'a'      // wide character literal, type is wchar_t
u8"hi!"   // utf-8 string literal (utf-8 encodes a Unicode character in 8 bits)
42ULL     // unsigned integer literal, type is unsigned long long
1E-3      // single-precision floating-point literal, type is float
3.14159   // extended-precision floating-point literal, type is long double
```



When you write a **long** literal, use the uppercase L; the lowercase letter l is too easily mistaken for the digit 1.

We can independently specify the signedness and size of an integral literal. If the suffix contains a U, then the literal has an unsigned type, so a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal literal with a U suffix has the smallest type of **unsigned int**, **unsigned long**, or **unsigned long long** in which the literal's value fits. If the suffix contains an L, then the literal's type will be at least **long**; if the suffix contains LL, then the literal's type will be either **long long** or **unsigned long long**. We can combine U with either L or LL. For example, a literal with a suffix of UL will be either **unsigned long** or **unsigned long long**, depending on whether its value fits in **unsigned long**.

### Boolean and Pointer Literals

The words **true** and **false** are literals of type **bool**:

```
bool test = false;
```

The word **nullptr** is a pointer literal. We'll have more to say about pointers and **nullptr** in § 2.3.2(p. 40).

### Exercises Section 2.1.3

**Exercise 2.5:** Determine the type of each of the following literals. Explain the differences among the literals in each of the four examples:

- (a) 'a', L'a', "a", L"a"
- (b) 10, 10u, 10L, 10uL, 012, 0xC
- (c) 3.14, 3.14f, 3.14L
- (d) 10, 10u, 10., 10e-2

**Exercise 2.6:** What, if any, are the differences between the following definitions:

```
int month = 9, day = 7;
int month = 09, day = 07;
```

**Exercise 2.7:** What values do these literals represent? What type does each have?

- (a) "Who goes with F\145rgus?\012"
- (b) 3.14e1L
- (c) 1024f
- (d) 3.14L

**Exercise 2.8:** Using escape sequences, write a program to print 2M followed by a newline. Modify the program to print 2, then a tab, then an M, followed by a newline.

## 2.2 Variables

A *variable* provides us with named storage that our programs can manipulate. Each variable in C++ has a type. The type determines the size and layout of the variable's memory, the range of values that can be stored within that memory, and the set of operations that can be applied to the variable. C++ programmers tend to refer to variables as “variables” or “objects” interchangeably.

### 2.2.1 Variable Definitions

A simple variable definition consists of a *type specifier*, followed by a list of one or more variable names separated by commas, and ends with a semicolon. Each name in the list has the type defined by the type specifier. A definition may (optionally) provide an initial value for one or more of the names it defines:

```
int sum = 0, value, // sum, value, and units_sold have type int
units_sold = 0;    // sum and units_sold have initial value 0
Sales_item item; // item has type Sales_item
// string is a library type, representing a variable-length
// sequence of characters
std::string book("0-201-78345-X"); // book initialized from string literal
```

The definition of `book` uses the `std::string` library type. Like `iostream` (§ 1.2, p. 4), `string` is defined in namespace `std`. We'll have more to say about the `string` type in Chapter 3. For now, what's useful to know is that a `string` is a type that represents a variable-length sequence of characters. The `string` library gives us several ways to initialize `string` objects. One of these ways is as a copy of a string literal (§ 2.1.3, p. 29). Thus, `book` is initialized to hold the characters `0-201-78345-X`.

**Terminology: What is an Object?**

C++ programmers tend to be cavalier in their use of the term *object*. Most generally, an object is a region of memory that can contain data and has a type.

Some use the term object only to refer to variables or values of class types. Others distinguish between named and unnamed objects, using the term variable to refer to named objects. Still others distinguish between objects and values, using the term object for data that can be changed by the program and the term value for data that are read-only.

In this book, we'll follow the more general usage that an object is a region of memory that has a type. We will freely use the term object regardless of whether the object has built-in or class type, is named or unnamed, or can be read or written.

**Initializers**

An object that is **initialized** gets the specified value at the moment it is created. The values used to initialize a variable can be arbitrarily complicated expressions. When a definition defines two or more variables, the name of each object becomes visible immediately. Thus, it is possible to initialize a variable to the value of one defined earlier in the same definition.

```
// ok: price is defined and initialized before it is used to initialize discount
double price = 109.99, discount = price * 0.16;
// ok: call applyDiscount and use the return value to initialize salePrice
double salePrice = applyDiscount(price, discount);
```

Initialization in C++ is a surprisingly complicated topic and one we will return to again and again. Many programmers are confused by the use of the = symbol to initialize a variable. It is tempting to think of initialization as a form of assignment, but initialization and assignment are different operations in C++. This concept is particularly confusing because in many languages the distinction is irrelevant and can be ignored. Moreover, even in C++ the distinction often doesn't matter. Nonetheless, it is a crucial concept and one we will reiterate throughout the text.



Initialization is not assignment. Initialization happens when a variable is given a value when it is created. Assignment obliterates an object's current value and replaces that value with a new one.

**List Initialization**

One way in which initialization is a complicated topic is that the language defines several different forms of initialization. For example, we can use any of the following four different ways to define an `int` variable named `units_sold` and initialize it to 0:

```
int units_sold = 0;
int units_sold = {0};
int units_sold{0};
```

The generalized use of curly braces for initialization was introduced as part of the new standard. This form of initialization previously had been allowed only in more restricted ways. For reasons we'll learn about in § 3.2.1 (p. 66), this form of initialization is referred to as **list initialization**. Braced lists of initializers can now be used whenever we initialize an object and in some cases when we assign a new value to an object.

When used with variables of built-in type, this form of initialization has one important property: The compiler will not let us list initialize variables of built-in type if the initializer might lead to the loss of information:

```
long double ld = 3.1415926536;
int a{ld}, b = {ld}; // error: narrowing conversion required
int c(ld), d = ld; // ok: but value will be truncated
```

The compiler rejects the initializations of `a` and `b` because using a `long double` to initialize an `int` is likely to lose data. At a minimum, the fractional part of `ld` will be truncated. In addition, the integer part in `ld` might be too large to fit in an `int`.

As presented here, the distinction might seem trivial—after all, we'd be unlikely to directly initialize an `int` from a `long double`. However, as we'll see in Chapter 16, such initializations might happen unintentionally. We'll say more about these forms of initialization in § 3.2.1 (p. 66) and § 3.3.1 (p. 75).

## Default Initialization

When we define a variable without an initializer, the variable is **default initialized**. Such variables are given the “default” value. What that default value is depends on the type of the variable and may also depend on where the variable is defined.

The value of an object of built-in type that is not explicitly initialized depends on where it is defined. Variables defined outside any function body are initialized to zero. With one exception, which we cover in § 6.1.1 (p. 157), variables of built-in type defined inside a function are **uninitialized**. The value of an uninitialized variable of built-in type is undefined (§ 2.1.2, p. 27). It is an error to copy or otherwise try to access the value of a variable whose value is undefined.

Each class controls how we initialize objects of that class type. In particular, it is up to the class whether we can define objects of that type without an initializer. If we can, the class determines what value the resulting object will have.

Most classes let us define objects without explicit initializers. Such classes supply an appropriate default value for us. For example, as we’ve just seen, the library string class says that if we do not supply an initializer, then the resulting string is the empty string:

```
std::string empty;    // empty implicitly initialized to the empty string
Sales_item item;      // default-initialized Sales_item object
```

Some classes require that every object be explicitly initialized. The compiler will complain if we try to create an object of such a class with no initializer.



Uninitialized objects of built-in type defined inside a function body have undefined value. Objects of class type that we do not explicitly initialize have a value that is defined by the class.

### Exercises Section 2.2.1

**Exercise 2.9:** Explain the following definitions. For those that are illegal, explain what’s wrong and how to correct it.

- (a) `std::cin >> int input_value;`
- (b) `int i = { 3.14 };`
- (c) `double salary = wage = 9999.99;`
- (d) `int i = 3.14;`

**Exercise 2.10:** What are the initial values, if any, of each of the following variables?

```
std::string global_str;
int global_int;
int main()
{
    int local_int;
    std::string local_str;
}
```

**Caution: Uninitialized Variables Cause Run-Time Problems**

An uninitialized variable has an indeterminate value. Trying to use the value of an uninitialized variable is an error that is often hard to debug. Moreover, the compiler is not required to detect such errors, although most will warn about at least some uses of uninitialized variables.

What happens when we use an uninitialized variable is undefined. Sometimes, we're lucky and our program crashes as soon as we access the object. Once we track down the location of the crash, it is usually easy to see that the variable was not properly initialized. Other times, the program completes but produces erroneous results. Even worse, the results may appear correct on one run of our program but fail on a subsequent run. Moreover, adding code to the program in an unrelated location can cause what we thought was a correct program to start producing incorrect results.



We recommend initializing every object of built-in type. It is not always necessary, but it is easier and safer to provide an initializer until you can be certain it is safe to omit the initializer.

**2.2.2 Variable Declarations and Definitions**

To allow programs to be written in logical parts, C++ supports what is commonly known as *separate compilation*. Separate compilation lets us split our programs into several files, each of which can be compiled independently.

When we separate a program into multiple files, we need a way to share code across those files. For example, code defined in one file may need to use a variable defined in another file. As a concrete example, consider `std::cout` and `std::cin`. These are objects defined somewhere in the standard library, yet our programs can use these objects.

To support separate compilation, C++ distinguishes between declarations and definitions. A **declaration** makes a name known to the program. A file that wants to use a name defined elsewhere includes a declaration for that name. A **definition** creates the associated entity.

A variable declaration specifies the type and name of a variable. A variable definition is a declaration. In addition to specifying the name and type, a definition also allocates storage and may provide the variable with an initial value.

To obtain a declaration that is not also a definition, we add the **extern** keyword and may not provide an explicit initializer:

```
extern int i; // declares but does not define i
int j; // declares and defines j
```

Any declaration that includes an explicit initializer is a definition. We can provide an initializer on a variable defined as **extern**, but doing so overrides the **extern**. An **extern** that has an initializer is a definition:

```
extern double pi = 3.1416; // definition
```

It is an error to provide an initializer on an **extern** inside a function.



Variables must be defined exactly once but can be declared many times.

The distinction between a declaration and a definition may seem obscure at this point but is actually important. To use a variable in more than one file requires declarations that are separate from the variable's definition. To use the same variable in multiple files, we must define that variable in one—and only one—file. Other files that use that variable must declare—but not define—that variable.

We'll have more to say about how C++ supports separate compilation in § 2.6.3 (p. 59) and § 6.1.3 (p. 159).

**Exercises Section 2.2.2**

**Exercise 2.11:** whether each of the following is a declaration or a definition:

- (a) `extern int ix = 1024;`
- (b) `int iy;`
- (c) `extern int iz;`



**Key Concept: Static Typing**

C++ is a statically typed language, which means that types are checked at compile time. The process by which types are checked is referred to as *type checking*.

As we've seen, the type of an object constrains the operations that the object can perform. In C++, the compiler checks whether the operations we write are supported by the types we use. If we try to do things that the type does not support, the compiler generates an error message and does not produce an executable file.

As our programs get more complicated, we'll see that static type checking can help find bugs. However, a consequence of static checking is that the type of every entity we use must be known to the compiler. As one example, we must declare the type of a variable before we can use that variable.

**2.2.3 Identifiers**

*Identifiers* in C++ can be composed of letters, digits, and the underscore character. The language imposes no limit on name length. Identifiers must begin with either a letter or an underscore. Identifiers are case-sensitive; upper- and lowercase letters are distinct:

```
// defines four different int variables
int somename, someName, SomeName, SOMENAME;
```

The language reserves a set of names, listed in Tables 2.3 and Table 2.4, for its own use. These names may not be used as identifiers.

Table 2.3: C++ Keywords

alignas	continue	friend	register	true
alignof	decltype	goto	reinterpret_cast	try
asm	default	if	return	typedef
auto	delete	inline	short	typeid
bool	do	int	signed	typename
break	double	long	sizeof	union
case	dynamic_cast	mutable	static	unsigned
catch	else	namespace	static_assert	using
char	enum	new	static_cast	virtual
char16_t	explicit	noexcept	struct	void
char32_t	export	nullptr	switch	volatile
class	extern	operator	template	wchar_t
const	false	private	this	while
constexpr	float	protected	thread_local	
const_cast	for	public	throw	

Table 2.4: C++ Alternative Operator Names

and(&&)	bitand(&)	compl(~)	not_eq(!=)	or_eq( =)	xor_eq(^=)
and_eq(&=)	bitor( )	not(!)	or(  )	xor(^)	

The standard also reserves a set of names for use in the standard library. The identifiers we define in our own programs may not contain two consecutive underscores, nor can an identifier begin with an underscore followed immediately by an uppercase letter. In addition, identifiers defined outside a function may not begin with an underscore.

**Conventions for Variable Names**

There are a number of generally accepted conventions for naming variables. Following these conventions can improve the readability of a program.

- An identifier should give some indication of its meaning.
- Variable names normally are lowercase—`index`, not `Index` or `INDEX`.
- Like `Sales_item`, classes we define usually begin with an uppercase letter.
- Identifiers with multiple words should visually distinguish each word, for example, `student_loan` or `studentLoan`, not `studentloan`.





Naming conventions are most useful when followed consistently.

### Exercises Section 2.2.3

**Exercise 2.12:** Which, if any, of the following names are invalid?

- `int double = 3.14;`
- `int _;`
- `int catch-22;`
- `int 1_or_2 = 1;`
- `double Double = 3.14;`

### 2.2.4 Scope of a Name

At any particular point in a program, each name that is in use refers to a specific entity—a variable, function, type, and so on. However, a given name can be reused to refer to different entities at different points in the program.

A **scope** is a part of the program in which a name has a particular meaning. Most scopes in C++ are delimited by curly braces.

The same name can refer to different entities in different scopes. Names are visible from the point where they are declared until the end of the scope in which the declaration appears.

As an example, consider the program from § 1.4.2 (p. 9):

```
#include <iostream>
int main()
{
    int sum = 0;
    // sum values from 1 through 10 inclusive
    for (int val = 1; val <= 10; ++val)
        sum += val; // equivalent to sum = sum + val
    std::cout << "Sum of 1 to 10 inclusive is "
               << sum << std::endl;
    return 0;
}
```

This program defines three names—`main`, `sum`, and `val`—and uses the namespace name `std`, along with two names from that namespace—`cout` and `endl`.

The name `main` is defined outside any curly braces. The name `main`—like most names defined outside a function—has **global scope**. Once declared, names at the global scope are accessible throughout the program. The name `sum` is defined within the scope of the block that is the body of the `main` function. It is accessible from its point of declaration throughout the rest of the `main` function but not outside of it. The variable `sum` has **block scope**. The name `val` is defined in the scope of the `for` statement. It can be used in that statement but not elsewhere in `main`.

#### Advice: Define Variables Where You First Use Them

It is usually a good idea to define an object near the point at which the object is first used. Doing so improves readability by making it easy to find the definition of the variable. More importantly, it is often easier to give the variable a useful initial value when the variable is defined close to where it is first used.

### Nested Scopes

Scopes can contain other scopes. The contained (or nested) scope is referred to as an **inner scope**, the containing scope is the **outer scope**.

```
#include <iostream>
// Program for illustration purposes only: It is bad style for a function
// to use a global variable and also define a local variable with the same name
```

```

int reused = 42; // reused has global scope
int main()
{
    int unique = 0; // unique has block scope
    // output #1: uses global reused; prints 42 0
    std::cout << reused << " " << unique << std::endl;
    int reused = 0; // new, local object named reused hides global reused
    // output #2: uses local reused; prints 0 0
    std::cout << reused << " " << unique << std::endl;
    // output #3: explicitly requests the global reused; prints 42 0
    std::cout << ::reused << " " << unique << std::endl;
    return 0;
}

```

Output #1 appears before the local definition of `reused`. Therefore, this output statement uses the name `reused` that is defined in the global scope. This statement prints 42 0. Output #2 occurs after the local definition of `reused`. The local `reused` is now **in scope**. Thus, this second output statement uses the local object named `reused` rather than the global one and prints 0 0. Output #3 uses the scope operator (§ 1.2, p. 4) to override the default scoping rules. The global scope has no name. Hence, when the scope operator has an empty left-hand side, it is a request to fetch the name on the right-hand side from the global scope. Thus, this expression uses the global `reused` and prints 42 0.



It is almost always a bad idea to define a local variable with the same name as a global variable that the function uses or might use.

### Exercises Section 2.2.4

**Exercise 2.13:** What is the value of `j` in the following program?

```

int i = 42;
int main()
{
    int i = 100;
    int j = i;
}

```

**Exercise 2.14:** Is the following program legal? If so, what values are printed?

```

int i = 100, sum = 0;
for (int i = 0; i != 10; ++i)
    sum += i;
std::cout << i << " " << sum << std::endl;

```

## 2.3 Compound Types

A **compound type** is a type that is defined in terms of another type. C++ has several compound types, two of which—references and pointers—we’ll cover in this chapter.

Defining variables of compound type is more complicated than the declarations we’ve seen so far. In § 2.2 (p. 32) we said that simple declarations consist of a type followed by a list of variable names. More generally, a declaration is a **base type** followed by a list of **declarators**. Each declarator names a variable and gives the variable a type that is related to the base type.

The declarations we have seen so far have declarators that are nothing more than variable names. The type of such variables is the base type of the declaration. More complicated declarators specify variables with compound types that are built from the base type of the declaration.

### 2.3.1 References



The new standard introduced a new kind of reference: an “rvalue reference,” which we’ll cover in § 13.6.1 (p. 283). These references are primarily intended for use inside classes. Technically speaking, when we use the term reference, we mean “lvalue reference.”

A **reference** defines an alternative name for an object. A reference type “refers to” another type. We define a reference type by writing a declarator of the form `&d`, where `d` is the name being declared:

```
int ival = 1024;
int &refVal = ival; // refVal refers to (is another name for) ival
int &refVal2; // error: a reference must be initialized
```

Ordinarily, when we initialize a variable, the value of the initializer is copied into the object we are creating. When we define a reference, instead of copying the initializer’s value, we **bind** the reference to its initializer. Once initialized, a reference remains bound to its initial object. There is no way to rebind a reference to refer to a different object. Because there is no way to rebind a reference, references must be initialized.

#### A Reference Is an Alias



A reference is not an object. Instead, a reference is just another name for an already existing object.

After a reference has been defined, all operations on that reference are actually operations on the object to which the reference is bound:

```
refVal = 2; // assigns 2 to the object to which refVal refers, i.e., to ival
int ii = refVal; // same as ii = ival
```

When we assign to a reference, we are assigning to the object to which the reference is bound. When we fetch the value of a reference, we are really fetching the value of the object to which the reference is bound. Similarly, when we use a reference as an initializer, we are really using the object to which the reference is bound:

```
// ok: refVal3 is bound to the object to which refVal is bound, i.e., to ival
int &refVal3 = refVal;
// initializes i from the value in the object to which refVal is bound
int i = refVal; // ok: initializes i to the same value as ival
```

Because references are not objects, we may not define a reference to a reference.

#### Reference Definitions

We can define multiple references in a single definition. Each identifier that is a reference must be preceded by the `&` symbol:

```
int i = 1024, i2 = 2048; // i and i2 are both ints
int &r = i, r2 = i2; // r is a reference bound to i; r2 is an int
int i3 = 1024, &ri = i3; // i3 is an int; ri is a reference bound to i3
int &r3 = i3, &r4 = i2; // both r3 and r4 are references
```

With two exceptions that we’ll cover in § 2.4.1 (p. 47) and § 15.2.3 (p. 295), the type of a reference and the object to which the reference refers must match exactly. Moreover, for reasons we’ll explore in § 2.4.1, a reference may be bound only to an object, not to a literal or to the result of a more general expression:

```
int &refVal4 = 10; // error: initializer must be an object
double dval = 3.14;
int &refVal5 = dval; // error: initializer must be an int object
```

### Exercises Section 2.3.1

**Exercise 2.15:** Which of the following definitions, if any, are invalid? Why?

- (a) `int ival = 1.01;`
- (b) `int &rval1 = 1.01;`
- (c) `int &rval2 = ival;`
- (d) `int &rval3;`

**Exercise 2.16:** Which, if any, of the following assignments are invalid? If they are valid, explain what they do. `int i = 0, &r1 = i; double d = 0, &r2 = d;`

- (a) `r2 = 3.14159;`
- (b) `r2 = r1;`
- (c) `i = r2;`
- (d) `r1 = d;`

**Exercise 2.17:** What does the following code print?

```
int i, &ri = i;
i = 5; ri = 10;
std::cout << i << " " << ri << std::endl;
```

### 2.3.2 Pointers

A **pointer** is a compound type that “points to” another type. Like references, pointers are used for indirect access to other objects. Unlike a reference, a pointer is an object in its own right. Pointers can be assigned and copied; a single pointer can point to several different objects over its lifetime. Unlike a reference, a pointer need not be initialized at the time it is defined. Like other built-in types, pointers defined at block scope have undefined value if they are not initialized.



Pointers are often hard to understand. Debugging problems due to pointer errors bedevil even experienced programmers.

We define a pointer type by writing a declarator of the form `*d`, where `d` is the name being defined. The `*` must be repeated for each pointer variable:

```
int *ip1, *ip2; // both ip1 and ip2 are pointers to int
double dp, *dp2; // dp2 is a pointer to double; dp is a double
```

#### Taking the Address of an Object

A pointer holds the address of another object. We get the address of an object by using the address-of operator (the `&` **operator**):

```
int ival = 42;
int *p = &ival; // p holds the address of ival; p is a pointer to ival
```

The second statement defines `p` as a pointer to `int` and initializes `p` to point to the `int` object named `ival`. Because references are not objects, they don’t have addresses. Hence, we may not define a pointer to a reference.

With two exceptions, which we cover in § 2.4.2 (p. 48) and § 15.2.3 (p. 295), the types of the pointer and the object to which it points must match:

```
double dval;
double *pd = &dval; // ok: initializer is the address of a double
double *pd2 = pd; // ok: initializer is a pointer to double
int *pi = pd; // error: types of pi and pd differ
pi = &dval; // error: assigning the address of a double to a pointer to int
```

The types must match because the type of the pointer is used to infer the type of the object to which the pointer points. If a pointer addressed an object of another type, operations performed on the underlying object would fail.

## Pointer Value

The value (i.e., the address) stored in a pointer can be in one of four states:

1. It can point to an object.
2. It can point to the location just immediately past the end of an object.
3. It can be a null pointer, indicating that it is not bound to any object.
4. It can be invalid; values other than the preceding three are invalid.

It is an error to copy or otherwise try to access the value of an invalid pointer. As when we use an uninitialized variable, this error is one that the compiler is unlikely to detect. The result of accessing an invalid pointer is undefined. Therefore, we must always know whether a given pointer is valid.

Although pointers in cases 2 and 3 are valid, there are limits on what we can do with such pointers. Because these pointers do not point to any object, we may not use them to access the (supposed) object to which the pointer points. If we do attempt to access an object through such pointers, the behavior is undefined.

## Using a Pointer to Access an Object

When a pointer points to an object, we can use the dereference operator (the **\* operator**) to access that object:

```
int ival = 42;
int *p = &ival; // p holds the address of ival; p is a pointer to ival
cout << *p; // * yields the object to which p points; prints 42
```

Dereferencing a pointer yields the object to which the pointer points. We can assign to that object by assigning to the result of the dereference:

```
*p = 0; // * yields the object; we assign a new value to ival through p
cout << *p; // prints 0
```

When we assign to `*p`, we are assigning to the object to which `p` points.



We may dereference only a valid pointer that points to an object.

## Key Concept: Some Symbols Have Multiple Meanings

Some symbols, such as `&` and `*`, are used as both an operator in an expression and as part of a declaration. The context in which a symbol is used determines what the symbol means:

```
int i = 42;
int &r = i; // & follows a type and is part of a declaration; r is a reference
int *p; // * follows a type and is part of a declaration; p is a pointer
p = &i; // & is used in an expression as the address-of operator
*p = i; // * is used in an expression as the dereference operator
int &r2 = *p; // & is part of the declaration; * is the dereference operator
```

In declarations, `&` and `*` are used to form compound types. In expressions, these same symbols are used to denote an operator. Because the same symbol is used with very different meanings, it can be helpful to ignore appearances and think of them as if they were different symbols.

## Null Pointers

A **null pointer** does not point to any object. Code can check whether a pointer is null before attempting to use it. There are several ways to obtain a null pointer:

```
int *p1 = nullptr; // equivalent to int *p1 = 0;
int *p2 = 0; // directly initializes p2 from the literal constant 0
// must #include cstdlib
int *p3 = NULL; // equivalent to int *p3 = 0;
```

The most direct approach is to initialize the pointer using the literal `nullptr`, which was introduced by the new standard. `nullptr` is a literal that has a special type that can be converted (§ 2.1.2, p. 27) to any other pointer type. Alternatively, we can initialize a pointer to the literal 0, as we do in the definition of `p2`.

Older programs sometimes use a **preprocessor variable** named `NULL`, which the `cstdlib` header defines as 0.

We'll describe the preprocessor in a bit more detail in § 2.6.3 (p. 59). What's useful to know now is that the preprocessor is a program that runs before the compiler. Preprocessor variables are managed by the preprocessor, and are not part of the `std` namespace. As a result, we refer to them directly without the `std::` prefix.

When we use a preprocessor variable, the preprocessor automatically replaces the variable by its value. Hence, initializing a pointer to `NULL` is equivalent to initializing it to 0. ModernC++ programs generally should avoid using `NULL` and use `nullptr` instead.

It is illegal to assign an `int` variable to a pointer, even if the variable's value happens to be 0.

```
int zero = 0;
pi = zero; // error: cannot assign an int to a pointer
```

### Advice: Initialize all Pointers

Uninitialized pointers are a common source of run-time errors.

As with any other uninitialized variable, what happens when we use an uninitialized pointer is undefined. Using an uninitialized pointer almost always results in a run-time crash. However, debugging the resulting crashes can be surprisingly hard.

Under most compilers, when we use an uninitialized pointer, the bits in the memory in which the pointer resides are used as an address. Using an uninitialized pointer is a request to access a supposed object at that supposed location. There is no way to distinguish a valid address from an invalid one formed from the bits that happen to be in the memory in which the pointer was allocated.

Our recommendation to initialize all variables is particularly important for pointers. If possible, define a pointer only after the object to which it should point has been defined. If there is no object to bind to a pointer, then initialize the pointer to `nullptr` or `zero`. That way, the program can detect that the pointer does not point to an object.

### Assignment and Pointers

Both pointers and references give indirect access to other objects. However, there are important differences in how they do so. The most important is that a reference is not an object. Once we have defined a reference, there is no way to make that reference refer to a different object. When we use a reference, we always get the object to which the reference was initially bound.

There is no such identity between a pointer and the address that it holds. As with any other (nonreference) variable, when we assign to a pointer, we give the pointer itself a new value. Assignment makes the pointer point to a different object:

```
int i = 42;
int *pi = 0; // pi is initialized but addresses no object
int *pi2 = &i; // pi2 initialized to hold the address of i
int *pi3; // if pi3 is defined inside a block, pi3 is uninitialized
pi3 = pi2; // pi3 and pi2 address the same object, e.g., i
pi2 = 0; // pi2 now addresses no object
```

It can be hard to keep straight whether an assignment changes the pointer or the object to which the pointer points. The important thing to keep in mind is that assignment changes its left-hand operand. When we write

```
pi = &ival; // value in pi is changed; pi now points to ival
```

we assign a new value to `pi`, which changes the address that `pi` holds. On the other hand, when we write

```
*pi = 0; // value in ival is changed; pi is unchanged
```

then `*pi` (i.e., the value to which `pi` points) is changed.

## Other Pointer Operations

So long as the pointer has a valid value, we can use a pointer in a condition. Just as when we use an arithmetic value in a condition (§ 2.1.2, p. 27), if the pointer is 0, then the condition is **false**:

```
int ival = 1024;
int *pi = 0; // pi is a valid, null pointer
int *pi2 = &ival; // pi2 is a valid pointer that holds the address of ival
if (pi) // pi has value 0, so condition evaluates as false
    // ...
if (pi2) // pi2 points to ival, so it is not 0; the condition evaluates as true
    // ...
```

Any nonzero pointer evaluates as **true**.

Given two valid pointers of the same type, we can compare them using the equality (==) or inequality (!=) operators. The result of these operators has type **bool**. Two pointers are equal if they hold the same address and unequal otherwise. Two pointers hold the same address (i.e., are equal) if they are both null, if they address the same object, or if they are both pointers one past the same object. Note that it is possible for a pointer to an object and a pointer one past the end of a different object to hold the same address. Such pointers will compare equal.

Because these operations use the value of the pointer, a pointer used in a condition or in a comparison must be a valid pointer. Using an invalid pointer as a condition or in a comparison is undefined.

§ 3.5.3 (p. 89) will cover additional pointer operations.

## void\* Pointers

The type **void\*** is a special pointer type that can hold the address of any object. Like any other pointer, a **void\*** pointer holds an address, but the type of the object at that address is unknown:

```
double obj = 3.14, *pd = &obj;
// ok: void* can hold the address value of any data pointer type
void *pv = &obj; // obj can be an object of any type
pv = pd; // pv can hold a pointer to any type
```

There are only a limited number of things we can do with a **void\*** pointer: We can compare it to another pointer, we can pass it to or return it from a function, and we can assign it to another **void\*** pointer. We cannot use a **void\*** to operate on the object it addresses—we don't know that object's type, and the type determines what operations we can perform on the object.

Generally, we use a **void\*** pointer to deal with memory as memory, rather than using the pointer to access the object stored in that memory. We'll cover using **void\*** pointers in this way in § 19.1.1 (p. 333). § 4.11.3 (p. 124) will show how we can retrieve the address stored in a **void\*** pointer.

### Exercises Section 2.3.2

**Exercise 2.18:** Write code to change the value of a pointer. Write code to change the value to which the pointer points.

**Exercise 2.19:** Explain the key differences between pointers and references.

**Exercise 2.20:** What does the following program do?

```
int i = 42;
int *p1 = &i;
*p1 = *p1 * *p1;
```

**Exercise 2.21:** Explain each of the following definitions. Indicate whether any are illegal and, if so, why.

```
int i = 0;
```

(a) `double* dp = &i;`

(b) `int *ip = i;`

(c) `int *p = &i;`

**Exercise 2.22:** Assuming `p` is a pointer to `int`, explain the following code:

```
if (p) // ...
if (*p) // ...
```

**Exercise 2.23:** Given a pointer `p`, can you determine whether `p` points to a valid object? If so, how? If not, why not?

**Exercise 2.24:** Why is the initialization of `p` legal but that of `lp` illegal?

```
int i = 42; void *p = &i; long *lp = &i;
```

### 2.3.3 Understanding Compound Type Declarations

As we've seen, a variable definition consists of a base type and a list of declarators. Each declarator can relate its variable to the base type differently from the other declarators in the same definition. Thus, a single definition might define variables of different types:

```
// i is an int; p is a pointer to int; r is a reference to int
int i = 1024, *p = &i, &r = i;
```



Many programmers are confused by the interaction between the base type and the type modification that may be part of a declarator.

#### Defining Multiple Variables

It is a common misconception to think that the type modifier (`*` or `&`) applies to all the variables defined in a single statement. Part of the problem arises because we can put whitespace between the type modifier and the name being declared:

```
int* p; // legal but might be misleading
```

We say that this definition might be misleading because it suggests that `int*` is the type of each variable declared in that statement. Despite appearances, the base type of this declaration is `int`, not `int*`. The `*` modifies the type of `p`. It says nothing about any other objects that might be declared in the same statement:

```
int* p1, p2; // p1 is a pointer to int; p2 is an int
```

There are two common styles used to define multiple variables with pointer or reference type. The first places the type modifier adjacent to the identifier:

```
int *p1, *p2; // both p1 and p2 are pointers to int
```

This style emphasizes that the variable has the indicated compound type.

The second places the type modifier with the type but defines only one variable per statement:



```
int* p1; // p1 is a pointer to int
int* p2; // p2 is a pointer to int
```

This style emphasizes that the declaration defines a compound type.



There is no single right way to define pointers or references. The important thing is to choose a style and use it consistently.

In this book we use the first style and place the `*` (or the `&`) with the variable name.

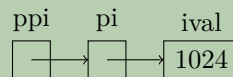
## Pointers to Pointers

In general, there are no limits to how many type modifiers can be applied to a declarator. When there is more than one modifier, they combine in ways that are logical but not always obvious. As one example, consider a pointer. A pointer is an object in memory, so like any object it has an address. Therefore, we can store the address of a pointer in another pointer.

We indicate each pointer level by its own `*`. That is, we write `**` for a pointer to a pointer, `***` for a pointer to a pointer to a pointer, and so on:

```
int ival = 1024;
int *pi = &ival; // pi points to an int
int **ppi = &pi; // ppi points to a pointer to an int
```

Here `pi` is a pointer to an `int` and `ppi` is a pointer to a pointer to an `int`. We might represent these objects as



Just as dereferencing a pointer to an `int` yields an `int`, dereferencing a pointer to a pointer yields a pointer. To access the underlying object, we must dereference the original pointer twice:

```
cout << "The value of ival\n"
    << "direct value: " << ival << "\n"
    << "indirect value: " << *pi << "\n"
    << "doubly indirect value: " << **ppi
    << endl;
```

This program prints the value of `ival` three different ways: first, directly; then, through the pointer to `int` in `pi`; and finally, by dereferencing `ppi` twice to get to the underlying value in `ival`.

## References to Pointers

A reference is not an object. Hence, we may not have a pointer to a reference. However, because a pointer is an object, we can define a reference to a pointer:

```
int i = 42;
int *p; // p is a pointer to int
int *&r = p; // r is a reference to the pointer p
r = &i; // r refers to a pointer; assigning &i to r makes p point to i
*r = 0; // dereferencing r yields i, the object to which p points; changes i to 0
```

The easiest way to understand the type of `r` is to read the definition right to left. The symbol closest to the name of the variable (in this case the `&` in `&r`) is the one that has the most immediate effect on the variable's type. Thus, we know that `r` is a reference. The rest of the declarator determines the type to which `r` refers. The next symbol, `*` in this case, says that the type `r` refers to is a pointer type. Finally, the base type of the declaration says that `r` is a reference to a pointer to an `int`.



It can be easier to understand complicated pointer or reference declarations if you read them from right to left.

### Exercises Section 2.3.3

**Exercise 2.25:** Determine the types and values of each of the following variables.

- (a) `int* ip, &r = ip;`
- (b) `int i, *ip = 0;`
- (c) `int* ip, ip2;`

## 2.4 `const` Qualifier

Sometimes we want to define a variable whose value we know cannot be changed. For example, we might want to use a variable to refer to the size of a buffer size. Using a variable makes it easy for us to change the size of the buffer if we decided the original size wasn't what we needed. On the other hand, we'd also like to prevent code from inadvertently giving a new value to the variable we use to represent the buffer size. We can make a variable unchangeable by defining the variable's type as `const`:

```
const int bufSize = 512; // input buffer size
```

defines `bufSize` as a constant. Any attempt to assign to `bufSize` is an error:

```
bufSize = 512; // error: attempt to write to const object
```

Because we can't change the value of a `const` object after we create it, it must be initialized. As usual, the initializer may be an arbitrarily complicated expression:

```
const int i = get_size(); // ok: initialized at run time
const int j = 42; // ok: initialized at compile time
const int k; // error: k is uninitialized const
```

### Initialization and `const`

As we have observed many times, the type of an object defines the operations that can be performed by that object. A `const` type can use most but not all of the same operations as its `nonconst` version. The one restriction is that we may use only those operations that cannot change an object. So, for example, we can use a `const int` in arithmetic expressions in exactly the same way as a plain, `nonconst int`. A `const int` converts to `bool` the same way as a plain `int`, and so on.

Among the operations that don't change the value of an object is initialization—when we use an object to initialize another object, it doesn't matter whether either or both of the objects are `consts`:

```
int i = 42;
const int ci = i; // ok: the value in i is copied into ci
int j = ci; // ok: the value in ci is copied into j
```

Although `ci` is a `const int`, the value in `ci` is an `int`. The constness of `ci` matters only for operations that might change `ci`. When we copy `ci` to initialize `j`, we don't care that `ci` is a `const`. Copying an object doesn't change that object. Once the copy is made, the new object has no further access to the original object.

### By Default, `const` Objects Are Local to a File

When a `const` object is initialized from a compile-time constant, such as in our definition of `bufSize`:

```
const int bufSize = 512; // input buffer size
```

the compiler will usually replace uses of the variable with its corresponding value during compilation. That is, the compiler will generate code using the value `512` in the places that our code uses `bufSize`.

To substitute the value for the variable, the compiler has to see the variable's initializer. When we split a program into multiple files, every file that uses the `const` must have access to its initializer. In order to see the initializer, the variable must be defined in every file that wants to use the variable's value (§ 2.2.2, p. 35). To support this usage, yet avoid multiple definitions of the same variable, `const` variables are defined as local to the file. When we define a `const` with the same name in multiple files, it is as if we had written definitions for separate variables in each file.

Sometimes we have a `const` variable that we want to share across multiple files but whose initializer is not a constant expression. In this case, we don't want the compiler to generate a separate variable in each file.

Instead, we want the `const` object to behave like other (nonconst) variables. We want to define the `const` in one file, and declare it in the other files that use that object.

To define a single instance of a `const` variable, we use the keyword `extern` on both its definition and declaration(s):

```
// file_1.cc defines and initializes a const that is accessible to other files
extern const int bufSize = fcn();
// file_1.h
extern const int bufSize; // same bufSize as defined in file_1.cc
```

In this program, `file_1.cc` defines and initializes `bufSize`. Because this declaration includes an initializer, it is (as usual) a definition. However, because `bufSize` is `const`, we must specify `extern` in order for `bufSize` to be used in other files.

The declaration in `file_1.h` is also `extern`. In this case, the `extern` signifies that `bufSize` is not local to this file and that its definition will occur elsewhere.



To share a `const` object among multiple files, you must define the variable as `extern`.

### Exercises Section 2.4.0

**Exercise 2.26:** Which of the following are legal? For those that are illegal, explain why.

- (a) `const int buf;`
- (b) `int cnt = 0;`
- (c) `const int sz = cnt;`
- (d) `++cnt; ++sz;`

#### 2.4.1 References to const

As with any other object, we can bind a reference to an object of a `const` type. To do so we use a [reference to const](#), which is a reference that refers to a `const` type. Unlike an ordinary reference, a reference to `const` cannot be used to change the object to which the reference is bound:

```
const int ci = 1024;
const int &r1 = ci; // ok: both reference and underlying object are const
r1 = 42; // error: r1 is a reference to const
int &r2 = ci; // error: non const reference to a const object
```

Because we cannot assign directly to `ci`, we also should not be able to use a reference to change `ci`. Therefore, the initialization of `r2` is an error. If this initialization were legal, we could use `r2` to change the value of its underlying object.

#### Terminology: const Reference is a Reference to const

C++ programmers tend to abbreviate the phrase “reference to `const`” as “`const` reference.” This abbreviation makes sense—if you remember that it is an abbreviation.

Technically speaking, there are no `const` references. A reference is not an object, so we cannot make a reference itself `const`. Indeed, because there is no way to make a reference refer to a different object, in some sense all references are `const`. Whether a reference refers to a `const` or nonconst type affects what we can do with that reference, not whether we can alter the binding of the reference itself.

#### Initialization and References to const

In § 2.3.1 (p. 39) we noted that there are two exceptions to the rule that the type of a reference must match the type of the object to which it refers. The first exception is that we can initialize a reference to `const` from any expression that can be converted (§ 2.1.2, p. 27) to the type of the reference. In particular, we can bind a reference to `const` to a nonconst object, a literal, or a more general expression:

```
int i = 42;
const int &r1 = i; // we can bind a const int& to a plain int object
```

```
const int &r2 = 42; // ok: r2 is a reference to const
const int &r3 = r1 * 2; // ok: r3 is a reference to const
int &r4 = r * 2; // error: r4 is a plain, non const reference
```

The easiest way to understand this difference in initialization rules is to consider what happens when we bind a reference to an object of a different type:

```
double dval = 3.14;
const int &ri = dval;
```

Here `ri` refers to an `int`. Operations on `ri` will be integer operations, but `dval` is a floating-point number, not an integer. To ensure that the object to which `ri` is bound is an `int`, the compiler transforms this code into something like

```
const int temp = dval; // create a temporary const int from the double
const int &ri = temp; // bind ri to that temporary
```

In this case, `ri` is bound to a **temporary** object. A temporary object is an unnamed object created by the compiler when it needs a place to store a result from evaluating an expression. C++ programmers often use the word temporary as an abbreviation for temporary object.

Now consider what could happen if this initialization were allowed but `ri` was not `const`. If `ri` weren't `const`, we could assign to `ri`. Doing so would change the object to which `ri` is bound. That object is a temporary, not `dval`. The programmer who made `ri` refer to `dval` would probably expect that assigning to `ri` would change `dval`. After all, why assign to `ri` unless the intent is to change the object to which `ri` is bound? Because binding a reference to a temporary is almost surely not what the programmer intended, the language makes it illegal.

### A Reference to `const` May Refer to an Object That Is Not `const`

It is important to realize that a reference to `const` restricts only what we can do through that reference. Binding a reference to `const` to an object says nothing about whether the underlying object itself is `const`. Because the underlying object might be `nonconst`, it might be changed by other means:

```
int i = 42;
int &r1 = i; // r1 bound to i
const int &r2 = i; // r2 also bound to i; but cannot be used to change i
r1 = 0; // r1 is not const; i is now 0
r2 = 0; // error: r2 is a reference to const
```

Binding `r2` to the (`nonconst`) `int i` is legal. However, we cannot use `r2` to change `i`. Even so, the value in `i` still might change. We can change `i` by assigning to it directly, or by assigning to another reference bound to `i`, such as `r1`.

## 2.4.2 Pointers and `const`

As with references, we can define pointers that point to either `const` or `nonconst` types. Like a reference to `const` (§ 2.4.1, p. 47), a **pointer to `const`** may not be used to change the object to which the pointer points. We may store the address of a `const` object only in a pointer to `const`:

```
const double pi = 3.14; // pi is const; its value may not be changed
double *ptr = &pi; // error: ptr is a plain pointer
const double *cptr = &pi; // ok: cptr may point to a double that is const
*cptr = 42; // error: cannot assign to *cptr
```

In § 2.3.2 (p. 40) we noted that there are two exceptions to the rule that the types of a pointer and the object to which it points must match. The first exception is that we can use a pointer to `const` to point to a `nonconst` object:

```
double dval = 3.14; // dval is a double; its value can be changed
cptr = &dval; // ok: but can't change dval through cptr
```

Like a reference to `const`, a pointer to `const` says nothing about whether the object to which the pointer points is `const`. Defining a pointer as a pointer to `const` affects only what we can do with the pointer. It is important to remember that there is no guarantee that an object pointed to by a pointer to `const` won't change.



It may be helpful to think of pointers and references to `const` as pointers or references “that think they point or refer to `const`.”

## const Pointers

Unlike references, pointers are objects. Hence, as with any other object type, we can have a pointer that is itself `const`. Like any other `const` object, a `const` pointer must be initialized, and once initialized, its value (i.e., the address that it holds) may not be changed. We indicate that the pointer is `const` by putting the `const` after the `*`. This placement indicates that it is the pointer, not the pointed-to type, that is `const`:

```
int errNumb = 0;
int *const curErr = &errNumb; // curErr will always point to errNumb
const double pi = 3.14159;
const double *const pip = &pi; // pip is a const pointer to a const object
```

As we saw in § 2.3.3 (p. 44), the easiest way to understand these declarations is to read them from right to left. In this case, the symbol closest to `curErr` is `const`, which means that `curErr` itself will be a `const` object. The type of that object is formed from the rest of the declarator. The next symbol in the declarator is `*`, which means that `curErr` is a `const` pointer. Finally, the base type of the declaration completes the type of `curErr`, which is a `const` pointer to an object of type `int`. Similarly, `pip` is a `const` pointer to an object of type `const double`.

The fact that a pointer is itself `const` says nothing about whether we can use the pointer to change the underlying object. Whether we can change that object depends entirely on the type to which the pointer points. For example, `pip` is a `const` pointer to `const`. Neither the value of the object addressed by `pip` nor the address stored in `pip` can be changed. On the other hand, `curErr` addresses a plain, nonconst `int`. We can use `curErr` to change the value of `errNumb`:

```
*pip = 2.72; // error: pip is a pointer to const
// if the object to which curErr points (i.e., errNumb) is nonzero
if (*curErr) {
    errorHandler();
    *curErr = 0; // ok: reset the value of the object to which curErr is bound
}
```

### Exercises Section 2.4.2

**Exercise 2.27:** Which of the following initializations are legal? Explain why.

- (a) `int i = -1, &r = 0;`
- (b) `int *const p2 = &i2;`
- (c) `const int i = -1, &r = 0;`
- (d) `const int *const p3 = &i2;`
- (e) `const int *p1 = &i2;`
- (f) `const int &const r2;`
- (g) `const int i2 = i, &r = i;`

**Exercise 2.28:** Explain the following definitions. Identify any that are illegal.

- (a) `int i, *const cp;`
- (b) `int *p1, *const p2;`
- (c) `const int ic, &r = ic;`
- (d) `const int *const p3;`
- (e) `const int *p;`

**Exercise 2.29:** Using the variables in the previous exercise, which of the following assignments are legal? Explain why.

- (a) `i = ic;`
- (b) `p1 = p3;`
- (c) `p1 = &ic;`
- (d) `p3 = &ic;`
- (e) `p2 = p1;`
- (f) `ic = *p3;`

### 2.4.3 Top-Level `const`

As we've seen, a pointer is an object that can point to a different object. As a result, we can talk independently about whether a pointer is `const` and whether the objects to which it can point are `const`. We use the term **top-level `const`** to indicate that the pointer itself is a `const`. When a pointer can point to a `const` object, we refer to that `const` as a **low-level `const`**.

More generally, top-level `const` indicates that an object itself is `const`. Top-level `const` can appear in any object type, i.e., one of the built-in arithmetic types, a class type, or a pointer type. Low-level `const` appears in the base type of compound types such as pointers or references. Note that pointer types, unlike most other types, can have both top-level and low-level `const` independently:

```
int i = 0;
int *const p1 = &i; // we can't change the value of p1; const is top-level
const int ci = 42; // we cannot change ci; const is top-level
const int *p2 = &ci; // we can change p2; const is low-level
const int *const p3 = p2; // right-most const is top-level, left-most is not
const int &r = ci; // const in reference types is always low-level
```

The distinction between top-level and low-level matters when we copy an object. When we copy an object, top-level `const`s are ignored:

```
i = ci; // ok: copying the value of ci; top-level const in ci is ignored
p2 = p3; // ok: pointed-to type matches; top-level const in p3 is ignored
```

Copying an object doesn't change the copied object. As a result, it is immaterial whether the object copied from or copied into is `const`.

On the other hand, low-level `const` is never ignored. When we copy an object, both objects must have the same low-level `const` qualification or there must be a conversion between the types of the two objects. In general, we can convert a `nonconst` to `const` but not the other way round:

```
int *p = p3; // error: p3 has a low-level const but p doesn't
p2 = p3; // ok: p2 has the same low-level const qualification as p3
p2 = &i; // ok: we can convert int* to const int*
int &r = ci; // error: can't bind an ordinary int& to a const int object
const int &r2 = i; // ok: can bind const int& to plain int
```

`p3` has both a top-level and low-level `const`. When we copy `p3`, we can ignore its top-level `const` but not the fact that it points to a `const` type. Hence, we cannot use `p3` to initialize `p`, which points to a plain (`nonconst`) `int`. On the other hand, we can assign `p3` to `p2`. Both pointers have the same (low-level `const`) type. The fact that `p3` is a `const` pointer (i.e., that it has a top-level `const`) doesn't matter.

### Exercises Section 2.4.3

**Exercise 2.30:** For each of the following declarations indicate whether the object being declared has top-level or low-level `const`.

```
const int v2 = 0; int v1 = v2;
int *p1 = &v1, &r1 = v1;
const int *p2 = &v2, *const p3 = &i, &r2 = v2;
```

**Exercise 2.31:** Given the declarations in the previous exercise determine whether the following assignments are legal. Explain how the top-level or low-level `const` applies in each case.

```
r1 = v2;
p1 = p2; p2 = p1;
p1 = p3; p2 = p3;
```

## 2.4.4 constexpr and Constant Expressions

A **constant expression** is an expression whose value cannot change and that can be evaluated at compile time. A literal is a constant expression. A `const` object that is initialized from a constant expression is also a constant expression. As we'll see, there are several contexts in the language that require constant expressions.

Whether a given object (or expression) is a constant expression depends on the types and the initializers. For example:

```
const int max_files = 20; // max_files is a constant expression
const int limit = max_files + 1; // limit is a constant expression
int staff_size = 27; // staff_size is not a constant expression
const int sz = get_size(); // sz is not a constant expression
```

Although `staff_size` is initialized from a literal, it is not a constant expression because it is a plain `int`, not a `const int`. On the other hand, even though `sz` is a `const`, the value of its initializer is not known until run time. Hence, `sz` is not a constant expression.

### constexpr Variables

In a large system, it can be difficult to determine (for certain) that an initializer is a constant expression. We might define a `const` variable with an initializer that we think is a constant expression. However, when we use that variable in a context that requires a constant expression we may discover that the initializer was not a constant expression. In general, the definition of an object and its use in such a context can be widely separated.

Under the new standard, we can ask the compiler to verify that a variable is a constant expression by declaring the variable in a **constexpr** declaration. Variables declared as **constexpr** are implicitly `const` and must be initialized by constant expressions:

```
constexpr int mf = 20; // 20 is a constant expression
constexpr int limit = mf + 1; // mf + 1 is a constant expression
constexpr int sz = size(); // ok only if size is a constexpr function
```



Although we cannot use an ordinary function as an initializer for a `constexpr` variable, we'll see in § 6.5.2 (p. 181) that the new standard lets us define certain functions as `constexpr`. Such functions must be simple enough that the compiler can evaluate them at compile time. We can use `constexpr` functions in the initializer of a `constexpr` variable.



Generally, it is a good idea to use `constexpr` for variables that you intend to use as constant expressions.

## Literal Types

Because a constant expression is one that can be evaluated at compile time, there are limits on the types that we can use in a `constexpr` declaration. The types we can use in a `constexpr` are known as “literal types” because they are simple enough to have literal values.

Of the types we have used so far, the arithmetic, reference, and pointer types are literal types. Our `Sales_item` class and the library `IO` and `string` types are not literal types. Hence, we cannot define variables of these types as `constexpr`. We'll see other kinds of literal types in § 7.5.6 (p. 227) and § 19.3 (p. 333).

Although we can define both pointers and reference as `constexpr`s, the objects we use to initialize them are strictly limited. We can initialize a `constexpr` pointer from the `nullptr` literal or the literal (i.e., constant expression) 0. We can also point to (or bind to) an object that remains at a fixed address.

For reasons we'll cover in § 6.1.1 (p. 157), variables defined inside a function ordinarily are not stored at a fixed address. Hence, we cannot use a `constexpr` pointer to point to such variables. On the other hand, the address of an object defined outside of any function is a constant expression, and so may be used to initialize a `constexpr` pointer. We'll see in § 6.1.1 (p. 157), that functions may define variables that exist across calls to that function. Like an object defined outside any function, these special local objects also have fixed addresses. Therefore, a `constexpr` reference may be bound to, and a `constexpr` pointer may address, such variables.

## Pointers and constexpr

It is important to understand that when we define a pointer in a `constexpr` declaration, the `constexpr` specifier applies to the pointer, not the type to which the pointer points:

```
const int *p = nullptr; // p is a pointer to a const int
constexpr int *q = nullptr; // q is a const pointer to int
```

Despite appearances, the types of `p` and `q` are quite different; `p` is a pointer to `const`, whereas `q` is a constant pointer. The difference is a consequence of the fact that `constexpr` imposes a top-level `const` (§ 2.4.3, p. 50) on the objects it defines.

Like any other constant pointer, a `constexpr` pointer may point to a `const` or a `nonconst` type:

```
constexpr int *np = nullptr; // np is a constant pointer to int that is
null
int j = 0;
constexpr int i = 42; // type of i is const int
// i and j must be defined outside any function
constexpr const int *p = &i; // p is a constant pointer to the const int i
constexpr int *p1 = &j; // p1 is a constant pointer to the int j
```

### Exercises Section 2.4.4

**Exercise 2.32:** Is the following code legal or not? If not, how might you make it legal?

```
int null = 0, *p = null;
```

## 2.5 Dealing with Types

As our programs get more complicated, we'll see that the types we use also get more complicated. Complications in using types arise in two different ways. Some types are hard to “spell.” That is, they have forms that are tedious and error-prone to write. Moreover, the form of a complicated type can obscure its purpose or meaning. The other source of complication is that sometimes it is hard to determine the exact type we need. Doing so can require us to look back into the context of the program.



### 2.5.1 Type Aliases

A **type alias** is a name that is a synonym for another type. Type aliases let us simplify complicated type definitions, making those types easier to use. Type aliases also let us emphasize the purpose for which a type is used.

We can define a type alias in one of two ways. Traditionally, we use a **typedef**:

```
typedef double wages; // wages is a synonym for double
typedef wages base, *p; // base is a synonym for double, p for double*
```

The keyword **typedef** may appear as part of the base type of a declaration (§ 2.3, p. 38). Declarations that include **typedef** define type aliases rather than variables. As in any other declaration, the declarators can include type modifiers that define compound types built from the base type of the definition.

The new standard introduced a second way to define a type alias, via an **alias declaration**:

```
using SI = Sales_item; // SI is a synonym for Sales_item
```

An alias declaration starts with the keyword **using** followed by the alias name and an **=**. The alias declaration defines the name on the left-hand side of the **=** as an alias for the type that appears on the right-hand side.

A type alias is a type name and can appear wherever a type name can appear:

```
wages hourly, weekly; // same as double hourly, weekly;
SI item; // same as Sales_item item
```

### Pointers, const, and Type Aliases

Declarations that use type aliases that represent compound types and **const** can yield surprising results. For example, the following declarations use the type **pstring**, which is an alias for the type **char\***:

```
typedef char *pstring;
const pstring cstr = 0; // cstr is a constant pointer to char
const pstring *ps; // ps is a pointer to a constant pointer to char
```

The base type in these declarations is **const pstring**. As usual, a **const** that appears in the base type modifies the given type. The type of **pstring** is “pointer to **char**.” So, **const pstring** is a constant pointer to **char**—not a pointer to **const char**.

It can be tempting, albeit incorrect, to interpret a declaration that uses a type alias by conceptually replacing the alias with its corresponding type:

```
const char *cstr = 0; // wrong interpretation of const pstring cstr
```

However, this interpretation is wrong. When we use **pstring** in a declaration, the base type of the declaration is a pointer type. When we rewrite the declaration using **char\***, the base type is **char** and the **\*** is part of the declarator. In this case, **const char** is the base type. This rewrite declares **cstr** as a pointer to **const char** rather than as a **const pointer to char**.

### 2.5.2 The auto Type Specifier

It is not uncommon to want to store the value of an expression in a variable. To declare the variable, we have to know the type of that expression. When we write a program, it can be surprisingly difficult—and sometimes even impossible—to determine the type of an expression. Under the new standard, we can let the compiler figure out the type for us by using the **auto** type specifier. Unlike type specifiers, such as **double**, that name a specific type, **auto** tells the compiler to deduce the type from the initializer. By implication, a variable that uses **auto** as its type specifier must have an initializer:

```
// the type of item is deduced from the type of the result of adding val1 and val2
auto item = val1 + val2; // item initialized to the result of val1 + val2
```

Here the compiler will deduce the type of **item** from the type returned by applying **+** to **val1** and **val2**. If **val1** and **val2** are **Sales\_item** objects (§ 1.5, p. 14), **item** will have type **Sales\_item**. If those variables are type **double**, then **item** has type **double**, and so on.

As with any other type specifier, we can define multiple variables using **auto**. Because a declaration can involve only a single base type, the initializers for all the variables in the declaration must have types that are consistent with each other:

```
auto i = 0, *p = &i; // ok: i is int and p is a pointer to int
auto sz = 0, pi = 3.14; // error: inconsistent types for sz and pi
```

## Compound Types, `const`, and `auto`

The type that the compiler infers for `auto` is not always exactly the same as the initializer's type. Instead, the compiler adjusts the type to conform to normal initialization rules.

First, as we've seen, when we use a reference, we are really using the object to which the reference refers. In particular, when we use a reference as an initializer, the initializer is the corresponding object. The compiler uses that object's type for `auto`'s type deduction:

```
int i = 0, &r = i;
auto a = r; // a is an int (r is an alias for i, which has type int)
```

Second, `auto` ordinarily ignores top-level `const`s (§ 2.4.3, p. 50). As usual in initializations, low-level `const`s, such as when an initializer is a pointer to `const`, are kept:

```
const int ci = i, &cr = ci;
auto b = ci; // b is an int (top-level const in ci is dropped)
auto c = cr; // c is an int (cr is an alias for ci whose const is top-level)
auto d = &i; // d is an int*(& of an int object is int*)
auto e = &ci; // e is const int*(& of a const object is low-level const)
```

If we want the deduced type to have a top-level `const`, we must say so explicitly:

```
const auto f = ci; // deduced type of ci is int; f has type const int
```

We can also specify that we want a reference to the `auto`-deduced type. Normal initialization rules still apply:

```
auto &g = ci; // g is a const int& that is bound to ci
auto &h = 42; // error: we can't bind a plain reference to a literal
const auto &j = 42; // ok: we can bind a const reference to a literal
```

When we ask for a reference to an `auto`-deduced type, top-level `const`s in the initializer are not ignored. As usual, `const`s are not top-level when we bind a reference to an initializer.

When we define several variables in the same statement, it is important to remember that a reference or pointer is part of a particular declarator and not part of the base type for the declaration. As usual, the initializers must provide consistent `auto`-deduced types:

```
auto k = ci, &l = i; // k is int; l is int&
auto &m = ci, *p = &ci; // m is a const int&; p is a pointer to const int
// error: type deduced from i is int; type deduced from &ci is const int
auto &n = i, *p2 = &ci;
```

### Exercises Section 2.5.2

**Exercise 2.33:** Using the variable definitions from this section, determine what happens in each of these assignments:

```
a = 42; b = 42; c = 42;
d = 42; e = 42; g = 42;
```

**Exercise 2.34:** Write a program containing the variables and assignments from the previous exercise. Print the variables before and after the assignments to check whether your predictions in the previous exercise were correct. If not, study the examples until you can convince yourself you know what led you to the wrong conclusion.

**Exercise 2.35:** Determine the types deduced in each of the following definitions. Once you've figured out the types, write a program to see whether you were correct.

```
const int i = 42;
auto j = i; const auto &k = i; auto *p = &i;
const auto j2 = i, &k2 = i;
```

### 2.5.3 The `decltype` Type Specifier

Sometimes we want to define a variable with a type that the compiler deduces from an expression but do not want to use that expression to initialize the variable. For such cases, the new standard introduced a second type specifier, `decltype`, which returns the type of its operand. The compiler analyzes the expression to determine its type but does not evaluate the expression:

```
decltype(f()) sum = x; // sum has whatever type f returns
```

Here, the compiler does not call `f`, but it uses the type that such a call would return as the type for `sum`. That is, the compiler gives `sum` the same type as the type that would be returned if we were to call `f`.

The way `decltype` handles top-level `const` and references differs subtly from the way `auto` does. When the expression to which we apply `decltype` is a variable, `decltype` returns the type of that variable, including top-level `const` and references:

```
const int ci = 0, &cj = ci;
decltype(ci) x = 0; // x has type const int
decltype(cj) y = x; // y has type const int& and is bound to x
decltype(cj) z; // error: z is a reference and must be initialized
```

Because `cj` is a reference, `decltype(cj)` is a reference type. Like any other reference, `z` must be initialized.

It is worth noting that `decltype` is the only context in which a variable defined as a reference is not treated as a synonym for the object to which it refers.

## decltype and References

When we apply `decltype` to an expression that is not a variable, we get the type that that expression yields. As we'll see in § 4.1.1 (p. 103), some expressions will cause `decltype` to yield a reference type. Generally speaking, `decltype` returns a reference type for expressions that yield objects that can stand on the left-hand side of the assignment:

```
// decltype of an expression can be a reference type
int i = 42, *p = &i, &r = i;
decltype(r + 0) b; // ok: addition yields an int; b is an (uninitialized) int
decltype(*p) c; // error: c is int& and must be initialized
```

Here `r` is a reference, so `decltype(r)` is a reference type. If we want the type to which `r` refers, we can use `r` in an expression, such as `r + 0`, which is an expression that yields a value that has a nonreference type.

On the other hand, the dereference operator is an example of an expression for which `decltype` returns a reference. As we've seen, when we dereference a pointer, we get the object to which the pointer points. Moreover, we can assign to that object. Thus, the type deduced by `decltype(*p)` is `int&`, not plain `int`.

Another important difference between `decltype` and `auto` is that the deduction done by `decltype` depends on the form of its given expression. What can be confusing is that enclosing the name of a variable in parentheses affects the type returned by `decltype`. When we apply `decltype` to a variable without any parentheses, we get the type of that variable. If we wrap the variable's name in one or more sets of parentheses, the compiler will evaluate the operand as an expression. A variable is an expression that can be the left-hand side of an assignment. As a result, `decltype` on such an expression yields a reference:

```
// decltype of a parenthesized variable is always a reference
decltype((i)) d; // error: d is int& and must be initialized
decltype(i) e; // ok: e is an (uninitialized) int
```



Remember that `decltype((variable))` (note, double parentheses) is always a reference type, but `decltype(variable)` is a reference type only if variable is a reference.

### Exercises Section 2.5.3

**Exercise 2.36:** In the following code, determine the type of each variable and the value each variable has when the code finishes:

```
int a = 3, b = 4;
decltype(a) c = a;
decltype((b)) d = a;
++c;
++d;
```

**Exercise 2.37:** Assignment is an example of an expression that yields a reference type. The type is a reference to the type of the left-hand operand. That is, if `i` is an `int`, then the type of the expression `i = x` is `int&`. Using that knowledge, determine the type and value of each variable in this code:

```
int a = 3, b = 4;
decltype(a) c = a;
decltype(a = b) d = a;
```

**Exercise 2.38:** Describe the differences in type deduction between `decltype` and `auto`. Give an example of an expression where `auto` and `decltype` will deduce the same type and an example where they will deduce differing types.

## 2.6 Defining Our Own Data Structures

At the most basic level, a data structure is a way to group together related data elements and a strategy for using those data. As one example, our `Sales_item` class groups an ISBN, a count of how many copies of that book had been sold, and the revenue associated with those sales. It also provides a set of operations such as the `isbn` function and the `>>`, `<<`, `+`, and `+=` operators.

In C++ we define our own data types by defining a class. The library types `string`, `istream`, and `ostream` are all defined as classes, as is the `Sales_item` type we used in Chapter 1. C++ support for classes is extensive—in fact, Parts III and IV are largely devoted to describing class-related features. Even though the `Sales_item` class is pretty simple, we won't be able to fully define that class until we learn how to write our own operators in Chapter 14.

### 2.6.1 Defining the `Sales_data` Type

Although we can't yet write our `Sales_item` class, we can write a more concrete class that groups the same data elements. Our strategy for using this class is that users will be able to access the data elements directly and must implement needed operations for themselves.

Because our data structure does not support any operations, we'll name our version `Sales_data` to distinguish it from `Sales_item`. We'll define our class as follows:

```
struct Sales_data {
    std::string bookNo;
    unsigned units_sold = 0;
    double revenue = 0.0;
};
```

Our class begins with the keyword `struct`, followed by the name of the class and a (possibly empty) class body. The class body is surrounded by curly braces and forms a new scope (§ 2.2.4, p. 37). The names defined inside the class must be unique within the class but can reuse names defined outside the class.

The close curly that ends the class body must be followed by a semicolon. The semicolon is needed because we can define variables after the class body:

```
struct Sales_data { /* ... */ } accum, trans, *salesptr;
// equivalent, but better way to define these objects
struct Sales_data { /* ... */ };
Sales_data accum, trans, *salesptr;
```

The semicolon marks the end of the (usually empty) list of declarators. Ordinarily, it is a bad idea to define an object as part of a class definition. Doing so obscures the code by combining the definitions of two different entities—the class and a variable—in a single statement.



It is a common mistake among new programmers to forget the semicolon at the end of a class definition.

## Class Data Members

The class body defines the **members** of the class. Our class has only **data members**. The data members of a class define the contents of the objects of that class type. Each object has its own copy of the class data members. Modifying the data members of one object does not change the data in any other `Sales_data` object.

We define data members the same way that we define normal variables: We specify a base type followed by a list of one or more declarators. Our class has three data members: a member of type `string` named `bookNo`, an **unsigned** member named `units_sold`, and a member of type `double` named `revenue`. Each `Sales_data` object will have these three data members.

Under the new standard, we can supply an in-class initializer for a data member. When we create objects, the in-class initializers will be used to initialize the data members. Members without an initializer are default initialized (§ 2.2.2, p. 35). Thus, when we define `Sales_data` objects, `units_sold` and `revenue` will be initialized to 0, and `bookNo` will be initialized to the empty string.

In-class initializers are restricted as to the form (§ 2.2.2, p. 35) we can use: They must either be enclosed inside curly braces or follow an `=` sign. We may not specify an in-class initializer inside parentheses.

In § 7.2 (p. 203), we'll see that C++ has a second keyword, `class`, that can be used to define our own data structures. We'll explain in that section why we use `struct` here. Until we cover additional class-related features in Chapter 7, you should use `struct` to define your own data structures.

### Exercises Section 2.6.1

**Exercise 2.39:** Compile the following program to see what happens when you forget the semicolon after a class definition. Remember the message for future reference.

```
struct Foo { /* empty */ } // Note: no semicolon
int main()
{
    return 0;
}
```

**Exercise 2.40:** Write your own version of the `Sales_data` class.

## 2.6.2 Using the `Sales_data` Type

Unlike the `Sales_item` class, our `Sales_data` class does not provide any operations. Users of `Sales_data` have to write whatever operations they need. As an example, we'll write a version of the program from § 1.5.2 (p. 16) that printed the sum of two transactions. The input to our program will be transactions such as

```
0-201-78345-X 3 20.00
0-201-78345-X 2 25.00
```

Each transaction holds an ISBN, the count of how many books were sold, and the price at which each book was sold.

### Adding Two `Sales_data` Objects

Because `Sales_data` provides no operations, we will have to write our own code to do the input, output, and addition operations. We'll assume that our `Sales_data` class is defined inside `Sales_data.h`. We'll see how to define this header in § 2.6.3 (p. 59).

```
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
#include "Sales_data.h"
int main()
{
    Sales_data data1, data2;
    // code to read into data1 and data2
    // code to check whether data1 and data2 have the same ISBN
```

```

    // and if so print the sum of data1 and data2
}

```

As in our original program, we begin by including the headers we'll need and define variables to hold the input. Note that unlike the `Sales_item` version, our new program includes the `string` header. We need that header because our code will have to manage the `bookNo` member, which has type `string`.

### Reading Data into a `Sales_data` Object

Although we won't describe the library `string` type in detail until Chapters 3 and 10, we need to know only a little bit about `strings` in order to define and use our `ISBN` member. The `string` type holds a sequence of characters. Its operations include the `>>`, `<<`, and `==` operators to read, write, and compare `strings`, respectively. With this knowledge we can write the code to read the first transaction:

```

double price = 0; // price per book, used to calculate total revenue
// read the first transactions: ISBN, number of books sold, price per book
std::cin >> data1.bookNo >> data1.units_sold >> price;
// calculate total revenue from price and units_sold
data1.revenue = data1.units_sold * price;

```

Our transactions contain the price at which each book was sold but our data structure stores the total revenue. We'll read the transaction data into a `double` named `price`, from which we'll calculate the `revenue` member. The input statement

```
std::cin >> data1.bookNo >> data1.units_sold >> price;
```

uses the dot operator (§ 1.5.2, p. 16) to read into the `bookNo` and `units_sold` members of the object named `data1`.

The last statement assigns the product of `data1.units_sold` and `price` into the `revenue` member of `data1`. Our program will next repeat the same code to read data into `data2`:

```

// read the second transaction
std::cin >> data2.bookNo >> data2.units_sold >> price;
data2.revenue = data2.units_sold * price;

```

### Printing the Sum of Two `Sales_data` Objects

Our other task is to check that the transactions are for the same `ISBN`. If so, we'll print their sum, otherwise, we'll print an error message:

```

if (data1.bookNo == data2.bookNo) {
    unsigned totalCnt = data1.units_sold + data2.units_sold;
    double totalRevenue = data1.revenue + data2.revenue;
    // print: ISBN, total sold, total revenue, average price per book
    std::cout << data1.bookNo << " " << totalCnt
              << " " << totalRevenue << " ";
    if (totalCnt != 0)
        std::cout << totalRevenue/totalCnt << std::endl;
    else
        std::cout << "(no sales)" << std::endl;
    return 0; // indicate success
}
else { // transactions weren't for the same ISBN
    std::cerr << "Data must refer to the same ISBN"
              << std::endl;
    return -1; // indicate failure
}

```

In the first `if` we compare the `bookNo` members of `data1` and `data2`. If those members are the same `ISBN`, we execute the code inside the curly braces. That code adds the components of our two variables. Because we'll need to print the average price, we start by computing the total of `units_sold` and `revenue` and store those in `totalCnt` and `totalRevenue`, respectively. We print those values. Next we check that there were books sold and, if so, print the computed average price per book. If there were no sales, we print a message noting that fact.



## Exercises Section 2.6.2

**Exercise 2.41:** Use your `Sales_data` class to rewrite the exercises in § 1.5.1 (p. 14), § 1.5.2 (p. 16), and § 25 (p. 18). For now, you should define your `Sales_data` class in the same file as your `main` function.

### 2.6.3 Writing Our Own Header Files

Although as we'll see in § 19.7 (p. 333), we can define a class inside a function, such classes have limited functionality. As a result, classes ordinarily are not defined inside functions. When we define a class outside of a function, there may be only one definition of that class in any given source file. In addition, if we use a class in several different files, the class' definition must be the same in each file.

In order to ensure that the class definition is the same in each file, classes are usually defined in header files. Typically, classes are stored in headers whose name derives from the name of the class. For example, the `string` library type is defined in the `string` header. Similarly, as we've already seen, we will define our `Sales_data` class in a header file named `Sales_data.h`.

Headers (usually) contain entities (such as class definitions and `const` and `constexpr` variables (§ 2.4, p. 46)) that can be defined only once in any given file. However, headers often need to use facilities from other headers. For example, because our `Sales_data` class has a `string` member, `Sales_data.h` must `#include` the `string` header. As we've seen, programs that use `Sales_data` also need to include the `string` header in order to use the `bookNo` member. As a result, programs that use `Sales_data` will include the `string` header twice: once directly and once as a side effect of including `Sales_data.h`. Because a header might be included more than once, we need to write our headers in a way that is safe even if the header is included multiple times.



Whenever a header is updated, the source files that use that header must be recompiled to get the new or changed declarations.

### A Brief Introduction to the Preprocessor

The most common technique for making it safe to include a header multiple times relies on the **preprocessor**. The preprocessor—which C++ inherits from C—is a program that runs before the compiler and changes the source text of our programs. Our programs already rely on one preprocessor facility, `#include`. When the preprocessor sees a `#include`, it replaces the `#include` with the contents of the specified header.

C++ programs also use the preprocessor to define **header guards**. Header guards rely on preprocessor variables (§ 2.3.2, p. 40). Preprocessor variables have one of two possible states: defined or not defined. The `#define` directive takes a name and defines that name as a preprocessor variable. There are two other directives that test whether a given preprocessor variable has or has not been defined: `#ifdef` is true if the variable has been defined, and `#ifndef` is true if the variable has not been defined. If the test is true, then everything following the `#ifdef` or `#ifndef` is processed up to the matching `#endif`.

We can use these facilities to guard against multiple inclusion as follows:

```
#ifndef SALES_DATA_H
#define SALES_DATA_H
#include <string>
    struct Sales_data {
        std::string bookNo;
        unsigned units_sold = 0;
        double revenue = 0.0;
    };
#endif
```

The first time `Sales_data.h` is included, the `#ifndef` test will succeed. The preprocessor will process the lines following `#ifndef` up to the `#endif`. As a result, the preprocessor variable `SALES_DATA_H` will be defined and the contents of `Sales_data.h` will be copied into our program. If we include `Sales_data.h` later on in the same file, the `#ifndef` directive will be false. The lines between it and the `#endif` directive will be ignored.



Preprocessor variable names do not respect C++ scoping rules.

Preprocessor variables, including names of header guards, must be unique throughout the program. Typically we ensure uniqueness by basing the guard's name on the name of a class in the header. To avoid name clashes with other entities in our programs, preprocessor variables usually are written in all uppercase.



Headers should have guards, even if they aren't (yet) included by another header. Header guards are trivial to write, and by habitually defining them you don't need to decide whether they are needed.

### Exercises Section 2.6.3

**Exercise 2.42:** Write your own version of the `Sales_data.h` header and use it to rewrite the exercise from § 2.6.2 (p. 57).



## Chapter Summary

Types are fundamental to all programming in C++.

Each type defines the storage requirements and the operations that may be performed on objects of that type. The language provides a set of fundamental builtin types such as `int` and `char`, which are closely tied to their representation on the machine's hardware. Types can be `nonconst` or `const`; a `const` object must be initialized and, once initialized, its value may not be changed. In addition, we can define compound types, such as pointers or references. A compound type is one that is defined in terms of another type.

The language lets us define our own types by defining classes. The library uses the class facility to provide a set of higher-level abstractions such as the `IO` and `string` types.

## Defined Terms

**address** Number by which a byte in memory can be found.

**alias declaration** Defines a synonym for another type: `using name = type` declares `name` as a synonym for the type `type`.

**array** `array` Data structure that holds a collection of unnamed objects that are accessed by an index. Section 3.5.3 covers arrays in detail.

**auto** Type specifier that deduces the type of a variable from its initializer.

**base type** type specifier, possibly qualified by `const`, that precedes the declarators in a declaration. The base type provides the common type on which the declarators in a declaration can build.

**bind** Associating a name with a given entity so that uses of the name are uses of the underlying entity. For example, a reference is a name that is bound to an object.

**byte** Smallest addressable unit of memory. On most machines a byte is 8 bits.

**class member** Part of a class.

**compound type** A type that is defined in terms of another type.

**const** Type qualifier used to define objects that may not be changed. `const` objects must be initialized, because there is no way to give them a value after they are defined.

**const pointer** Pointer that is `const`.

**const reference** Colloquial synonym for reference to `const`.

**constant expression** Expression that can be evaluated at compile time.

**constexpr** Variable that represents a constant expression. § 6.5.2 (p. 181) covers `constexpr` functions.

**conversion** Process whereby a value of one type is transformed into a value of another type. The language defines conversions among the built-in types.

**data member** Data elements that constitute an object. Every object of a given class has its own copies of the class' data members. Data members may be initialized when declared inside the class.

**declaration** Asserts the existence of a variable, function, or type defined elsewhere. Names may not be used until they are defined or declared.

**declarator** The part of a declaration that includes the name being defined and an optional type modifier.

**decltype** Type specifier that deduces the type of a variable or an expression.

**default initialization** How objects are initialized when no explicit initializer is given. How class type objects are initialized is controlled by the class. Objects of built-in type defined at global scope are initialized to 0; those defined at local scope are uninitialized and have undefined values.

**definition** Allocates storage for a variable of a specified type and optionally initializes the variable. Names may not be used until they are defined or declared.

**escape sequence** Alternative mechanism for representing characters, particularly for those without printable representations. An escape sequence is a backslash followed by a character, three or fewer octal digits, or an `x` followed by a hexadecimal number.

**global scope** The scope that is outside all other scopes.

**header guard** Preprocessor variable used to prevent a header from being included more than once in a single file.

**identifier** Sequence of characters that make up a name. Identifiers are casesensitive.

**in-class initializer** Initializer provided as part of the declaration of a class data member. In-class initializers must follow an `=` symbol or be enclosed inside curly braces.

**in scope** Name that is visible from the current scope.

**initialized** A variable given an initial value when it is defined. Variables usually should be initialized.

**inner scope** Scope that is nested inside another scope.

**integral types** See arithmetic type.

**list initialization** Form of initialization that uses curly braces to enclose one or more initializers.

**literal** A value such as a number, a character, or a string of characters. The value cannot be changed. Literal characters are enclosed in single quotes, literal strings in double quotes.

**local scope** Colloquial synonym for block scope.

**low-level const** A const that is not top-level. Such consts are integral to the type and are never ignored.

**member** Part of a class.

**nonprintable character** A character with no visible representation, such as a control character, a backspace, newline, and so on.

**null pointer** Pointer whose value is 0. A null pointer is valid but does not point to any object.

**nullptr** Literal constant that denotes the null pointer.

**object** A region of memory that has a type. A variable is an object that has a name.

**outer scope** Scope that encloses another scope.

**pointer** An object that can hold the address of an object, the address one past the end of an object, or zero.

**pointer to const** Pointer that can hold the address of a const object. A pointer to const may not be used to change the value of the object to which it points.

**preprocessor** Program that runs as part of compilation of a C++ program.

**preprocessor variable** Variable managed by the preprocessor. The preprocessor replaces each preprocessor variable by its value before our program is compiled.

**reference** An alias for another object.

**reference to const** A reference that may not change the value of the object to which it refers. A reference to const may be bound to a const object, a nonconst object, or the result of an expression.

**scope** The portion of a program in which names have meaning. C++ has several levels of scope:

**global** —names defined outside any other scope

**class** —names defined inside a class

**namespace** —names defined inside a namespace

**block** —names defined inside a block

Scopes nest. Once a name is declared, it is accessible until the end of the scope in which it was declared.

**separate compilation** Ability to split a program into multiple separate source files.

**signed** Integer type that holds negative or positive values, including zero.

**string** Library type representing variable-length sequences of characters.

**struct** Keyword used to define a class.

**temporary** Unnamed object created by the compiler while evaluating an expression. A temporary exists until the end of the largest expression that encloses the expression for which it was created.

**top-level const** The const that specifies that an object may not be changed.

**type alias** A name that is a synonym for another type. Defined through either a typedef or an alias declaration.

**type checking** Term used to describe the process by which the compiler verifies that the way objects of a given type are used is consistent with the definition of that type.

**type specifier** The name of a type.

**typedef** Defines an alias for another type. When typedef appears in the base type of a declaration, the names defined in the declaration are type names.

**undefined** Usage for which the language does not specify a meaning. Knowingly or unknowingly relying on undefined behavior is a great source of hard-to-track runtime errors, security problems, and portability problems.

**uninitialized** Variable defined without an initial value. In general, trying to access the value of an uninitialized variable results in undefined behavior.

**unsigned** Integer type that holds only values greater than or equal to zero.

**variable** A named object or reference. In C++, variables must be declared before they are used.

**void\*** Pointer type that can point to any nonconst type. Such pointers may not be dereferenced.

**void type** Special-purpose type that has no operations and no value. It is not possible to define a variable of type void.

**word** The natural unit of integer computation on a given machine. Usually a word is large enough to hold an address. On a 32-bit machine a word is typically 4 bytes.

**& operator** Address-of operator. Yields the address of the object to which it is applied.

**\* operator** Dereference operator. Dereferencing a pointer returns the object to which the pointer points. Assigning to the result of a dereference assigns a new value to the underlying object.

**# define** Preprocessor directive that defines a preprocessor variable.

**# endif** Preprocessor directive that ends an **#ifdef** or **#ifndef** region.

**# ifdef** Preprocessor directive that determines whether a given variable is defined.

**# ifndef** Preprocessor directive that determines whether a given variable is not defined.

## Chapter 3

# Strings, Vectors, and Arrays

### Contents

3.1 Namespace using Declarations .....	65
3.2 Library <b>string</b> Type .....	66
3.3 Library <b>vector</b> Type .....	74
3.4 Introducing Iterators .....	81
3.5 Arrays .....	86
3.6 Multidimensional Arrays .....	95
Chapter Summary .....	100
Defined Terms .....	100

In addition to the built-in types covered in Chapter 2, C++ defines a rich library of abstract data types. Among the most important library types are **string**, which supports variable-length character strings, and **vector**, which defines variable-size collections. Associated with **string** and **vector** are companion types known as iterators, which are used to access the characters in a **string** or the elements in a **vector**.

The **string** and **vector** types defined by the library are abstractions of the more primitive built-in array type. This chapter covers arrays and introduces the library **vector** and **string** types.

The built-in types that we covered in Chapter 2 are defined directly by the C++ language. These types represent facilities present in most computer hardware, such as numbers or characters. The standard library defines a number of additional types of a higher-level nature that computer hardware usually does not implement directly.

In this chapter, we'll introduce two of the most important library types: `string` and `vector`. A `string` is a variable-length sequence of characters. A `vector` holds a variable-length sequence of objects of a given type. We'll also cover the built-in array type. Like other built-in types, arrays represent facilities of the hardware. As a result, arrays are less convenient to use than the library `string` and `vector` types.

Before beginning our exploration of the library types, we'll look at a mechanism for simplifying access to the names defined in the library.

## 3.1 Namespace using Declarations

Up to now, our programs have explicitly indicated that each library name we use is in the `std` namespace. For example, to read from the standard input, we write `std::cin`. These names use the scope operator (`::`) (§ 1.2, p. 4), which says that the compiler should look in the scope of the left-hand operand for the name of the right-hand operand. Thus, `std::cin` says that we want to use the name `cin` from the namespace `std`.

Referring to library names with this notation can be cumbersome. Fortunately, there are easier ways to use namespace members. The safest way is a **using declaration**. § 18.2.2 (p. 330) covers another way to use names from a namespace.

A `using` declaration lets us use a name from a namespace without qualifying the name with a `namespace_name::` prefix. A `using` declaration has the form

```
using namespace::name;
```

Once the `using` declaration has been made, we can access name directly

```
#include <iostream>
// using declaration; when we use the name cin, we get the one from the namespace std
using std::cin;
int main()
{
    int i;
    cin >> i; // ok: cin is a synonym for std::cin
    cout << i; // error: no using declaration; we must use the full name
    std::cout << i; // ok: explicitly use cout from namespace std
    return 0;
}
```

### A Separate using Declaration Is Required for Each Name

Each `using` declaration introduces a single namespace member. This behavior lets us be specific about which names we're using. As an example, we'll rewrite the program from § 1.2 (p. 4) with `using` declarations for the library names it uses:

```
#include <iostream>
// using declarations for names from the standard library
using std::cin;
using std::cout; using std::endl;
int main()
{
    cout << "Enter two numbers:" << endl;
    int v1, v2;
    cin >> v1 >> v2;
    cout << "The sum of " << v1 << " and " << v2
    << " is " << v1 + v2 << endl;
    return 0;
}
```

The `using` declarations for `cin`, `cout`, and `endl` mean that we can use those names without the `std::` prefix. Recall that C++ programs are free-form, so we can put each `using` declaration on its own line or combine several onto a single line. The important part is that there must be a `using` declaration for each name we use, and each declaration must end in a semicolon.

## Headers Should Not Include using Declarations

Code inside headers (§ 2.6.3, p. 59) ordinarily should not use `using` declarations. The reason is that the contents of a header are copied into the including program's text. If a header has a `using` declaration, then every program that includes that header gets that same `using` declaration. As a result, a program that didn't intend to use the specified library name might encounter unexpected name conflicts.

### A Note to the Reader

From this point on, our examples will assume that `using` declarations have been made for the names we use from the standard library. Thus, we will refer to `cin`, not `std::cin`, in the text and in code examples.

Moreover, to keep the code examples short, we won't show the `using` declarations, nor will we show the necessary `#include` directives. Table A.1 (p. 336) in Appendix A lists the names and corresponding headers for standard library names we use in this Primer.



Readers should be aware that they must add appropriate `#include` and `using` declarations to our examples before compiling them.

### Exercises Section 3.1.0

**Exercise 3.1:** Rewrite the exercises from § 1.4.1 (p. 8) and § 2.6.2 (p. 57) with appropriate `using` declarations.

## 3.2 Library string Type

A `string` is a variable-length sequence of characters. To use the `string` type, we must include the `string` header. Because it is part of the library, `string` is defined in the `std` namespace. Our examples assume the following code:

```
#include <string>
using std::string;
```

This section describes the most common string operations; § 9.5 (p. 265) will cover additional operations.



In addition to specifying the operations that the library types provide, the standard also imposes efficiency requirements on implementors. As a result, library types are efficient enough for general use.

### 3.2.1 Defining and Initializing strings

Each class defines how objects of its type can be initialized. A class may define many different ways to initialize objects of its type. Each way must be distinguished from the others either by the number of initializers that we supply, or by the types of those initializers. Table 3.1 lists the most common ways to initialize `strings`. Some examples:

```
string s1; // default initialization; s1 is the empty string
string s2 = s1; // s2 is a copy of s1
string s3 = "hiya"; // s3 is a copy of the string literal
string s4(10, 'c'); // s4 is ccccccccc
```

Table 3.1: Ways to Initialize a string

<code>string s1</code>	Default initialization; <code>s1</code> is the empty string.
<code>string s2(s1)</code>	<code>s2</code> is a copy of <code>s1</code> .
<code>string s2 = s1</code>	Equivalent to <code>s2(s1)</code> , <code>s2</code> is a copy of <code>s1</code> .
<code>string s3("value")</code>	<code>s3</code> is a copy of the string literal, not including the null.
<code>string s3 = "value"</code>	Equivalent to <code>s3("value")</code> , <code>s3</code> is a copy of the string literal.
<code>string s4(n, 'c')</code>	Initialize <code>s4</code> with <code>n</code> copies of the character <code>'c'</code> .

We can default initialize a `string` (§ 2.2.1, p. 32), which creates an empty string; that is, a `string` with no characters. When we supply a string literal (§ 2.1.3, p. 29), the characters from that literal—up to but not including the null character at the end of the literal—are copied into the newly created `string`. When we supply a count and a character, the `string` contains that many copies of the given character.

### Direct and Copy Forms of Initialization

In § 2.2.1 (p. 32) we saw that C++ has several different forms of initialization. Using `strings`, we can start to understand how these forms differ from one another. When we initialize a variable using `=`, we are asking the compiler to **copy initialize** the object by copying the initializer on the right-hand side into the object being created. Otherwise, when we omit the `=`, we use **direct initialization**.

When we have a single initializer, we can use either the direct or copy form of initialization. When we initialize a variable from more than one value, such as in the initialization of `s4` above, we must use the direct form of initialization:

```
string s5 = "hiya"; // copy initialization
string s6("hiya"); // direct initialization
string s7(10, 'c'); // direct initialization; s7 is ccccccccc
```

When we want to use several values, we can indirectly use the copy form of initialization by explicitly creating a (temporary) object to copy:

```
string s8 = string(10, 'c'); // copy initialization; s8 is ccccccccc
```

The initializer of `s8`—`string(10, 'c')`—creates a `string` of the given size and character value and then copies that value into `s8`. It is as if we had written

```
string temp(10, 'c'); // temp is ccccccccc
string s8 = temp; // copy temp into s8
```

Although the code used to initialize `s8` is legal, it is less readable and offers no compensating advantage over the way we initialized `s7`.

### 3.2.2 Operations on strings

Along with defining how objects are created and initialized, a class also defines the operations that objects of the class type can perform. A class can define operations that are called by name, such as the `isbn` function of our `Sales_item` class (§ 1.5.2, p. 16). A class also can define what various operator symbols, such as `<<` or `+`, mean when applied to objects of the class' type. Table 3.2 lists the most common `string` operations.

Table 3.2: string Operations

<code>os&lt;&lt;s</code>	Writes <code>s</code> onto output stream <code>os</code> . Return <code>os</code> .
<code>is&gt;&gt;s</code>	Reads whitespace-separated string from <code>is</code> to <code>s</code> . Return <code>is</code> .
<code>getline(is, s)</code>	Reads a line of input from <code>is</code> into <code>s</code> . Return <code>is</code> .
<code>s.empty()</code>	Returns true if <code>s</code> is empty; otherwise returns false.
<code>s.size()</code>	Returns the number of characters in <code>s</code> .
<code>s[n]</code>	Returns a reference to the <code>char</code> at position <code>n</code> in <code>s</code> ; position start at 0.
<code>s1 + s2</code>	Returns a <code>string</code> that is the concatenation of <code>s1</code> and <code>s2</code> .
<code>s1 = s2</code>	Replaces characters in <code>s1</code> with a copy of <code>s2</code> .
<code>s1 == s2</code>	The <code>string</code> <code>s1</code> and <code>s2</code> are equal if they contain the same characters.
<code>s1 != s2</code>	Equality is case-sensitive.
<code>&lt;, &lt;=, &gt;, &gt;=</code>	Comparisons are case-sensitive and use dictionary ordering.

### Reading and Writing strings

As we saw in Chapter 1, we use the `iostream` library to read and write values of built-in types such as `int`, `double`, and so on. We use the same IO operators to read and write `strings`:

```
int main()
{
    string word;
    while (cin >> word) // read until end-of-file
        cout << word << endl; // write each word followed by a new line
}
```



```
    return 0;
}
```

In this program, we read into a `string`, not an `int`. Otherwise, the `while` condition executes similarly to the one in our previous program. The condition tests the stream after the read completes. If the stream is valid—it hasn't hit end-of-file or encountered an invalid input—then the body of the `while` is executed. The body prints the value we read on the standard output. Once we hit end-of-file (or invalid input), we fall out of the `while`.

### Using `getline` to Read an Entire Line

Sometimes we do not want to ignore the whitespace in our input. In such cases, we can use the `getline` function instead of the `>>` operator. The `getline` function takes an input stream and a `string`. This function reads the given stream up to and including the first newline and stores what it read—not including the newline—in its `string` argument. After `getline` sees a newline, even if it is the first character in the input, it stops reading and returns. If the first character in the input is a newline, then the resulting `string` is the empty `string`.

Like the input operator, `getline` returns its `istream` argument. As a result, we can use `getline` as a condition just as we can use the input operator as a condition (§ 1.4.3, p. 10). For example, we can rewrite the previous program that wrote one word per line to write a line at a time instead:

```
int main()
{
    string line;
    // read input a line at a time until end-of-file
    while (getline(cin, line))
        return 0;
}
```

Because `line` does not contain a newline, we must write our own. As usual, we use `endl` to end the current line and flush the buffer.



The newline that causes `getline` to return is discarded; the newline is not stored in the `string`.

### The `string` empty and size Operations

The `empty` function does what one would expect: It returns a `bool` (§ 2.1, p. 25) indicating whether the `string` is empty. Like the `isbn` member of `Sales_item` (§ 1.5.2, p. 16), `empty` is a member function of `string`. To call this function, we use the dot operator to specify the object on which we want to run the `empty` function.

We can revise the previous program to only print lines that are not empty:

```
// read input a line at a time and discard blank lines
while (getline(cin, line))
    if (!line.empty())
        cout << line << endl;
```

The condition uses the logical NOT operator (the vital! operator). This operator returns the inverse of the `bool` value of its operand. In this case, the condition is `true` if `str` is not empty.

The `size` member returns the length of a `string` (i.e., the number of characters in it). We can use `size` to print only lines longer than 80 characters:

```
string line;
// read input a line at a time and print lines that are longer than 80 characters
while (getline(cin, line))
    if (line.size() > 80)
        cout << line << endl;
```

### The `string::size_type` Type

It might be logical to expect that `size` returns an `int` or, thinking back to § 2.1.1 (p. 25), an `unsigned`. Instead, `size` returns a `string::size_type` value. This type requires a bit of explanation.

The `string` class—and most other library types—defines several companion types. These companion types make it possible to use the library types in a machine-independent manner. The type `size_type` is one of these



companion types. To use the `size_type` defined by `string`, we use the scope operator to say that the name `size_type` is defined in the `string` class.

Although we don't know the precise type of `string::size_type`, we do know that it is an unsigned type (§ 2.1.1, p. 25) big enough to hold the size of any `string`. Any variable used to store the result from the `string` size operation should be of type `string::size_type`.

Admittedly, it can be tedious to type `string::size_type`. Under the new standard, we can ask the compiler to provide the appropriate type by using `auto` or `decltype` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53):

```
auto len = line.size(); // len has type string::size_type
```

Because `size` returns an unsigned type, it is essential to remember that expressions that mix signed and unsigned data can have surprising results (§ 2.1.2, p. 27). For example, if `n` is an `int` that holds a negative value, then `s.size() < n` will almost surely evaluate as `true`. It yields `true` because the negative value in `n` will convert to a large unsigned value.



You can avoid problems due to conversion between `unsigned` and `int` by not using `ints` in expressions that use `size()`.

## Comparing strings

The `string` class defines several operators that compare `strings`. These operators work by comparing the characters of the `strings`. The comparisons are casesensitive—upper- and lowercase versions of a letter are different characters.

The equality operators (`==` and `!=`) test whether two strings are equal or unequal, respectively. Two `strings` are equal if they are the same length and contain the same characters. The relational operators `<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=` test whether one `string` is less than, less than or equal to, greater than, or greater than or equal to another. These operators use the same strategy as a (case-sensitive) dictionary:

1. If two `strings` have different lengths and if every character in the shorter `string` is equal to the corresponding character of the longer `string`, then the shorter `string` is less than the longer one.
2. If any characters at corresponding positions in the two `strings` differ, then the result of the `string` comparison is the result of comparing the first character at which the `strings` differ.

As an example, consider the following `strings`:

```
string str = "Hello";
string phrase = "Hello World";
string slang = "Hiya";
```

Using rule 1, we see that `str` is less than `phrase`. By applying rule 2, we see that `slang` is greater than both `str` and `phrase`.

## Assignment for strings

In general, the library types strive to make it as easy to use a library type as it is to use a built-in type. To this end, most of the library types support assignment. In the case of `strings`, we can assign one `string` object to another:

```
string st1(10, 'c'), st2; // st1 is ccccccccc; st2 is an empty string
st1 = st2; // assignment: replace contents of st1 with a copy of st2
           // both st1 and st2 are now the empty string
```

## Adding Two strings

Adding two `strings` yields a new `string` that is the concatenation of the left-hand followed by the right-hand operand. That is, when we use the plus operator (`+`) on `strings`, the result is a new `string` whose characters are a copy of those in the left-hand operand followed by those from the right-hand operand. The compound assignment operator (`+=`) (§ 1.4.1, p. 8) appends the right-hand operand to the lefthand `string`:

```
string s1 = "hello, ", s2 = "world\n";
string s3 = s1 + s2; // s3 is hello, world\n
s1 += s2; // equivalent to s1 = s1 + s2
```

## Adding Literals and strings

As we saw in § 2.1.2 (p. 27), we can use one type where another type is expected if there is a conversion from the given type to the expected type. The `string` library lets us convert both character literals and character string literals (§ 2.1.3, p. 29) to `strings`. Because we can use these literals where a `string` is expected, we can rewrite the previous program as follows:

```
string s1 = "hello", s2 = "world"; // no punctuation in s1 or s2
string s3 = s1 + ", " + s2 + '\n';
```

When we mix `strings` and string or character literals, at least one operand to each `+` operator must be of `string` type:

```
string s4 = s1 + ", "; // ok: adding a string and a literal
string s5 = "hello" + ", "; // error: no string operand
string s6 = s1 + ", " + "world"; // ok: each + has a string operand
string s7 = "hello" + ", " + s2; // error: can't add string literals
```

The initializations of `s4` and `s5` involve only a single operation each, so it is easy to see whether the initialization is legal. The initialization of `s6` may appear surprising, but it works in much the same way as when we chain together input or output expressions (§ 1.2, p. 4). This initialization groups as

```
string s6 = (s1 + ", ") + "world";
```

The subexpression `s1 + ", "` returns a `string`, which forms the left-hand operand of the second `+` operator. It is as if we had written

```
string tmp = s1 + ", "; // ok: + has a string operand
s6 = tmp + "world"; // ok: + has a string operand
```

On the other hand, the initialization of `s7` is illegal, which we can see if we parenthesize the expression:

```
string s7 = ("hello" + ", ") + s2; // error: can't add string literals
```

Now it should be easy to see that the first subexpression adds two string literals. There is no way to do so, and so the statement is in error.



For historical reasons, and for compatibility with C, string literals are not standard library `strings`. It is important to remember that these types differ when you use string literals and library `strings`.

### Exercises Section 3.2.2

**Exercise 3.2:** Write a program to read the standard input a line at a time. Modify your program to read a word at a time.

**Exercise 3.3:** Explain how whitespace characters are handled in the `string` input operator and in the `getline` function.

**Exercise 3.4:** Write a program to read two `strings` and report whether the `strings` are equal. If not, report which of the two is larger. Now, change the program to report whether the `strings` have the same length, and if not, report which is longer.

**Exercise 3.5:** Write a program to read `strings` from the standard input, concatenating what is read into one large `string`. Print the concatenated `string`. Next, change the program to separate adjacent input `strings` by a space.

### 3.2.3 Dealing with the Characters in a string

Often we need to deal with the individual characters in a `string`. We might want to check to see whether a `string` contains any whitespace, or to change the characters to lowercase, or to see whether a given character is present, and so on.

One part of this kind of processing involves how we gain access to the characters themselves. Sometimes we need to process every character. Other times we need to process only a specific character, or we can stop processing once some condition is met. It turns out that the best way to deal with these cases involves different language and library facilities.

The other part of processing characters is knowing and/or changing the characteristics of a character. This part of the job is handled by a set of library functions, described in Table 3.3. These functions are defined in the `cctype` header.

Table 3.3: `cctype` Functions

<code>isalnum(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a letter or a digit.
<code>isalpha(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a letter.
<code>iscntrl(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a control character.
<code>isdigit(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a digit.
<code>isgraph(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is not a space but is printable.
<code>islower(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a lowercase letter.
<code>isprint(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a printable character (i.e., a space or a character that has a visible representation).
<code>ispunct(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a punctuation character (i.e., a character that is not a control character, a digit, a letter, or a printable whitespace).
<code>isspace(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is whitespace (i.e., a space, tab, vertical tab, return, newline, or formfeed).
<code>isupper(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is an uppercase letter.
<code>isxdigit(c)</code>	true if <code>c</code> is a hexadecimal digit.
<code>tolower(c)</code>	if <code>c</code> is an uppercase letter, returns its lowercase equivalent; otherwise returns <code>c</code> unchanged.
<code>toupper(c)</code>	if <code>c</code> is a lowercase letter, returns its uppercase equivalent; otherwise returns <code>c</code> unchanged.

#### Advice: Use the C++ Versions of C Library Headers

In addition to facilities defined specifically for C++, the C++ library incorporates the C library. Headers in C have names of the form `name.h`. The C++ versions of these headers are named `cname`—they remove the `.h` suffix and precede the name with the letter `c`. The `c` indicates that the header is part of the C library.

Hence, `cctype` has the same contents as `cctype.h`, but in a form that is appropriate for C++ programs. In particular, the names defined in the `cname` headers are defined inside the `std` namespace, whereas those defined in the `.h` versions are not.

Ordinarily, C++ programs should use the `cname` versions of headers and not the `name.h` versions. That way names from the standard library are consistently found in the `std` namespace. Using the `.h` headers puts the burden on the programmer to remember which library names are inherited from C and which are unique to C++.

#### Processing Every Character? Use Range-Based for

If we want to do something to every character in a `string`, by far the best approach is to use a statement introduced by the new standard: the **range for** statement. This statement iterates through the elements in a given sequence and performs some operation on each value in that sequence. The syntactic form is

```
for (declaration : expression)
    statement
```

where `expression` is an object of a type that represents a sequence, and `declaration` defines the variable that we'll use to access the underlying elements in the sequence. On each iteration, the variable in `declaration` is initialized from the value of the next element in `expression`.

A `string` represents a sequence of characters, so we can use a `string` as the `expression` in a **range for**. As a simple example, we can use a **range for** to print each character from a `string` on its own line of output:

```
string str("some string");
// print the characters in str one character to a line
for (auto c : str) // for every char in str
    cout << c << endl; // print the current character followed by a newline
```

The **for** loop associates the variable `c` with `str`. We define the loop control variable the same way we do any other variable. In this case, we use `auto` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53) to let the compiler determine the type of `c`, which in this case will be `char`. On each iteration, the next character in `str` will be copied into `c`. Thus, we can read this loop as saying, “For every character `c` in the `string` `str`,” do something. The “something” in this case is to print the character followed by a newline.

As a somewhat more complicated example, we'll use a range `for` and the `ispunct` function to count the number of punctuation characters in a `string`:

```
string s("Hello World!!!");
// punct_cnt has the same type that s.size returns
decltype(s.size()) punct_cnt = 0;
// count the number of punctuation characters in s
for (auto c : s) // for every char in s
    if (ispunct(c)) // if the character is punctuation
        ++punct_cnt; // increment the punctuation counter
cout << punct_cnt
    << " punctuation characters in " << s << endl;
```

The output of this program is

**3 punctuation characters in Hello World!!!**

Here we use `decltype` (§ 2.5.3, p. 54) to declare our counter, `punct_cnt`. Its type is the type returned by calling `s.size`, which is `string::size_type`. We use a range `for` to process each character in the `string`. This time we check whether each character is punctuation. If so, we use the increment operator (§ 1.4.1, p. 8) to add 1 to the counter. When the range `for` completes, we print the result.

### Using a Range `for` to Change the Characters in a `string`

If we want to change the value of the characters in a `string`, we must define the loop variable as a reference type (§ 2.3.1, p. 39). Remember that a reference is just another name for a given object. When we use a reference as our control variable, that variable is bound to each element in the sequence in turn. Using the reference, we can change the character to which the reference is bound.

Suppose that instead of counting punctuation, we wanted to convert a `string` to all uppercase letters. To do so we can use the library `toupper` function, which takes a character and returns the uppercase version of that character. To convert the whole `string` we need to call `toupper` on each character and put the result back in that character:

```
string s("Hello World!!!");
// convert s to uppercase
for (auto &c : s) // for every char in s (note: c is a reference)
    c = toupper(c); // c is a reference, so the assignment changes the char in s
cout << s << endl;
```

The output of this code is

**HELLO WORLD!!!**

On each iteration, `c` refers to the next character in `s`. When we assign to `c`, we are changing the underlying character in `s`. So, when we execute

```
c = toupper(c); // c is a reference, so the assignment changes the char in s
```

we're changing the value of the character to which `c` is bound. When this loop completes, all the characters in `str` will be uppercase.

### Processing Only Some Characters?

A range `for` works well when we need to process every character. However, sometimes we need to access only a single character or to access characters until some condition is reached. For example, we might want to capitalize only the first character or only the first word in a `string`.

There are two ways to access individual characters in a `string`: We can use a subscript or an iterator. We'll have more to say about iterators in § 3.4 (p. 81) and in Chapter 9.

The subscript operator (the `[ ]` **operator**) takes a `string::size_type` (§ 3.2.2, p. 67) value that denotes the position of the character we want to access. The operator returns a reference to the character at the given position.

Subscripts for `strings` start at zero; if `s` is a `string` with at least two characters, then `s[0]` is the first character, `s[1]` is the second, and the last character is in `s[s.size() - 1]`.



The values we use to subscript a `string` must be  $\geq 0$  and  $< \text{size}()$ . The result of using an index outside this range is undefined. By implication, subscripting an empty `string` is undefined.

The value in the subscript is referred to as “a subscript” or “an **index**.” The index we supply can be any expression that yields an integral value. However, if our index has a signed type, its value will be converted to the unsigned type that `string::size_type` represents (§ 2.1.2, p. 27).

The following example uses the subscript operator to print the first character in a `string`:

```
if (!s.empty()) // make sure there's a character to print
    cout << s[0] << endl; // print the first character in s
```

Before accessing the character, we check that `s` is not empty. Any time we use a subscript, we must ensure that there is a value at the given location. If `s` is empty, then `s[0]` is undefined.

So long as the `string` is not `const` (§ 2.4, p. 46), we can assign a new value to the character that the subscript operator returns. For example, we can capitalize the first letter as follows:

```
string s("some string");
if (!s.empty()) // make sure there's a character in s[0]
    s[0] = toupper(s[0]); // assign a new value to the first character in s
```

The output of this program is

Some string

### Using a Subscript for Iteration

As a another example, we'll change the first word in `s` to all uppercase:

```
// process characters in s until we run out of characters or we hit a whitespace
for (decltype(s.size()) index = 0; index != s.size() && !isspace(s[index]); ++index)
    s[index] = toupper(s[index]); // capitalize the current character
```

This program generates

SOME string

Our `for` loop (§ 1.4.2, p. 9) uses `index` to subscript `s`. We use `decltype` to give `index` the appropriate type. We initialize `index` to 0 so that the first iteration will start on the first character in `s`. On each iteration we increment `index` to look at the next character in `s`. In the body of the loop we capitalize the current letter.

The new part in this loop is the condition in the `for`. That condition uses the logical AND operator (the **&& operator**). This operator yields `true` if both operands are `true` and `false` otherwise. The important part about this operator is that we are guaranteed that it evaluates its right-hand operand only if the left-hand operand is `true`. In this case, we are guaranteed that we will not subscript `s` unless we know that `index` is in range. That is, `s[index]` is executed only if `index` is not equal to `s.size()`. Because `index` is never incremented beyond the value of `s.size()`, we know that `index` will always be less than `s.size()`.

#### Caution: Subscripts are Unchecked

When we use a subscript, we must ensure that the subscript is in range. That is, the subscript must be `>= 0` and `<` the `size()` of the `string`. One way to simplify code that uses subscripts is always to use a variable of type `string::size_type` as the subscript. Because that type is `unsigned`, we ensure that the subscript cannot be less than zero. When we use a `size_type` value as the subscript, we need to check only that our subscript is less than value returned by `size()`.



The library is not required to check the value of an subscript. The result of using an out-of-range subscript is undefined.

### Using a Subscript for Random Access

In the previous example we advanced our subscript one position at a time to capitalize each character in sequence. We can also calculate an subscript and directly fetch the indicated character. There is no need to access characters in sequence.

As an example, let's assume we have a number between 0 and 15 and we want to generate the hexadecimal representation of that number. We can do so using a `string` that is initialized to hold the 16 hexadecimal “digits”:

```
const string hexdigits = "0123456789ABCDEF"; // possible hex digits
cout << "Enter a series of numbers between 0 and 15"
```

```

    << " separated by spaces. Hit ENTER when finished: "
    << endl;
string result; // will hold the resulting hexify'd string
string::size_type n; // hold numbers from the input
while (cin >> n)
    if (n < hexdigits.size()) // ignore invalid input
        result += hexdigits[n]; // fetch the indicated hex digit
cout << "Your hex number is: " << result << endl;

```

If we give this program the input

```
12 0 5 15 8 15
```

the output will be

```
Your hex number is: C05F8F
```

We start by initializing `hexdigits` to hold the hexadecimal digits 0 through F. We make that `string const` (§ 2.4, p. 46) because we do not want these values to change. Inside the loop we use the input value `n` to subscript `hexdigits`. The value of `hexdigits[n]` is the `char` that appears at position `n` in `hexdigits`. For example, if `n` is 15, then the result is F; if it's 12, the result is C; and so on. We append that digit to `result`, which we print once we have read all the input.

Whenever we use a subscript, we should think about how we know that it is in range. In this program, our subscript, `n`, is a `string::size_type`, which as we know is an `unsigned` type. As a result, we know that `n` is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to 0. Before we use `n` to subscript `hexdigits`, we verify that it is less than the size of `hexdigits`.

### Exercises Section 3.2.3

**Exercise 3.6:** Use a range `for` to change all the characters in a string to X.

**Exercise 3.7:** What would happen if you define the loop control variable in the previous exercise as type `char`? Predict the results and then change your program to use a `char` to see if you were right.

**Exercise 3.8:** Rewrite the program in the first exercise, first using a `while` and again using a traditional `for` loop. Which of the three approaches do you prefer and why?

**Exercise 3.9:** What does the following program do? Is it valid? If not, why not?

```
string s;
cout << s[0] << endl;
```

**Exercise 3.10:** Write a program that reads a string of characters including punctuation and writes what was read but with the punctuation removed.

**Exercise 3.11:** Is the following range `for` legal? If so, what is the type of `c`?

```
const string s = "Keep out!";
for (auto &c : s) { /* ... */ }
```

## 3.3 Library vector Type

A **vector** is a collection of objects, all of which have the same type. Every object in the collection has an associated index, which gives access to that object. A **vector** is often referred to as a **container** because it “contains” other objects. We’ll have much more to say about containers in Part II.

To use a **vector**, we must include the appropriate header. In our examples, we also assume that an appropriate `using` declaration is made:

```
#include <vector>
using std::vector;
```

A **vector** is a **class template**. C++ has both class and function templates. Writing a template requires a fairly deep understanding of C++. Indeed, we won’t see how to create our own templates until Chapter 16! Fortunately, we can use templates without knowing how to write them.

Templates are not themselves functions or classes. Instead, they can be thought of as instructions to the compiler for generating classes or functions. The process that the compiler uses to create classes or functions from templates is called **instantiation**. When we use a template, we specify what kind of class or function we want the compiler to instantiate.



For a class template, we specify which class to instantiate by supplying additional information, the nature of which depends on the template. How we specify the information is always the same: We supply it inside a pair of angle brackets following the template's name.

In the case of `vector`, the additional information we supply is the type of the objects the `vector` will hold:

```
vector<int> ivec; // ivec holds objects of type int
vector<Sales_item> Sales_vec; // holds Sales_items
vector<vector<string>> file; // vector whose elements are vectors
```

In this example, the compiler generates three distinct types from the `vector` template: `vector<int>`, `vector<Sales_item>`, and `vector<vector<string>>`.



**vector** is a template, not a type. Types generated from **vector** must include the element type, for example, `vector<int>`.

### 3.3.1 Defining and Initializing vectors

As with any class type, the `vector` template controls how we define and initialize vectors. Table 3.4 lists the most common ways to define vectors.

Table 3.4: Ways to Initialize a `vector`

<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v1</code>	<code>vector</code> that holds objects of type <code>T</code> . Default initialization; <code>v1</code> is empty.
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v2(v1)</code>	<code>v2</code> has a copy of each element in <code>v1</code> .
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v2=v1</code>	Equivalent to <code>v2(v1)</code> , <code>v2</code> is a copy of the elements in <code>v1</code> .
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v3(n, val)</code>	<code>v3</code> has <code>n</code> elements with value <code>val</code> .
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v4(n)</code>	<code>v4</code> has <code>n</code> copies of a value-initialized object.
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v5{a,b,c,...}</code>	<code>v5</code> has as many elements as there are initializers; elements are initialized by corresponding initializers.
<code>vector&lt;T&gt; v5={a,b,c,...}</code>	Equivalent to <code>v5{a,b,c,...}</code> .

We can default initialize a vector (§ 2.2.1, p. 32), which creates an empty `vector` of the specified type:

```
vector<string> svec; // default initialization; svec has no elements
```

It might seem that an empty `vector` would be of little use. However, as we'll see shortly, we can (efficiently) add elements to a `vector` at run time. Indeed, the most common way of using vectors is to define an initially empty `vector` to which elements are added as their values become known at run time.

We can also supply initial value(s) for the element(s) when we define a `vector`. For example, we can copy elements from another `vector`. When we copy a `vector`, each element in the new `vector` is a copy of the corresponding element in the original `vector`. The two vectors must be the same type:

```
vector<int> ivec; // initially empty
// give ivec some values
vector<int> ivec2(ivec); // copy elements of ivec into ivec2
vector<int> ivec3 = ivec; // copy elements of ivec into ivec3
vector<string> svec(ivec2); // error: svec holds strings, not ints
```

#### List Initializing a vector

Another way to provide element values, is that under the new standard, we can list initialize (§ 2.2.1, p. 32) a `vector` from a list of zero or more initial element values enclosed in curly braces:

```
vector<string> articles = {"a", "an", "the"};
```

The resulting `vector` has three elements; the first holds the `string` "a", the second holds "an", and the last is "the".

As we've seen, C++ provides several forms of initialization (§ 2.2.1, p. 32). In many, but not all, cases we can use these forms of initialization interchangeably. So far, we have seen two examples where the form of initialization matters: when we use the copy initialization form (i.e., when we use `=`) (§ 3.2.1, p. 66), we can supply only a single initializer; and when we supply an in-class initializer (§ 2.6.1, p. 56), we must either use copy initialization or use curly braces. A third restriction is that we can supply a list of element values only

by using list initialization in which the initializers are enclosed in curly braces. We cannot supply a list of initializers using parentheses:

```
vector<string> v1{"a", "an", "the"}; // list initialization
vector<string> v2("a", "an", "the"); // error
```

## Creating a Specified Number of Elements

We can also initialize a `vector` from a count and an element value. The count determines how many elements the `vector` will have; the value provides the initial value for each of those elements:

```
vector<int> ivec(10, -1); // ten int elements, each initialized to -1
vector<string> svec(10, "hi!"); // ten strings; each element is "hi!"
```

## Value Initialization

We can usually omit the value and supply only a size. In this case the library creates a **value-initialized** element initializer for us. This library-generated value is used to initialize each element in the container. The value of the element initializer depends on the type of the elements stored in the `vector`.

If the `vector` holds elements of a built-in type, such as `int`, then the element initializer has a value of 0. If the elements are of a class type, such as `string`, then the element initializer is itself default initialized:

```
vector<int> ivec(10); // ten elements, each initialized to 0
vector<string> svec(10); // ten elements, each an empty string
```

There are two restrictions on this form of initialization: The first restriction is that some classes require that we always supply an explicit initializer (§ 2.2.1, p. 32). If our `vector` holds objects of a type that we cannot default initialize, then we must supply an initial element value; it is not possible to create `vectors` of such types by supplying only a size.

The second restriction is that when we supply an element count without also supplying an initial value, we must use the direct form of initialization:

```
vector<int> vi = 10; // error: must use direct initialization to supply a size
```

Here we are using 10 to instruct `vector` how to create the `vector`—we want a `vector` with ten value-initialized elements. We are not “copying” 10 into the `vector`. Hence, we cannot use the copy form of initialization. We’ll see more about how this restriction works in § 7.5.4 (p. 224).

## List Initializer or Element Count?

In a few cases, what initialization means depends upon whether we use curly braces or parentheses to pass the initializer(s). For example, when we initialize a `vector<int>` from a single `int` value, that value might represent the `vector`’s size or it might be an element value. Similarly, if we supply exactly two `int` values, those values could be a size and an initial value, or they could be values for a two-element `vector`. We specify which meaning we intend by whether we use curly braces or parentheses:

```
vector<int> v1(10); // v1 has ten elements with value 0
vector<int> v2{10}; // v2 has one element with value 10
vector<int> v3(10, 1); // v3 has ten elements with value 1
vector<int> v4{10, 1}; // v4 has two elements with values 10 and 1
```

When we use parentheses, we are saying that the values we supply are to be used to construct the object. Thus, `v1` and `v3` use their initializers to determine the `vector`’s size, and its size and element values, respectively.

When we use curly braces, `{...}`, we’re saying that, if possible, we want to *list initialize* the object. That is, if there is a way to use the values inside the curly braces as a list of element initializers, the class will do so. Only if it is not possible to list initialize the object will the other ways to initialize the object be considered. The values we supply when we initialize `v2` and `v4` can be used as element values. These objects are list initialized; the resulting `vectors` have one and two elements, respectively.

On the other hand, if we use curly braces and there is no way to use the initializers to list initialize the object, then those values will be used to construct the object. For example, to list initialize a `vector` of `strings`, we must supply values that can be used as `strings`. In this case, there is no confusion about whether to list initialize the elements or construct a `vector` of the given size:



```
vector<string> v5{"hi"}; // list initialization: v5 has one element
vector<string> v6("hi"); // error: can't construct a vector from a string literal
vector<string> v7{10}; // v7 has ten default-initialized elements
vector<string> v8{10, "hi"}; // v8 has ten elements with value "hi"
```

Although we used curly braces on three but one of these definitions, only `v5` is list initialized. In order to list initialize the `vector`, the values inside braces must match the element type. We cannot use an `int` to initialize a `string`, so the initializers for `v7` and `v8` can't be element initializers. If list initialization isn't possible, the compiler looks for other ways to initialize the object from the given values.

### Exercises Section 3.3.1

**Exercise 3.12:** Which, if any, of the following `vector` definitions are in error? For those that are legal, explain what the definition does. For those that are not legal, explain why they are illegal.

- (a) `vector<vector<int>> ivec;`
- (b) `vector<string> svec = ivec;`
- (c) `vector<string> svec(10, "null");`

**Exercise 3.13:** How many elements are there in each of the following `vectors`? What are the values of the elements?

- (a) `vector<int> v1;`
- (b) `vector<int> v2(10);`
- (c) `vector<int> v3(10, 42);`
- (d) `vector<int> v4{10};`
- (e) `vector<int> v5{10, 42};`
- (f) `vector<string> v6{10};`
- (g) `vector<string> v7{10, "hi"};`

### 3.3.2 Adding Elements to a vector

Directly initializing the elements of a `vector` is feasible only if we have a small number of known initial values, if we want to make a copy of another `vector`, or if we want to initialize all the elements to the same value. More commonly, when we create a `vector`, we don't know how many elements we'll need, or we don't know the value of those elements. Even if we do know all the values, if we have a large number of different initial element values, it can be cumbersome to specify them when we create the `vector`.

As one example, if we need a `vector` with values from 0 to 9, we can easily use list initialization. What if we wanted elements from 0 to 99 or 0 to 999? List initialization would be too unwieldy. In such cases, it is better to create an empty `vector` and use a `vector` member named `push_back` to add elements at run time. The `push_back` operation takes a value and “pushes” that value as a new last element onto the “back” of the `vector`. For example:

```
vector<int> v2; // empty vector
for (int i = 0; i != 100; ++i)
    v2.push_back(i); // append sequential integers to v2
// at end of loop v2 has 100 elements, values 0 . . . 99
```

Even though we know we ultimately will have 100 elements, we define `v2` as empty. Each iteration adds the next sequential integer as a new element in `v2`.

We use the same approach when we want to create a `vector` where we don't know until run time how many elements the `vector` should have. For example, we might read the input, storing the values we read in the `vector`:

```
// read words from the standard input and store them as elements in a vector
string word;
vector<string> text; // empty vector
while (cin >> word) {
    text.push_back(word); // append word to text
}
```

Again, we start with an initially empty **vector**. This time, we read and store an unknown number of values in **text**.

### Key Concept: vectors Grow Efficiently

The standard requires that **vector** implementations can efficiently add elements at run time. Because **vectors** grow efficiently, it is often unnecessary—and can result in poorer performance—to define a **vector** of a specific size. The exception to this rule is if all the elements actually need the same value. If differing element values are needed, it is usually more efficient to define an empty **vector** and add elements as the values we need become known at run time. Moreover, as we'll see in § 9.4 (p. 265), **vector** offers capabilities to allow us to further enhance run-time performance when we add elements.

Starting with an empty **vector** and adding elements at run time is distinctly different from how we use built-in arrays in C and in most other languages. In particular, if you are accustomed to using C or Java, you might expect that it would be best to define the **vector** at its expected size. In fact, the contrary is usually the case.

### Programming Implications of Adding Elements to a vector

The fact that we can easily and efficiently add elements to a **vector** greatly simplifies many programming tasks. However, this simplicity imposes a new obligation on our programs: We must ensure that any loops we write are correct even if the loop changes the size of the **vector**.

Other implications that follow from the dynamic nature of **vectors** will become clearer as we learn more about using them. However, there is one implication that is worth noting already: For reasons we'll explore in § 5.4.3 (p. 143), we cannot use a range **for** if the body of the loop adds elements to the **vector**.



The body of a range **for** must not change the size of the sequence over which it is iterating.

### Exercises Section 3.3.2

**Exercise 3.14:** Write a program to read a sequence of **ints** from **cin** and store those values in a **vector**.

**Exercise 3.15:** Repeat the previous program but read **strings** this time.

### 3.3.3 Other vector Operations

In addition to **push\_back**, **vector** provides only a few other operations, most of which are similar to the corresponding operations on **strings**. Table 3.5 lists the most important ones.

Table 3.5: vector Operations

<code>v.empty()</code>	Returns <b>true</b> if <b>v</b> is empty; otherwise returns <b>false</b> .
<code>v.size()</code>	Returns the number of elements in <b>v</b> .
<code>v.push_back(t)</code>	Adds an element with value <b>t</b> to end of <b>v</b> .
<code>v[n]</code>	Returns a reference to the element at position <b>n</b> in <b>v</b> .
<code>v1=v2</code>	Replaces the elements in <b>v1</b> with a copy of the elements in <b>v2</b> .
<code>v1={a,b,c,...}</code>	Replaces the elements in <b>v1</b> with a copy of elements in the comma-separate list.
<code>v1==v2</code>	<b>v1</b> and <b>v2</b> are equal if they have the same number of elements and
<code>v1!=v2</code>	each element in <b>v1</b> is equal to the corresponding element in <b>v2</b> .
<code>&lt;, &lt;=, &gt;, &gt;=</code>	Have their normal meanings using dictionary ordering.

We access the elements of a **vector** the same way that we access the characters in a **string**: through their position in the **vector**. For example, we can use a range **for** (§ 3.2.3, p. 70) to process all the elements in a **vector**:

```
vector<int> v{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
for (auto &i : v) // for each element in v (note: i is a reference)
    i *= i; // square the element value
for (auto i : v) // for each element in v
    cout << i << " "; // print the element
```

```
cout << endl;
```

In the first loop, we define our control variable, `i`, as a reference so that we can use `i` to assign new values to the elements in `v`. We let `auto` deduce the type of `i`. This loop uses a new form of the compound assignment operator (§ 1.4.1, p. 8). As we've seen, `+=` adds the right-hand operand to the left and stores the result in the left-hand operand. The `*=` operator behaves similarly, except that it multiplies the left- and right-hand operands, storing the result in the left-hand one. The second range `for` prints each element.

The `empty` and `size` members behave as do the corresponding `string` members (§ 3.2.2, p. 67): `empty` returns a `bool` indicating whether the vector has any elements, and `size` returns the number of elements in the vector. The `size` member returns a value of the `size_type` defined by the corresponding vector type.



To use `size_type`, we must name the type in which it is defined. A `vector` type always includes its element type (§ 3.3, p. 74):

```
vector<int>::size_type // ok
vector::size_type      // error
```

The equality and relational operators have the same behavior as the corresponding `string` operations (§ 3.2.2, p. 67). Two vectors are equal if they have the same number of elements and if the corresponding elements all have the same value. The relational operators apply a dictionary ordering: If the vectors have differing sizes, but the elements that are in common are equal, then the vector with fewer elements is less than the one with more elements. If the elements have differing values, then the relationship between the vectors is determined by the relationship between the first elements that differ.

We can compare two vectors only if we can compare the elements in those vectors. Some class types, such as `string`, define the meaning of the equality and relational operators. Others, such as our `Sales_item` class, do not. The only operations `Sales_item` supports are those listed in § 1.5.1 (p. 14). Those operations did not include the equality or relational operators. As a result, we cannot compare two `vector<Sales_item>` objects.

### Computing a vector Index

We can fetch a given element using the subscript operator (§ 3.2.3, p. 70). As with strings, subscripts for vector start at 0; the type of a subscript is the corresponding `size_type`; and—assuming the vector is `nonconst`—we can write to the element returned by the subscript operator. In addition, as we did in § 3.2.3 (p. 70), we can compute an index and directly fetch the element at that position.

As an example, let's assume that we have a collection of grades that range from 0 through 100. We'd like to count how many grades fall into various clusters of 10. Between zero and 100 there are 101 possible grades. These grades can be represented by 11 clusters: 10 clusters of 10 grades each plus one cluster for the perfect score of 100. The first cluster will count grades of 0 through 9, the second will count grades from 10 through 19, and so on. The final cluster counts how many scores of 100 were achieved.

Clustering the grades this way, if our input is

```
42 65 95 100 39 67 95 76 88 76 83 92 76 93
```

then the output should be

```
0 0 0 1 1 0 2 3 2 4 1
```

which indicates that there were no grades below 30, one grade in the 30s, one in the 40s, none in the 50s, two in the 60s, three in the 70s, two in the 80s, four in the 90s, and one grade of 100.

We'll use a vector with 11 elements to hold the counters for each cluster. We can determine the cluster index for a given grade by dividing that grade by 10. When we divide two integers, we get an integer in which the fractional part is truncated. For example,  $42/10$  is 4,  $65/10$  is 6 and  $100/10$  is 10. Once we've computed the cluster index, we can use it to subscript our vector and fetch the counter we want to increment:

```
// count the number of grades by clusters of ten: 0--9, 10--19, ... 90--99, 100
vector<unsigned> scores(11, 0); // 11 buckets, all initially 0
unsigned grade;
while (cin >> grade) { // read the grades
    if (grade <= 100) // handle only valid grades
        ++scores[grade/10]; // increment the counter for the current cluster
}
```

We start by defining a vector to hold the cluster counts. In this case, we do want each element to have the same value, so we allocate all 11 elements, each of which is initialized to 0. The `while` condition reads the

grades. Inside the loop, we check that the grade we read has a valid value (i.e., that it is less than or equal to 100). Assuming the grade is valid, we increment the appropriate counter for `grade`.

The statement that does the increment is a good example of the kind of terse code characteristic of C++ programs. This expression

```
++scores[grade/10]; // increment the counter for the current cluster
```

is equivalent to

```
auto ind = grade/10; // get the bucket index
scores[ind] = scores[ind] + 1; // increment the count
```

We compute the bucket index by dividing `grade` by 10 and use the result of the division to index `scores`. Subscripting `scores` fetches the appropriate counter for this grade. We increment the value of that element to indicate the occurrence of a score in the given range.

As we've seen, when we use a subscript, we should think about how we know that the indices are in range (§ 3.2.3, p. 70). In this program, we verify that the input is a valid grade in the range between 0 and 100. Thus, we know that the indices we can compute are between 0 and 10. These indices are between 0 and `scores.size() - 1`.

### Subscripting Does Not Add Elements

Programmers new to C++ sometimes think that subscripting a `vector` adds elements; it does not. The following code intends to add ten elements to `ivec`:

```
vector<int> ivec; // empty vector
for (decltype(ivec.size()) ix = 0; ix != 10; ++ix)
    ivec[ix] = ix; // disaster: ivec has no elements
```

However, it is in error: `ivec` is an empty `vector`; there are no elements to subscript! As we've seen, the right way to write this loop is to use `push_back`:

```
for (decltype(ivec.size()) ix = 0; ix != 10; ++ix)
    ivec.push_back(ix); // ok: adds a new element with value ix
```



The subscript operator on `vector` (and `string`) fetches an existing element; it does not add an element.

### Caution: Subscript Only Elements that are Known to Exist!

It is crucially important to understand that we may use the subscript operator (the `[]` operator) to fetch only elements that actually exist. For example,

```
vector<int> ivec; // empty vector
cout << ivec[0]; // error: ivec has no elements!

vector<int> ivec2(10); // vector with ten elements
cout << ivec2[10]; // error: ivec2 has elements 0 ... 9
```

It is an error to subscript an element that doesn't exist, but it is an error that the compiler is unlikely to detect. Instead, the value we get at run time is undefined.

Attempting to subscript elements that do not exist is, unfortunately, an extremely common and pernicious programming error. So-called *buffer overflow* errors are the result of subscripting elements that don't exist. Such bugs are the most common cause of security problems in PC and other applications.



A good way to ensure that subscripts are in range is to avoid subscripting altogether by using a `range` for whenever possible.

### Exercises Section 3.3.3

**Exercise 3.16:** Write a program to print the size and contents of the `vectors` from exercise 3.13. Check whether your answers to that exercise were correct. If not, restudy § 3.3.1 (p. 75) until you understand why you were wrong.

**Exercise 3.17:** Read a sequence of words from `cin` and store the values a `vector`. After you’ve read all the words, process the `vector` and change each word to uppercase. Print the transformed elements, eight words to a line.

**Exercise 3.18:** Is the following program legal? If not, how might you fix it?

```
vector<int> ivec;
ivec[0] = 42;
```

**Exercise 3.19:** List three ways to define a `vector` and give it ten elements, each with the value 42. Indicate whether there is a preferred way to do so and why.

**Exercise 3.20:** Read a set of integers into a `vector`. Print the sum of each pair of adjacent elements. Change your program so that it prints the sum of the first and last elements, followed by the sum of the second and second-to-last, and so on.

## 3.4 Introducing Iterators

Although we can use subscripts to access the characters of a `string` or the elements in a `vector`, there is a more general mechanism—known as **iterators**—that we can use for the same purpose. As we’ll see in Part II, in addition to `vector`, the library defines several other kinds of containers. All of the library containers have iterators, but only a few of them support the subscript operator. Technically speaking, a `string` is not a container type, but `string` supports many of the container operations. As we’ve seen `string`, like `vector` has a subscript operator. Like `vectors`, `strings` also have iterators.

Like pointers (§ 2.3.2, p. 40), iterators give us indirect access to an object. In the case of an iterator, that object is an element in a container or a character in a `string`. We can use an iterator to fetch an element and iterators have operations to move from one element to another. As with pointers, an iterator may be valid or invalid. A valid iterator either denotes an element or denotes a position one past the last element in a container. All other iterator values are invalid.

### 3.4.1 Using Iterators

Unlike pointers, we do not use the address-of operator to obtain an iterator. Instead, types that have iterators have members that return iterators. In particular, these types have members named `begin` and `end`. The `begin` member returns an iterator that denotes the first element (or first character), if there is one:

```
// the compiler determines the type of b and e
// b denotes the first element and e denotes one past the last element in v
auto b = v.begin(), e = v.end(); // b and e have the same type
```

The iterator returned by `end` is an iterator positioned “one past the end” of the associated container (or `string`). This iterator denotes a nonexistent element “off the end” of the container. It is used as a marker indicating when we have processed all the elements. The iterator returned by `end` is often referred to as the **off-the-end iterator** or abbreviated as “the `end` iterator.” If the container is empty, `begin` returns the same iterator as the one returned by `end`.



If the container is empty, the iterators returned by `begin` and `end` are equal—they are both off-the-end iterators.

In general, we do not know (or care about) the precise type that an iterator has. In this example, we used `auto` to define `b` and `e` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53). As a result, these variables have whatever type is returned by the `begin` and `end` members, respectively. We’ll have more to say about those types on page 83.

### Iterator Operations

Iterators support only a few operations, which are listed in Table 3.6. We can compare two valid iterators using `==` or `!=`. Iterators are equal if they denote the same element or if they are both off-the-end iterators for

the same container. Otherwise, they are unequal.

Table 3.6: Standard Container Iterator Operations

<code>*iter</code>	Returns a reference to the element denoted by the iterator <code>iter</code> .
<code>iter-&gt;mem</code>	Dereferences <code>iter</code> and fetches the member named <code>mem</code> from the underlying element. Equivalent to <code>(*iter).mem</code> .
<code>++iter</code>	Increments <code>iter</code> to refer to the next element in the container.
<code>--iter</code>	Decrements <code>iter</code> to refer to the previous element in the container.
<code>iter1==iter2</code>	Compares two iterators for equality (inequality). Two iterators are equal if they denote the same element or if they are the off-the-end iterator for the same container.
<code>iter1!=iter2</code>	

As with pointers, we can dereference an iterator to obtain the element denoted by an iterator. Also, like pointers, we may dereference only a valid iterator that denotes an element (§ 2.3.2, p. 40). Dereferencing an invalid iterator or an off-the-end iterator has undefined behavior.

As an example, we'll rewrite the program from § 3.2.3 (p. 73) that capitalized the first character of a `string` using an iterator instead of a subscript:

```
string s("some string");
if (s.begin() != s.end()) { // make sure s is not empty
    auto it = s.begin(); // it denotes the first character in s
    *it = toupper(*it); // make that character uppercase
}
```

As in our original program, we first check that `s` isn't empty. In this case, we do so by comparing the iterators returned by `begin` and `end`. Those iterators are equal if the `string` is empty. If they are unequal, there is at least one character in `s`.

Inside the `if` body, we obtain an iterator to the first character by assigning the iterator returned by `begin` to `it`. We dereference that iterator to pass that character to `toupper`. We also dereference `it` on the left-hand side of the assignment in order to assign the character returned from `toupper` to the first character in `s`. As in our original program, the output of this loop will be:

**Some string**

## Moving Iterators from One Element to Another

Iterators use the increment (`++`) operator (§ 1.4.1, p. 8) to move from one element to the next. Incrementing an iterator is a logically similar operation to incrementing an integer. In the case of integers, the effect is to “add 1” to the integer's value. In the case of iterators, the effect is to “advance the iterator by one position.”



Because the iterator returned from `end` does not denote an element, it may not be incremented or dereferenced.

Using the increment operator, we can rewrite our program that changed the case of the first word in a `string` to use iterators instead:

```
// process characters in s until we run out of characters or we hit a whitespace
for (auto it = s.begin(); it != s.end() && !isspace(*it); ++it)
    *it = toupper(*it); // capitalize the current character
```

This loop, like the one in § 3.2.3 (p. 73), iterates through the characters in `s`, stopping when we encounter a whitespace character. However, this loop accesses these characters using an iterator, not a subscript.

The loop starts by initializing `it` from `s.begin`, meaning that `it` denotes the first character (if any) in `s`. The condition checks whether `it` has reached the `end` of `s`. If not, the condition next dereferences `it` to pass the current character to `isspace` to see whether we're done. At the end of each iteration, we execute `++it` to advance the iterator to access the next character in `s`.

The body of this loop, is the same as the last statement in the previous `if`. We dereference `it` to pass the current character to `toupper` and assign the resulting uppercase letter back into the character denoted by `it`.



**Key Concept: Generic Programming**

Programmers coming to C++ from C or Java might be surprised that we used `!=` rather than `<` in our `for` loops such as the one above and in the one on page 73. C++ programmers use `!=` as a matter of habit. They do so for the same reason that they use iterators rather than subscripts: This coding style applies equally well to various kinds of containers provided by the library.

As we've seen, only a few library types, `vector` and `string` being among them, have the subscript operator. Similarly, all of the library containers have iterators that define the `==` and `!=` operators. Most of those iterators do not have the `<` operator. By routinely using iterators and `!=`, we don't have to worry about the precise type of container we're processing.

**Iterator Types**

Just as we do not know the precise type of a `vector`'s or `string`'s `size_type` member (§ 3.2.2, p. 68), so too, we generally do not know—and do not need to know—the precise type of an iterator. Instead, as with `size_type`, the library types that have iterators define types named `iterator` and `const_iterator` that represent actual iterator types:

```
vector<int>::iterator it; // it can read and write vector<int> elements
string::iterator it2; // it2 can read and write characters in a string
vector<int>::const_iterator it3; // it3 can read but not write elements
string::const_iterator it4; // it4 can read but not write characters
```

A `const_iterator` behaves like a pointer to `const` (§ 2.4.2, p. 48). Like a pointer to `const`, a `const_iterator` may read but not write the element it denotes; an object of type `iterator` can both read and write. If a `vector` or `string` is `const`, we may use only its `const_iterator` type. With a nonconst `vector` or `string`, we can use either `iterator` or `const_iterator`.

**Terminology: Iterators and Iterator Types**

The term iterator is used to refer to three different entities. We might mean the concept of an iterator, or we might refer to the `iterator` type defined by a container, or we might refer to an object as an iterator.

What's important to understand is that there is a collection of types that are related conceptually. A type is an iterator if it supports a common set of actions. Those actions let us access an element in a container and let us move from one element to another.

Each container class defines a type named `iterator`; that `iterator` type supports the actions of an (conceptual) iterator.

**The `begin` and `end` Operations**

The type returned by `begin` and `end` depends on whether the object on which they operate is `const`. If the object is `const`, then `begin` and `end` return a `const_iterator`; if the object is not `const`, they return `iterator`:

```
vector<int> v;
const vector<int> cv;
auto it1 = v.begin(); // it1 has type vector<int>::iterator
auto it2 = cv.begin(); // it2 has type vector<int>::const_iterator
```

Often this default behavior is not what we want. For reasons we'll explain in § 6.2.3 (p. 162), it is usually best to use a `const` type (such as `const_iterator`) when we need to read but do not need to write to an object. To let us ask specifically for the `const_iterator` type, the new standard introduced two new functions named `cbegin` and `cend`:

```
auto it3 = v.cbegin(); // it3 has type vector<int>::const_iterator
```

As do the `begin` and `end` members, these members return iterators to the first and one past the last element in the container. However, regardless of whether the `vector` (or `string`) is `const`, they return a `const_iterator`.

**Combining Dereference and Member Access**

When we dereference an iterator, we get the object that the iterator denotes. If that object has a class type, we may want to access a member of that object. For example, we might have a `vector` of `strings` and we might need to know whether a given element is empty. Assuming it is an iterator into this `vector`, we can check whether the `string` that it denotes is empty as follows:

```
(*it).empty()
```

For reasons we'll cover in § 4.1.2 (p. 104), the parentheses in `(*it).empty()` are necessary. The parentheses say to apply the dereference operator to `it` and to apply the dot operator (§ 1.5.2, p. 16) to the result of dereferencing `it`. Without parentheses, the dot operator would apply to `it`, not to the resulting object:

```
(*it).empty() // dereferences it and calls the member empty on the resulting object
*it.empty()   // error: attempts to fetch the member named empty from it
               // but it is an iterator and has no member named empty
```

The second expression is interpreted as a request to fetch the `empty` member from the object named `it`. However, `it` is an iterator and has no member named `empty`. Hence, the second expression is in error.

To simplify expressions such as this one, the language defines the arrow operator (the **-> operator**). The arrow operator combines dereference and member access into a single operation. That is, `it->mem` is a synonym for `(*it).mem`.

For example, assume we have a `vector<string>` named `text` that holds the data from a text file. Each element in the `vector` is either a sentence or an empty `string` representing a paragraph break. If we want to print the contents of the first paragraph from `text`, we'd write a loop that iterates through `text` until we encounter an element that is empty:

```
// print each line in text up to the first blank line
for (auto it = text.cbegin();
     it != text.cend() && !it->empty(); ++it)
    cout << *it << endl;
```

We start by initializing `it` to denote the first element in `text`. The loop continues until either we process every element in `text` or we find an element that is empty. So long as there are elements and we haven't seen an empty element, we print the current element. It is worth noting that because the loop reads but does not write to the elements in `text`, we use `cbegin` and `cend` to control the iteration.

### Some vector Operations Invalidate Iterators

In § 3.3.2 (p. 77) we noted that there are implications of the fact that `vectors` can grow dynamically. We also noted that one such implication is that we cannot add elements to a `vector` inside a range `for` loop. Another implication is that any operation, such as `push_back`, that changes the size of a `vector` potentially invalidates all iterators into that `vector`. We'll explore how iterators become invalid in more detail in § 9.3.6 (p. 265).



For now, it is important to realize that loops that use iterators should not add elements to the container to which the iterators refer.

### Exercises Section 3.4.1

**Exercise 3.21:** Redo the first exercise from § 3.3.3 (p. 78) using iterators.

**Exercise 3.22:** Revise the loop that printed the first paragraph in `text` to instead change the elements in `text` that correspond to the first paragraph to all uppercase. After you've updated `text`, print its contents.

**Exercise 3.23:** Write a program to create a `vector` with ten `int` elements. Using an iterator, assign each element a value that is twice its current value. Test your program by printing the `vector`.

### 3.4.2 Iterator Arithmetic

Incrementing an iterator moves the iterator one element at a time. All the library containers have iterators that support increment. Similarly, we can use `==` and `!=` to compare two valid iterators (§ 3.4, p. 81) into any of the library container types.

Iterators for `string` and `vector` support additional operations that can move an iterator multiple elements at a time. They also support all the relational operators. These operations, which are often referred to as **iterator arithmetic**, are described in Table 3.7.



Table 3.7: Operations Supported by `vector` and `string` Iterators

<code>iter+n</code>	Adding (subtracting) an integral value <code>n</code> to (from) an iterator yields an iterator that many elements forward (backward) within the container.
<code>iter-n</code>	The resulting iterator must denote elements in, or one past the end of, the same container.
<code>iter1+=n</code>	Compound-assignment for iterator addition and subtraction. Assigns to <code>iter1</code> the value of adding <code>n</code> to, or subtracting <code>n</code> from, <code>iter1</code> .
<code>iter1-=n</code>	
<code>iter1-iter2</code>	Subtracting two iterators yields the number that when added to the right-hand iterator yields the left-hand iterator. The iterators must denote elements in, or one past the end of, the same container.
<code>&gt;, &gt;=, &lt;, &lt;=</code>	Relational operators on iterators. One iterator is less than another if it refers to an element that appears in the container before the one referred to by the other iterator. The iterators must denote elements in, or one past the end of, the same container.

### Arithmetic Operations on Iterators

We can add (or subtract) an integral value and an iterator. Doing so returns an iterator positioned forward (or backward) that many elements. When we add or subtract an integral value and an iterator, the result must denote an element in the same `vector` (or `string`) or denote one past the end of the associated `vector` (or `string`). As an example, we can compute an iterator to the element nearest the middle of a `vector`:

```
// compute an iterator to the element closest to the midpoint of vi
auto mid = vi.begin() + vi.size() / 2;
```

If `vi` has 20 elements, then `vi.size()/2` is 10. In this case, we'd set `mid` equal to `vi.begin() + 10`. Remembering that subscripts start at 0, this element is the same as `vi[10]`, the element ten past the first.

In addition to comparing two iterators for equality, we can compare `vector` and `string` iterators using the relational operators (`<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`). The iterators must be valid and must denote elements in (or one past the end of) the same `vector` or `string`. For example, assuming `it` is an iterator into the same `vector` as `mid`, we can check whether `it` denotes an element before or after `mid` as follows:

```
if (it < mid)
// process elements in the first half of vi
```

We can also subtract two iterators so long as they refer to elements in, or one off the end of, the same `vector` or `string`. The result is the distance between the iterators. By distance we mean the amount by which we'd have to change one iterator to get the other. The result type is a signed integral type named `difference_type`. Both `vector` and `string` define `difference_type`. This type is signed, because subtraction might have a negative result.

### Using Iterator Arithmetic

A classic algorithm that uses iterator arithmetic is binary search. A binary search looks for a particular value in a sorted sequence. It operates by looking at the element closest to the middle of the sequence. If that element is the one we want, we're done. Otherwise, if that element is smaller than the one we want, we continue our search by looking only at elements after the rejected one. If the middle element is larger than the one we want, we continue by looking only in the first half. We compute a new middle element in the reduced range and continue looking until we either find the element or run out of elements.

```
// text must be sorted
// beg and end will denote the range we're searching
auto beg = text.begin(), end = text.end();
auto mid = text.begin() + (end - beg)/2; // original midpoint
// while there are still elements to look at and we haven't yet found sought
while (mid != end && *mid != sought) {
    if (sought < *mid) // is the element we want in the first half?
        end = mid; // if so, adjust the range to ignore the second half
    else // the element we want is in the second half
        beg = mid + 1; // start looking with the element just after mid
    mid = beg + (end - beg)/2; // new midpoint
}
```

We start by defining three iterators: `beg` will be the first element in the range, `end` one past the last element, and `mid` the element closest to the middle. We initialize these iterators to denote the entire range in a `vector<string>` named `text`.

Our loop first checks that the range is not empty. If `mid` is equal to the current value of `end`, then we've run out of elements to search. In this case, the condition fails and we exit the `while`. Otherwise, `mid` refers to an element and we check whether `mid` denotes the one we want. If so, we're done and we exit the loop.

If we still have elements to process, the code inside the `while` adjusts the range by moving `end` or `beg`. If the element denoted by `mid` is greater than `sought`, we know that if `sought` is in `text`, it will appear before the element denoted by `mid`. Therefore, we can ignore elements after `mid`, which we do by assigning `mid` to `end`. If `*mid` is smaller than `sought`, the element must be in the range of elements after the one denoted by `mid`. In this case, we adjust the range by making `beg` denote the element just after `mid`. We already know that `mid` is not the one we want, so we can eliminate it from the range.

At the end of the `while`, `mid` will be equal to `end` or it will denote the element for which we are looking. If `mid` equals `end`, then the element was not in `text`.

### Exercises Section 3.4.2

**Exercise 3.24:** Redo the last exercise from § 3.3.3 (p. 78) using iterators.

**Exercise 3.25:** Rewrite the grade clustering program from § 3.3.3 (p. 79) using iterators instead of subscripts.

**Exercise 3.26:** In the binary search program on page 85, why did we write `mid = beg + (end - beg)/2;` instead of `mid = (beg + end)/2;`?

## 3.5 Arrays

An array is a data structure that is similar to the library `vector` type (§ 3.3, p. 74) but offers a different trade-off between performance and flexibility. Like a `vector`, an array is a container of unnamed objects of a single type that we access by position. Unlike a `vector`, arrays have fixed size; we cannot add elements to an array. Because arrays have fixed size, they sometimes offer better run-time performance for specialized applications. However, that run-time advantage comes at the cost of lost flexibility.



If you don't know exactly how many elements you need, use a vector.

### 3.5.1 Defining and Initializing Built-in Arrays

Arrays are a compound type (§ 2.3, p. 38). An array declarator has the form `a[d]`, where `a` is the name being defined and `d` is the dimension of the array. The dimension specifies the number of elements and must be greater than zero. The number of elements in an array is part of the array's type. As a result, the dimension must be known at compile time, which means that the dimension must be a constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51):

```
unsigned cnt = 42; // not a constant expression
constexpr unsigned sz = 42; // constant expression

int arr[10]; // array of ten ints
int *parr[sz]; // array of 42 pointers to int
string bad[cnt]; // error: cnt is not a constant expression
string strs[get_size()]; // ok if get_size is constexpr, error otherwise
```

By default, the elements in an array are default initialized (§ 2.2.1, p. 32).



As with variables of built-in type, a default-initialized array of built-in type that is defined inside a function will have undefined values.

When we define an array, we must specify a type for the array. We cannot use `auto` to deduce the type from a list of initializers. As with `vector`, arrays hold objects. Thus, there are no arrays of references.

## Explicitly Initializing Array Elements

We can list initialize (§ 3.3.1, p. 75) the elements in an array. When we do so, we can omit the dimension. If we omit the dimension, the compiler infers it from the number of initializers. If we specify a dimension, the number of initializers must not exceed the specified size. If the dimension is greater than the number of initializers, the initializers are used for the first elements and any remaining elements are value initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 75):

```
const unsigned sz = 3;
int ia1[sz] = {0,1,2}; // array of three ints with values 0, 1, 2
int a2[] = {0, 1, 2}; // an array of dimension 3
int a3[5] = {0, 1, 2}; // equivalent to a3[] = {0, 1, 2, 0, 0}
string a4[3] = {"hi", "bye"}; // same as a4[] = {"hi", "bye", ""}
int a5[2] = {0,1,2}; // error: too many initializers
```

## Character Arrays Are Special

Character arrays have an additional form of initialization: We can initialize such arrays from a string literal (§ 2.1.3, p. 30). When we use this form of initialization, it is important to remember that string literals end with a null character. That null character is copied into the array along with the characters in the literal:

```
char a1[] = {'C', '+', '+'}; // list initialization, no null
char a2[] = {'C', '+', '+', '\0'}; // list initialization, explicit null
char a3[] = "C++"; // null terminator added automatically
const char a4[6] = "Daniel"; // error: no space for the null!
```

The dimension of `a1` is 3; the dimensions of `a2` and `a3` are both 4. The definition of `a4` is in error. Although the literal contains only six explicit characters, the array size must be at least seven—six to hold the literal and one for the null.

## No Copy or Assignment

We cannot initialize an array as a copy of another array, nor is it legal to assign one array to another:

```
int a[] = {0, 1, 2}; // array of three ints
int a2[] = a; // error: cannot initialize one array with another
a2 = a; // error: cannot assign one array to another
```



Some compilers allow array assignment as a **compiler extension**. It is usually a good idea to avoid using nonstandard features. Programs that use such features, will not work with a different compiler.

## Understanding Complicated Array Declarations

Like **vectors**, arrays can hold objects of most any type. For example, we can have an array of pointers. Because an array is an object, we can define both pointers and references to arrays. Defining arrays that hold pointers is fairly straightforward, defining a pointer or reference to an array is a bit more complicated:

```
int *ptrs[10]; // ptrs is an array of ten pointers to int
int &refs[10] = /* ? */; // error: no arrays of references
int (*Parray)[10] = &arr; // Parray points to an array of ten ints
```

By default, type modifiers bind right to left. Reading the definition of `ptrs` from right to left (§ 2.3.3, p. 44) is easy: We see that we're defining an array of size 10, named `ptrs`, that holds pointers to `int`.

Reading the definition of `Parray` from right to left isn't as helpful. Because the array dimension follows the name being declared, it can be easier to read array declarations from the inside out rather than from right to left. Reading from the inside out makes it much easier to understand the type of `Parray`. We start by observing that the parentheses around `*Parray` mean that `Parray` is a pointer. Looking right, we see that `Parray` points to an array of size 10. Looking left, we see that the elements in that array are `ints`. Thus, `Parray` is a pointer to an array of ten `ints`. Similarly, `(&arrRef)` says that `arrRef` is a reference. The type to which it refers is an array of size 10. That array holds elements of type `int`.

Of course, there are no limits on how many type modifiers can be used:

```
int *(&arry)[10] = ptrs; // arry is a reference to an array of ten pointers
```

Reading this declaration from the inside out, we see that `arry` is a reference. Looking right, we see that the object to which `arry` refers is an array of size 10. Looking left, we see that the element type is pointer to `int`. Thus, `arry` is a reference to an array of ten pointers.



It can be easier to understand array declarations by starting with the array's name and reading them from the inside out.

### Exercises Section 3.5.1

**Exercise 3.27:** Assuming `txt_size` is a function that takes no arguments and returns an `int` value, which of the following definitions are illegal? Explain why.

```
unsigned buf_size = 1024;
```

- (a) `int ia[buf_size];`
- (b) `int ia[4 * 7 - 14];`
- (c) `int ia[txt_size()];`
- (d) `char st[11] = "fundamental";`

**Exercise 3.28:** What are the values in the following arrays?

```
string sa[10];
int ia[10];
int main() {
    string sa2[10];
    int ia2[10];
}
```

**Exercise 3.29:** List some of the drawbacks of using an array instead of a `vector`.

### 3.5.2 Accessing the Elements of an Array

As with the library `vector` and `string` types, we can use a range `for` or the subscript operator to access elements of an array. As usual, the indices start at 0. For an array of ten elements, the indices are 0 through 9, not 1 through 10.

When we use a variable to subscript an array, we normally should define that variable to have type `size_t`. `size_t` is a machine-specific unsigned type that is guaranteed to be large enough to hold the size of any object in memory. The `size_t` type is defined in the `cstdint` header, which is the C++ version of the `stdint.h` header from the C library.

With the exception that arrays are fixed size, we use arrays in ways that are similar to how we use vectors. For example, we can reimplement our grading program from § 3.3.3 (p. 79) to use an array to hold the cluster counters:

```
// count the number of grades by clusters of ten: 0--9, 10--19,...90--99, 100
unsigned scores[11] = {}; // 11 buckets, all value initialized to 0
unsigned grade;
while (cin >> grade) {
    if (grade <= 100)
        ++scores[grade/10]; // increment the counter for the current cluster
}
```

The only obvious difference between this program and the one on page 79 is the declaration of `scores`. In this program `scores` is an array of 11 `unsigned` elements. The not so obvious difference is that the subscript operator in this program is the one that is defined as part of the language. This operator can be used on operands of array type. The subscript operator used in the program on page 79 was defined by the library `vector` template and applies to operands of type `vector`.

As in the case of `string` or `vector`, it is best to use a range `for` when we want to traverse the entire array. For example, we can print the resulting `scores` as follows:

```
for (auto i : scores) // for each counter in scores
    cout << i << " "; // print the value of that counter
cout << endl;
```

Because the dimension is part of each array type, the system knows how many elements are in `scores`. Using a range `for` means that we don't have to manage the traversal ourselves.

### Checking Subscript Values

As with `string` and `vector`, it is up to the programmer to ensure that the subscript value is in range—that is, that the index value is equal to or greater than zero and less than the size of the array. Nothing stops a program from stepping across an array boundary except careful attention to detail and thorough testing of the code. It is possible for programs to compile and execute yet still be fatally wrong.



The most common source of security problems are buffer overflow bugs. Such bugs occur when a program fails to check a subscript and mistakenly uses memory outside the range of an array or similar data structure.

### Exercises Section 3.5.2

**Exercise 3.30:** Identify the indexing errors in the following code:

```
constexpr size_t array_size = 10;
int ia[array_size];
for (size_t ix = 1; ix <= array_size; ++ix)
    ia[ix] = ix;
```

**Exercise 3.31:** Write a program to define an array of ten ints. Give each element the same value as its position in the array.

**Exercise 3.32:** Copy the array you defined in the previous exercise into another array. Rewrite your program to use vectors.

**Exercise 3.33:** What would happen if we did not initialize the `scores` array in the program on page 88?

### 3.5.3 Pointers and Arrays

In C++ pointers and arrays are closely intertwined. In particular, as we'll see, when we use an array, the compiler ordinarily converts the array to a pointer.

Normally, we obtain a pointer to an object by using the address-of operator (§ 2.3.2, p. 40). Generally speaking, the address-of operator may be applied to any object. The elements in an array are objects. When we subscript an array, the result is the object at that location in the array. As with any other object, we can obtain a pointer to an array element by taking the address of that element:

```
string nums[] = {"one", "two", "three"}; // array of strings
string *p = &nums[0]; // p points to the first element in nums
```

However, arrays have a special property—in most places when we use an array, the compiler automatically substitutes a pointer to the first element:

```
string *p2 = nums; // equivalent to p2 = &nums[0]
```



In most expressions, when we use an object of array type, we are really using a pointer to the first element in that array.

There are various implications of the fact that operations on arrays are often really operations on pointers. One such implication is that when we use an array as an initializer for a variable defined using `auto` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53), the deduced type is a pointer, not an array:

```
int ia[] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9}; // ia is an array of ten ints
auto ia2(ia); // ia2 is an int* that points to the first element in ia
ia2 = 42; // error: ia2 is a pointer, and we can't assign an int to a pointer
```

Although `ia` is an array of ten ints, when we use `ia` as an initializer, the compiler treats that initialization as if we had written

```
auto ia2(&ia[0]); // now it's clear that ia2 has type int*
```

It is worth noting that this conversion does not happen when we use `decltype` (§ 2.5.3, p. 54). The type returned by `decltype(ia)` is array of ten ints:

```
// ia3 is an array of ten ints
decltype(ia) ia3 = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
ia3 = p; // error: can't assign an int* to an array
ia3[4] = i; // ok: assigns the value of i to an element in ia3
```

## Pointers Are Iterators

Pointers that address elements in an array have additional operations beyond those we described in § 2.3.2 (p. 40). In particular, pointers to array elements support the same operations as iterators on **vectors** or **strings** (§ 3.4, p. 81). For example, we can use the increment operator to move from one element in an array to the next:

```
int arr[] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
int *p = arr; // p points to the first element in arr
++p; // p points to arr[1]
```

Just as we can use iterators to traverse the elements in a **vector**, we can use pointers to traverse the elements in an array. Of course, to do so, we need to obtain pointers to the first and one past the last element. As we've just seen, we can obtain a pointer to the first element by using the array itself or by taking the address-of the first element. We can obtain an off-the-end pointer by using another special property of arrays. We can take the address of the nonexistent element one past the last element of an array:

```
int *e = &arr[10]; // pointer just past the last element in arr
```

Here we used the subscript operator to index a nonexistent element; `arr` has ten elements, so the last element in `arr` is at index position 9. The only thing we can do with this element is take its address, which we do to initialize `e`. Like an off-the-end iterator (§ 3.4.1, p. 81), an off-the-end pointer does not point to an element. As a result, we may not dereference or increment an off-the-end pointer.

Using these pointers we can write a loop to print the elements in `arr` as follows:

```
for (int *b = arr; b != e; ++b)
    cout << *b << endl; // print the elements in arr
```

## The Library `begin` and `end` Functions

Although we can compute an off-the-end pointer, doing so is error-prone. To make it easier and safer to use pointers, the new library includes two functions, named `begin` and `end`. These functions act like the similarly named container members (§ 3.4.1, p. 81). However, arrays are not class types, so these functions are not member functions. Instead, they take an argument that is an array:

```
int ia[] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9}; // ia is an array of ten ints
int *beg = begin(ia); // pointer to the first element in ia
int *last = end(ia); // pointer one past the last element in ia
```

`begin` returns a pointer to the first, and `end` returns a pointer one past the last element in the given array: These functions are defined in the `iterator` header.

Using `begin` and `end`, it is easy to write a loop to process the elements in an array. For example, assuming `arr` is an array that holds `int` values, we might find the first negative value in `arr` as follows:

```
// pbeg points to the first and pend points just past the last element in arr
int *pbeg = begin(arr), *pend = end(arr);
// find the first negative element, stopping if we've seen all the elements
while (pbeg != pend && *pbeg >= 0)
    ++pbeg;
```

We start by defining two `int` pointers named `pbeg` and `pend`. We position `pbeg` to denote the first element and `pend` to point one past the last element in `arr`. The `while` condition uses `pend` to know whether it is safe to dereference `pbeg`. If `pbeg` does point at an element, we dereference and check whether the underlying element



is negative. If so, the condition fails and we exit the loop. If not, we increment the pointer to look at the next element.



A pointer “one past” the end of a built-in array behaves the same way as the iterator returned by the `end` operation of a `vector`. In particular, we may not dereference or increment an off-the-end pointer.

### Pointer Arithmetic

Pointers that address array elements can use all the iterator operations listed in Table 3.6 (p. 82) and Table 3.7 (p. 85). These operations—dereference, increment, comparisons, addition of an integral value, subtraction of two pointers—have the same meaning when applied to pointers that point at elements in a built-in array as they do when applied to iterators.

When we add (or subtract) an integral value to (or from) a pointer, the result is a new pointer. That new pointer points to the element the given number ahead of (or behind) the original pointer:

```
constexpr size_t sz = 5;
int arr[sz] = {1,2,3,4,5};
int *ip = arr; // equivalent to int *ip = &arr[0]
int *ip2 = ip + 4; // ip2 points to arr[4], the last element in arr
```

The result of adding 4 to `ip` is a pointer that points to the element four elements further on in the array from the one to which `ip` currently points.

The result of adding an integral value to a pointer must be a pointer to an element in the same array, or a pointer just past the end of the array:

```
// ok: arr is converted to a pointer to its first element; p points one past the end of arr
int *p = arr + sz; // use caution -- do not dereference!
int *p2 = arr + 10; // error: arr has only 5 elements; p2 has undefined value
```

When we add `sz` to `arr`, the compiler converts `arr` to a pointer to the first element in `arr`. When we add `sz` to that pointer, we get a pointer that points `sz` positions (i.e., 5 positions) past the first one. That is, it points one past the last element in `arr`. Computing a pointer more than one past the last element is an error, although the compiler is unlikely to detect such errors.

As with iterators, subtracting two pointers gives us the distance between those pointers. The pointers must point to elements in the same array:

```
auto n = end(arr) - begin(arr); // n is 5, the number of elements in arr
```

The result of subtracting two pointers is a library type named `ptrdiff_t`. Like `size_t`, the `ptrdiff_t` type is a machine-specific type and is defined in the `cstdint` header. Because subtraction might yield a negative distance, `ptrdiff_t` is a signed integral type.

We can use the relational operators to compare pointers that point to elements of an array, or one past the last element in that array. For example, we can traverse the elements in `arr` as follows:

```
int *b = arr, *e = arr + sz;
while (b < e) {
    // use *b
    ++b;
}
```

We cannot use the relational operators on pointers to two unrelated objects:

```
int i = 0, sz = 42;
int *p = &i, *e = &sz;
// undefined: p and e are unrelated; comparison is meaningless!
while (p < e)
```

Although the utility may be obscure at this point, it is worth noting that pointer arithmetic is also valid for null pointers (§ 2.3.2, p. 41) and for pointers that point to an object that is not an array. In the latter case, the pointers must point to the same object, or one past that object. If `p` is a null pointer, we can add or subtract an integral constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51) whose value is 0 to `p`. We can also subtract two null pointers from one another, in which case the result is 0.

## Interaction between Dereference and Pointer Arithmetic

The result of adding an integral value to a pointer is itself a pointer. Assuming the resulting pointer points to an element, we can dereference the resulting pointer:

```
int ia[] = {0,2,4,6,8}; // array with 5 elements of type int
int last = *(ia + 4); // ok: initializes last to 8, the value of ia[4]
```

The expression `*(ia + 4)` calculates the address four elements past `ia` and dereferences the resulting pointer. This expression is equivalent to writing `ia[4]`.

Recall that in § 3.4.1 (p. 83) we noted that parentheses are required in expressions that contain dereference and dot operators. Similarly, the parentheses around this pointer addition are essential. Writing

```
last = *ia + 4; // ok: last = 4, equivalent to ia[0] + 4
```

means dereference `ia` and add 4 to the dereferenced value. We'll cover the reasons for this behavior in § 4.1.2 (p. 104).

## Subscripts and Pointers

As we've seen, in most places when we use the name of an array, we are really using a pointer to the first element in that array. One place where the compiler does this transformation is when we subscript an array. Given

```
int ia[] = {0,2,4,6,8}; // array with 5 elements of type int
```

if we write `ia[0]`, that is an expression that uses the name of an array. When we subscript an array, we are really subscripting a pointer to an element in that array:

```
int i = ia[2]; // ia is converted to a pointer to the first element in ia
               // ia[2] fetches the element to which (ia + 2) points
int *p = ia; // p points to the first element in ia
i = *(p + 2); // equivalent to i = ia[2]
```

We can use the subscript operator on any pointer, as long as that pointer points to an element (or one past the last element) in an array:

```
int *p = &ia[2]; // p points to the element indexed by 2
int j = p[1]; // p[1] is equivalent to *(p + 1), p[1] is the same element as ia[3]
int k = p[-2]; // p[-2] is the same element as ia[0]
```

This last example points out an important difference between arrays and library types such as `vector` and `string` that have subscript operators. The library types force the index used with a subscript to be an **unsigned** value. The built-in subscript operator does not. The index used with the built-in subscript operator can be a negative value. Of course, the resulting address must point to an element in (or one past the end of) the array to which the original pointer points.



Unlike subscripts for `vector` and `string`, the index of the built-in subscript operator is not an unsigned type.

## Exercises Section 3.5.3

**Exercise 3.34:** Given that `p1` and `p2` point to elements in the same array, what does the following code do? Are there values of `p1` or `p2` that make this code illegal?

```
p1 += p2 - p1;
```

**Exercise 3.35:** Using pointers, write a program to set the elements in an array to zero.

**Exercise 3.36:** Write a program to compare two arrays for equality. Write a similar program to compare two `vectors`.



### 3.5.4 C-Style Character Strings



Although C++ supports C-style strings, they should not be used by C++ programs. C-style strings are a surprisingly rich source of bugs and are the root cause of many security problems. They're also harder to use!

Character string literals are an instance of a more general construct that C++ inherits from C: **C-style character strings**. C-style strings are not a type. Instead, they are a convention for how to represent and use character strings. Strings that follow this convention are stored in character arrays and are **null terminated**. By null-terminated we mean that the last character in the string is followed by a null character (`'\0'`). Ordinarily we use pointers to manipulate these strings.

#### C Library String Functions

The Standard C library provides a set of functions, listed in Table 3.8, that operate on C-style strings. These functions are defined in the `cstring` header, which is the C++ version of the C header `string.h`.

Table 3.8: C-Style Character String Functions

<code>strlen(p)</code>	Returns the length of <code>p</code> , not counting the null.
<code>strcmp(p1,p2)</code>	Compares <code>p1</code> and <code>p2</code> for equality. Returns 0 if <code>p1==p2</code> , a positive value if <code>p1&gt;p2</code> , a negative value if <code>p1&lt;p2</code> .
<code>strcat(p1,p2)</code>	Appends <code>p2</code> to <code>p1</code> . Returns <code>p1</code> .
<code>strcpy(p1,p2)</code>	Copies <code>p2</code> into <code>p1</code> . Returns <code>p1</code> .



The functions in Table 3.8 do not verify their string parameters.

The pointer(s) passed to these routines must point to null-terminated array(s):

```
char ca[] = {'C', '+', '+'}; // not null terminated
cout << strlen(ca) << endl; // disaster: ca isn't null terminated
```

In this case, `ca` is an array of `char` but is not null terminated. The result is undefined. The most likely effect of this call is that `strlen` will keep looking through the memory that follows `ca` until it encounters a null character.

#### Comparing Strings

Comparing two C-style strings is done quite differently from how we compare library `strings`. When we compare two library `strings`, we use the normal relational or equality operators:

```
string s1 = "A string example";
string s2 = "A different string";
if (s1 < s2) // false: s2 is less than s1
```

Using these operators on similarly defined C-style strings compares the pointer values, not the strings themselves:

```
const char ca1[] = "A string example";
const char ca2[] = "A different string";
if (ca1 < ca2) // undefined: compares two unrelated addresses
```

Remember that when we use an array, we are really using a pointer to the first element in the array (§ 3.5.3, p. 89). Hence, this condition actually compares two `const char*` values. Those pointers do not address the same object, so the comparison is undefined.

To compare the strings, rather than the pointer values, we can call `strcmp`. That function returns 0 if the strings are equal, or a positive or negative value, depending on whether the first string is larger or smaller than the second:

```
if (strcmp(ca1, ca2) < 0) // same effect as string comparison s1 < s2
```

### Caller Is Responsible for Size of a Destination String

Concatenating or copying C-style strings is also very different from the same operations on library `strings`. For example, if we wanted to concatenate the two `strings` `s1` and `s2` defined above, we can do so directly:

```
// initialize largeStr as a concatenation of s1, a space, and s2
string largeStr = s1 + " " + s2;
```

Doing the same with our two arrays, `ca1` and `ca2`, would be an error. The expression `ca1 + ca2` tries to add two pointers, which is illegal and meaningless.

Instead we can use `strcat` and `strcpy`. However, to use these functions, we must pass an array to hold the resulting string. The array we pass must be large enough to hold the generated string, including the null character at the end. The code we show here, although a common usage pattern, is fraught with potential for serious error:

```
// disastrous if we miscalculated the size of largeStr
strcpy(largeStr, ca1); // copies ca1 into largeStr
strcat(largeStr, " "); // adds a space at the end of largeStr
strcat(largeStr, ca2); // concatenates ca2 onto largeStr
```

The problem is that we can easily miscalculate the size needed for `largeStr`. Moreover, any time we change the values we want to store in `largeStr`, we have to remember to double-check that we calculated its size correctly. Unfortunately, programs similar to this code are widely distributed. Programs with such code are error-prone and often lead to serious security leaks.



For most applications, in addition to being safer, it is also more efficient to use library `strings` rather than C-style strings

### Exercises Section 3.5.4

**Exercise 3.37:** What does the following program do?

```
const char ca[] = {'h', 'e', 'l', 'l', 'o'};
const char *cp = ca;
while (*cp) {
    cout << *cp << endl;
    ++cp;
}
```

**Exercise 3.38:** In this section, we noted that it was not only illegal but meaningless to try to add two pointers. Why would adding two pointers be meaningless?

**Exercise 3.39:** Write a program to compare two `strings`. Now write a program to compare the values of two C-style character strings.

**Exercise 3.40:** Write a program to define two character arrays initialized from string literals. Now define a third character array to hold the concatenation of the two arrays. Use `strcpy` and `strcat` to copy the two arrays into the third.

### 3.5.5 Interfacing to Older Code

Many C++ programs predate the standard library and do not use the `string` and `vector` types. Moreover, many C++ programs interface to programs written in C or other languages that cannot use the C++ library. Hence, programs written in modern C++ may have to interface to code that uses arrays and/or C-style character strings. The C++ library offers facilities to make the interface easier to manage.

#### Mixing Library `strings` and C-Style Strings

In § 3.2.1 (p. 66) we saw that we can initialize a `string` from a string literal:

```
string s("Hello World"); // s holds Hello World
```

More generally, we can use a null-terminated character array anywhere that we can use a string literal:

- We can use a null-terminated character array to initialize or assign a `string`.

- We can use a null-terminated character array as one operand (but not both operands) to the `string` addition operator or as the right-hand operand in the `string` compound assignment (`+=`) operator.

The reverse functionality is not provided: There is no direct way to use a library `string` when a C-style string is required. For example, there is no way to initialize a character pointer from a `string`. There is, however, a `string` member function named `c_str` that we can often use to accomplish what we want:

```
char *str = s; // error: can't initialize a char* from a string
const char *str = s.c_str(); // ok
```

The name `c_str` indicates that the function returns a C-style character string. That is, it returns a pointer to the beginning of a null-terminated character array that holds the same data as the characters in the `string`. The type of the pointer is `const char*`, which prevents us from changing the contents of the array.

The array returned by `c_str` is not guaranteed to be valid indefinitely. Any subsequent use of `s` that might change the value of `s` can invalidate this array.



If a program needs continuing access to the contents of the array returned by `c_str`, the program must copy the array returned by `c_str`.

### Using an Array to Initialize a vector

In § 3.5.1 (p. 87) we noted that we cannot initialize a built-in array from another array. Nor can we initialize an array from a `vector`. However, we can use an array to initialize a `vector`. To do so, we specify the address of the first element and one past the last element that we wish to copy:

```
int int_arr[] = {0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5};
// ivec has six elements; each is a copy of the corresponding element in int_arr
vector<int> ivec(begin(int_arr), end(int_arr));
```

The two pointers used to construct `ivec` mark the range of values to use to initialize the elements in `ivec`. The second pointer points one past the last element to be copied. In this case, we used the library `begin` and `end` functions (§ 3.5.3, p. 90) to pass pointers to the first and one past the last elements in `int_arr`. As a result, `ivec` will have six elements each of which will have the same value as the corresponding element in `int_arr`.

The specified range can be a subset of the array:

```
// copies three elements: int_arr[1], int_arr[2], int_arr[3]
vector<int> subVec(int_arr + 1, int_arr + 4);
```

This initialization creates `subVec` with three elements. The values of these elements are copies of the values in `int_arr[1]` through `int_arr[3]`.

#### Advice: Use Library Types Instead of Arrays

Pointers and arrays are surprisingly error-prone. Part of the problem is conceptual: Pointers are used for low-level manipulations and it is easy to make bookkeeping mistakes. Other problems arise because of the syntax, particularly the declaration syntax used with pointers.

Modern C++ programs should use `vectors` and iterators instead of built-in arrays and pointers, and use `strings` rather than C-style array-based character strings.

### Exercises Section 3.5.5

**Exercise 3.41:** Write a program to initialize a `vector` from an array of `ints`.

**Exercise 3.42:** Write a program to copy a `vector` of `ints` into an array of `ints`.

## 3.6 Multidimensional Arrays

Strictly speaking, there are no multidimensional arrays in C++. What are commonly referred to as multidimensional arrays are actually arrays of arrays. It can be helpful to keep this fact in mind when you use what appears to be a multidimensional array.

We define an array whose elements are arrays by providing two dimensions: the dimension of the array itself and the dimension of its elements:

```
int ia[3][4]; // array of size 3; each element is an array of ints of size 4
// array of size 10; each element is a 20-element array whose elements are arrays of 30 ints
int arr[10][20][30] = {0}; // initialize all elements to 0
```

As we saw in § 3.5.1 (p. 87), we can more easily understand these definitions by reading them from the inside out. We start with the name we're defining (`ia`) and see that `ia` is an array of size 3. Continuing to look to the right, we see that the elements of `ia` also have a dimension. Thus, the elements in `ia` are themselves arrays of size 4. Looking left, we see that the type of those elements is `int`. So, `ia` is an array of size 3, each of whose elements is an array of four `ints`.

We read the definition for `arr` in the same way. First we see that `arr` is an array of size 10. The elements of that array are themselves arrays of size 20. Each of those arrays has 30 elements that are of type `int`. There is no limit on how many subscripts are used. That is, we can have an array whose elements are arrays of elements that are arrays, and so on.

In a two-dimensional array, the first dimension is usually referred to as the row and the second as the column.

### Initializing the Elements of a Multidimensional Array

As with any array, we can initialize the elements of a multidimensional array by providing a bracketed list of initializers. Multidimensional arrays may be initialized by specifying bracketed values for each row:

```
int ia[3][4] = { // three elements; each element is an array of size 4
    {0, 1, 2, 3}, // initializers for the row indexed by 0
    {4, 5, 6, 7}, // initializers for the row indexed by 1
    {8, 9, 10, 11} // initializers for the row indexed by 2
};
```

The nested braces are optional. The following initialization is equivalent, although considerably less clear:

```
// equivalent initialization without the optional nested braces for each row
int ia[3][4] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11};
```

As is the case for single-dimension arrays, elements may be left out of the initializer list. We can initialize only the first element of each row as follows:

```
// explicitly initialize only element 0 in each row
int ia[3][4] = {{ 0 }, { 4 }, { 8 }};
```

The remaining elements are value initialized in the same way as ordinary, singledimension arrays (§ 3.5.1, p. 87). If the nested braces were omitted, the results would be very different. This code

```
// explicitly initialize row 0; the remaining elements are value initialized
int ix[3][4] = {0, 3, 6, 9};
```

initializes the elements of the first row. The remaining elements are initialized to 0.

### Subscripting a Multidimensional Array

As with any array, we can use a subscript to access the elements of a multidimensional array. To do so, we use a separate subscript for each dimension.

If an expression provides as many subscripts as there are dimensions, we get an element with the specified type. If we supply fewer subscripts than there are dimensions, then the result is the inner-array element at the specified index:

```
// assigns the first element of arr to the last element in the last row of ia
ia[2][3] = arr[0][0][0];
int (&row)[4] = ia[1]; // binds row to the second four-element array in ia
```

In the first example we supply indices for all the dimensions for both arrays. On the left-hand side, `ia[2]` returns the last row in `ia`. It does not fetch an element from that array but returns the array itself. We subscript that array, fetching element `[3]`, which is the last element in that array.

Similarly, the right-hand operand has three dimensions. We first fetch the array at index 0 from the outermost array. The result of that operation is a (multidimensional) array of size 20. We take the first element from that 20-element array, yielding an array of size 30. We then fetch the first element from that array.

In the second example, we define `row` as a reference to an array of four `ints`. We bind that reference to the second row in `ia`.

As another example, it is common to use a pair of nested `for` loops to process the elements in a multidimensional array:

```
constexpr size_t rowCnt = 3, colCnt = 4;
int ia[rowCnt][colCnt]; // 12 uninitialized elements
// for each row
for (size_t i = 0; i != rowCnt; ++i) {
    // for each column within the row
    for (size_t j = 0; j != colCnt; ++j) {
        // assign the element's positional index as its value
        ia[i][j] = i * colCnt + j;
    }
}
```

The outer `for` loops through each of the array elements in `ia`. The inner `for` loops through the elements of those interior arrays. In this case, we set the value of each element as its index in the overall array.

### Using a Range `for` with Multidimensional Arrays

Under the new standard we can simplify the previous loop by using a range `for`:

```
size_t cnt = 0;
for (auto &row : ia) // for every element in the outer array
    for (auto &col : row) { // for every element in the inner array
        col = cnt; // give this element the next value
        ++cnt; // increment cnt
    }
```

This loop gives the elements of `ia` the same values as the previous loop, but this time we let the system manage the indices for us. We want to change the value of the elements, so we declare our control variables, `row` and `col`, as references (§ 3.2.3, p. 72). The first `for` iterates through the elements in `ia`. Those elements are arrays of size 4. Thus, the type of `row` is a reference to an array of four `ints`. The second `for` iterates through one of those 4-element arrays. Hence, `col` is `int&`. On each iteration we assign the value of `cnt` to the next element in `ia` and increment `cnt`.

In the previous example, we used references as our loop control variables because we wanted to change the elements in the array. However, there is a deeper reason for using references. As an example, consider the following loop:

```
for (const auto &row : ia) // for every element in the outer array
    for (auto col : row) // for every element in the inner array
        cout << col << endl;
```

This loop does not write to the elements, yet we still define the control variable of the outer loop as a reference. We do so in order to avoid the normal array to pointer conversion (§ 3.5.3, p. 89). Had we neglected the reference and written these loops as:

```
for (auto row : ia)
    for (auto col : row)
```

our program would not compile. As before, the first `for` iterates through `ia`, whose elements are arrays of size 4. Because `row` is not a reference, when the compiler initializes `row` it will convert each array element (like any other object of array type) to a pointer to that array's first element. As a result, in this loop the type of `row` is `int*`. The inner `for` loop is illegal. Despite our intentions, that loop attempts to iterate over an `int*`.



To use a multidimensional array in a range `for`, the loop control variable for all but the innermost array must be references.

### Pointers and Multidimensional Arrays

As with any array, when we use the name of a multidimensional array, it is automatically converted to a pointer to the first element in the array.



When you define a pointer to a multidimensional array, remember that a multidimensional array is really an array of arrays.

Because a multidimensional array is really an array of arrays, the pointer type to which the array converts is a pointer to the first inner array:

```
int ia[3][4]; // array of size 3; each element is an array of ints of size 4
int (*p)[4] = ia; // p points to an array of four ints
p = &ia[2]; // p now points to the last element in ia
```

Applying the strategy from § 3.5.1 (p. 87), we start by noting that `(*p)` says `p` is a pointer. Looking right, we see that the object to which `p` points has a dimension of size 4, and looking left that the element type is `int`. Hence, `p` is a pointer to an array of four ints.



The parentheses in this declaration are essential:

```
int *ip[4]; // array of pointers to int
int (*ip)[4]; // pointer to an array of four ints
```

With the advent of the new standard, we can often avoid having to write the type of a pointer into an array by using `auto` or `decltype` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53):

```
// print the value of each element in ia, with each inner array on its own line
// p points to an array of four ints
for (auto p = ia; p != ia + 3; ++p) {
    // q points to the first element of an array of four ints; that is, q points to an int
    for (auto q = *p; q != *p + 4; ++q)
        cout << *q << ' ';
    cout << endl;
}
```

The outer `for` loop starts by initializing `p` to point to the first array in `ia`. That loop continues until we've processed all three rows in `ia`. The increment, `++p`, has the effect of moving `p` to point to the next row (i.e., the next element) in `ia`.

The inner `for` loop prints the values of the inner arrays. It starts by making `q` point to the first element in the array to which `p` points. The result of `*p` is an array of four ints. As usual, when we use an array, it is converted automatically to a pointer to its first element. The inner `for` loop runs until we've processed every element in the inner array. To obtain a pointer just off the end of the inner array, we again dereference `p` to get a pointer to the first element in that array. We then add 4 to that pointer to process the four elements in each inner array.

Of course, we can even more easily write this loop using the library `begin` and `end` functions (§ 3.5.3, p. 90):

```
// p points to the first array in ia
for (auto p = begin(ia); p != end(ia); ++p) {
    // q points to the first element in an inner array
    for (auto q = begin(*p); q != end(*p); ++q)
        cout << *q << ' '; // prints the int value to which q points
    cout << endl;
}
```

Here we let the library determine the end pointer, and we use `auto` to avoid having to write the type returned from `begin`. In the outer loop, that type is a pointer to an array of four ints. In the inner loop, that type is a pointer to `int`.

### Type Aliases Simplify Pointers to Multidimensional Arrays

A type alias (§ 2.5.1, p. 53) can make it easier to read, write, and understand pointers to multidimensional arrays. For example:

```
using int_array = int[4]; // new style type alias declaration
typedef int int_array[4]; // equivalent typedef declaration
// print the value of each element in ia, with each inner array on its own line
for (int_array *p = ia; p != ia + 3; ++p) {
    for (int *q = *p; q != *p + 4; ++q)
        cout << *q << ' ';
    cout << endl;
}
```

Here we start by defining `int_array` as a name for the type “array of four ints.” We use that type name to define our loop control variable in the outer `for` loop.

### Exercises Section 3.6.0

**Exercise 3.43:** Write three different versions of a program to print the elements of `ia`. One version should use a range `for` to manage the iteration, the other two should use an ordinary `for` loop in one case using subscripts and in the other using pointers. In all three programs write all the types directly. That is, do not use a type alias, `auto`, or `decltype` to simplify the code.

**Exercise 3.44:** Rewrite the programs from the previous exercises using a type alias for the type of the loop control variables.

**Exercise 3.45:** Rewrite the programs again, this time using `auto`.



## Chapter Summary

Among the most important library types are **vector** and **string**. A **string** is a variable-length sequence of characters, and a **vector** is a container of objects of a single type.

Iterators allow indirect access to objects stored in a container. Iterators are used to access and navigate between the elements in **strings** and **vectors**.

Arrays and pointers to array elements provide low-level analogs to the **vector** and **string** libraries. In general, the library classes should be used in preference to lowlevel array and pointer alternatives built into the language.

## Defined Terms

**begin** Member of **string** and **vector** that returns an iterator to the first element. Also, free-standing library function that takes an array and returns a pointer to the first element in the array.

**buffer overflow** Serious programming bug that results when we use an index that is out-of-range for a container, such as a **string**, **vector**, or an array.

**C-style strings** Null-terminated character array. String literals are C-style strings. C-style strings are inherently error-prone.

**class template** blueprint from which specific class types can be created. To use a class template, we must specify additional information. For example, to define a **vector**, we specify the element type: **vector<int>** holds **ints**.

**compiler extension** Feature that is added to the language by a particular compiler. Programs that rely on compiler extensions cannot be moved easily to other compilers.

**container** A type whose objects hold a collection of objects of a given type. **vector** is a container type.

**copy initialization** Form of initialization that uses an **=**. The newly created object is a copy of the given initializer.

**difference\_type** A **signed** integral type defined by **vector** and **string** that can hold the distance between any two iterators.

**direct initialization** Form of initialization that does not include an **=**.

**empty** Member of **string** and **vector**. Returns **bool**, which is **true** if **size** is zero, **false** otherwise.

**end** Member of **string** and **vector** that returns an off-the-end iterator. Also, freestanding library function that takes an array and returns a pointer one past the last element in the array.

**getline** Function defined in the **string** header that takes an **istream** and a **string**. The function reads the stream up to the next newline, storing what it read into the **string**, and returns the **istream**. The newline is read and discarded.

**index** Value used in the subscript operator to denote the element to retrieve from a **string**, **vector**, or array.

**instantiation** Compiler process that generates a specific template class or function.

**iterator** A type used to access and navigate among the elements of a container.

**iterator arithmetic** Operations on **vector** or **string** iterators: Adding or subtracting an integral value and an iterator yields an iterator that many elements ahead of or behind the original iterator. Subtracting one iterator from another yields the distance between them. Iterators must refer to elements in, or off-the-end of the same container.

**null-terminated string** String whose last character is followed by the null character (**'\0'**).

**off-the-end iterator** The iterator returned by **end** that refers to a nonexistent element one past the end of a container.

**pointer arithmetic** The arithmetic operations that can be applied to pointers. Pointers to arrays support the same operations as iterator arithmetic.

**ptrdiff\_t** Machine-dependent signed integral type defined in the **cstdint** header that is large enough to hold the difference between two pointers into the largest possible array.

**push\_back** Member of **vector**. Appends elements to the back of a **vector**.

**range for** Control statement that iterates through a specified collection of values.

**size** Member of **string** and **vector**. Returns the number of characters or elements, respectively. Returns a value of the **size\_type** for the type.

**size\_t** Machine-dependent unsigned integral type defined in the **cstdint** header that is large enough to hold the size of the largest possible array.

**size\_type** Name of types defined by the **string** and **vector** classes that are capable of containing the size of any **string** or **vector**, respectively. Library classes that define **size\_type** define it as an **unsigned** type.



**string** Library type that represents a sequence of characters.

**using declarations** Make a name from a namespace accessible directly.

`using namespace::name;`

makes name accessible without the `namespace:: prefix`.

**value initialization** Initialization in which built-in types are initialized to zero and class types are initialized by the class's default constructor. Objects of a class type can be value initialized only if the class has a default constructor. Used to initialize a container's elements when a size, but not an element initializer, is specified. Elements are initialized as a copy of this compiler-generated value.

**vector** Library type that holds a collection of elements of a specified type.

**++ operator** The iterator types and pointers define the increment operator to “add one” by moving the iterator to refer to the next element.

**[ ] operator** Subscript operator. `obj[i]` yields the element at position `i` from the container object `obj`. Indices count from zero—the first element is element 0 and the last is the element indexed by

`obj.size() - 1`. Subscript returns a reference to the object. If `p` is a pointer and `n` an integer, `p[n]` is a synonym for `*(p+n)`.

**-> operator** Arrow operator. Combines the operations of dereference and dot operators: `a->b` is a synonym for `(*a).b`.

**<< operator** The string library type defines an output operator. The **string** operator prints the characters in a **string**.

**>> operator** The **string** library type defines an input operator. The **string** operator reads whitespace-delimited chunks of characters, storing what is read into the right-hand (**string**) operand.

**! operator** Logical NOT operator. Returns the inverse of the **bool** value of its operand. Result is **true** if operand is **false** and vice versa.

**&& operator** Logical AND operator. Result is **true** if both operands are **true**. The right-hand operand is evaluated only if the left-hand operand is **true**.

**|| operator** Logical OR operator. Yields **true** if either operand is **true**. The righthand operand is evaluated only if the left-hand operand is **false**.

# Chapter 4

## Expressions

### Contents

---

4.1 Fundamentals .....	103
4.2 Arithmetic Operators .....	106
4.3 Logical and Relational Operators .....	108
4.4 Assignment Operators .....	110
4.5 Increment and Decrement Operators .....	112
4.6 The Member Access Operators .....	114
4.7 The Conditional Operator .....	115
4.8 The Bitwise Operators .....	116
4.9 The sizeof Operator .....	119
4.10 Comma Operator .....	120
4.11 Type Conversions .....	121
4.12 Operator Precedence Table .....	126
Chapter Summary .....	128
Defined Terms .....	128

---

C++ provides a rich set of operators and defines what these operators do when applied to operands of built-in type. It also allows us to define the meaning of most of the operators when applied to operands of class types. This chapter focuses on the operators as defined in the language and applied to operands of built-in type. We will also look at some of the operators defined by the library. Chapter 14 will show how we can define operators for our own types.

An **expression** is composed of one or more **operands** and yields a **result** when it is evaluated. The simplest form of an expression is a single literal or variable. The result of such an expression is the value of the variable or literal. More complicated expressions are formed from an **operator** and one or more operands.

## 4.1 Fundamentals

There are a few fundamental concepts that affect how expressions are evaluated. We start by briefly discussing the concepts that apply to most (if not all) expressions. Subsequent sections will cover these topics in more detail.

### 4.1.1 Basic Concepts

There are both *unary operators* and *binary operators*. Unary operators, such as address-of (&) and dereference (\*), act on one operand. Binary operators, such as equality (==) and multiplication (\*), act on two operands. There is also one ternary operator that takes three operands, and one operator, function call, that takes an unlimited number of operands.

Some symbols, such as \*, are used as both a unary (dereference) and a binary (multiplication) operator. The context in which a symbol is used determines whether the symbol represents a unary or binary operator. The uses of such symbols are independent; it can be helpful to think of them as two different symbols.

### Grouping Operators and Operands

Understanding expressions with multiple operators requires understanding the *precedence* and *associativity* of the operators and may depend on the *order of evaluation* of the operands. For example, the result of the following expression depends on how the operands are grouped to the operators:

```
5 + 10 * 20/2;
```

The operands to the \* operator could be 10 and 20, or 10 and 20/2, or 15 and 20, or 15 and 20/2. Understanding such expressions is the topic of the next section.

### Operand Conversions

As part of evaluating an expression, operands are often converted from one type to another. For example, the binary operators usually expect operands with the same type. These operators can be used on operands with differing types so long as the operands can be converted (§ 2.1.2, p. 27) to a common type.

Although the rules are somewhat complicated, for the most part conversions happen in unsurprising ways. For example, we can convert an integer to floating-point, and vice versa, but we cannot convert a pointer type to floating-point. What may be a bit surprising is that small integral type operands (e.g., `bool`, `char`, `short`, etc.) are generally **promoted** to a larger integral type, typically `int`. We'll look in detail at conversions in § 4.11 (p. 121).

### Overloaded Operators

The language defines what the operators mean when applied to built-in and compound types. We can also define what most operators mean when applied to class types. Because such definitions give an alternative meaning to an existing operator symbol, we refer to them as **overloaded operators**. The IO library `>>` and `<<` operators and the operators we used with `strings`, `vectors`, and iterators are all overloaded operators.

When we use an overloaded operator, the meaning of the operator—including the type of its operand(s) and the result—depend on how the operator is defined. However, the number of operands and the precedence and the associativity of the operator cannot be changed.

### Lvalues and Rvalues

Every expression in C++ is either an **rvalue** (pronounced “are-value”) or an **lvalue** (pronounced “ell-value”). These names are inherited from C and originally had a simple mnemonic purpose: lvalues could stand on the left-hand side of an assignment whereas rvalues could not.

In C++, the distinction is less simple. In C++, an lvalue expression yields an object or a function. However, some lvalues, such as `const` objects, may not be the lefthand operand of an assignment. Moreover, some expressions yield objects but return them as rvalues, not lvalues. Roughly speaking, when we use an object as

an rvalue, we use the object's value (its contents). When we use an object as an lvalue, we use the object's identity (its location in memory).

Operators differ as to whether they require lvalue or rvalue operands and as to whether they return lvalues or rvalues. The important point is that (with one exception that we'll cover in § 13.6 (p. 283)) we can use an lvalue when an rvalue is required, but we cannot use an rvalue when an lvalue (i.e., a location) is required. When we use an lvalue in place of an rvalue, the object's contents (its value) are used. We have already used several operators that involve lvalues.

- Assignment requires a (`nonconst`) lvalue as its left-hand operand and yields its left-hand operand as an lvalue.
- The address-of operator (§ 2.3.2, p. 40) requires an lvalue operand and returns a pointer to its operand as an rvalue.
- The built-in dereference and subscript operators (§ 2.3.2, p. 41, and § 3.5.2, p. 88) and the iterator dereference and `string` and `vector` subscript operators (§ 3.4.1, p. 81, § 3.2.3, p. 72, and § 3.3.3, p. 78) all yield lvalues.
- The built-in and iterator increment and decrement operators (§ 1.4.1, p. 8, and § 3.4.1, p. 81) require lvalue operands and the prefix versions (which are the ones we have used so far) also yield lvalues.

As we present the operators, we will note whether an operand must be an lvalue and whether the operator returns an lvalue.

Lvalues and rvalues also differ when used with `decltype` (§ 2.5.3, p. 55). When we apply `decltype` to an expression (other than a variable), the result is a reference type if the expression yields an lvalue. As an example, assume `p` is an `int*`. Because dereference yields an lvalue, `decltype(*p)` is `int&`. On the other hand, because the address-of operator yields an rvalue, `decltype(&p)` is `int**`, that is, a pointer to a pointer to type `int`.

### 4.1.2 Precedence and Associativity

An expression with two or more operators is a **compound expression**. Evaluating a compound expression involves grouping the operands to the operators. Precedence and associativity determine how the operands are grouped. That is, they determine which parts of the expression are the operands for each of the operators in the expression. Programmers can override these rules by parenthesizing compound expressions to force a particular grouping.

In general, the value of an expression depends on how the subexpressions are grouped. Operands of operators with higher precedence group more tightly than operands of operators at lower precedence. Associativity determines how to group operands with the same precedence. For example, multiplication and division have the same precedence as each other, but they have higher precedence than addition. Therefore, operands to multiplication and division group before operands to addition and subtraction. The arithmetic operators are left associative, which means operators at the same precedence group left to right:

- Because of precedence, the expression `3+4*5` is 23, not 35.
- Because of associativity, the expression `20-15-3` is 2, not 8.

As a more complicated example, a left-to-right evaluation of the following expression yields 20:

```
6 + 3 * 4 / 2 + 2
```

Other imaginable results include 9, 14, and 36. In C++, the result is 14, because this expression is equivalent to

```
// parentheses in this expression match default precedence and associativity
((6 + ((3 * 4) / 2)) + 2)
```

### Parentheses Override Precedence and Associativity

We can override the normal grouping with parentheses. Parenthesized expressions are evaluated by treating each parenthesized subexpression as a unit and otherwise applying the normal precedence rules. For example, we can parenthesize the expression above to force the result to be any of the four possible values:

```
// parentheses result in alternative groupings
cout << (6 + 3) * (4 / 2 + 2) << endl; // prints 36
cout << ((6 + 3) * 4) / 2 + 2 << endl; // prints 20
cout << 6 + 3 * 4 / (2 + 2) << endl; // prints 9
```

## When Precedence and Associativity Matter

We have already seen examples where precedence affects the correctness of our programs. For example, consider the discussion in § 3.5.3 (p. 92) about dereference and pointer arithmetic:

```
int ia[] = {0,2,4,6,8}; // array with five elements of type int
int last = *(ia + 4); // initializes last to 8, the value of ia [4]
last = *ia + 4; // last = 4, equivalent to ia [0] + 4
```

If we want to access the element at the location `ia+4`, then the parentheses around the addition are essential. Without parentheses, `*ia` is grouped first and 4 is added to the value in `*ia`.

The most common case that we've seen in which associativity matters is in input and output expressions. As we'll see in § 4.8 (p. 118), the operators used for IO are left associative. This associativity means we can combine several IO operations in a single expression:

```
cin >> v1 >> v2; // read into v1 and then into v2
```

Table 4.4 (p. 126) lists all the operators organized into segments separated by double lines. Operators in each segment have the same precedence, and have higher precedence than operators in subsequent segments. For example, the prefix increment and dereference operators share the same precedence, which is higher than that of the arithmetic operators. The table includes a page reference to each operator's description. We have seen some of these operators already and will cover most of the rest in this chapter. However, there are a few operators that we will not cover until later.

### Exercises Section 4.1.2

**Exercise 4.1:** What is the value returned by `5 + 10 * 20/2`?

**Exercise 4.2:** Using Table 4.4 (p. 126), parenthesize the following expressions to indicate the order in which the operands are grouped:

- (a) `* vec.begin()`
- (b) `* vec.begin() + 1`

### 4.1.3 Order of Evaluation

Precedence specifies how the operands are grouped. It says nothing about the order in which the operands are evaluated. In most cases, the order is largely unspecified. In the following expression

```
int i = f1() * f2();
```

we know that `f1` and `f2` must be called before the multiplication can be done. After all, it is their results that are multiplied. However, we have no way of knowing whether `f1` will be called before `f2` or vice versa.

For operators that do not specify evaluation order, it is an error for an expression to *refer to and change* the same object. Expressions that do so have undefined behavior (§ 2.1.2, p. 28). As a simple example, the `<<` operator makes no guarantees about when or how its operands are evaluated. As a result, the following output expression is undefined:

```
int i = 0;
cout << i << " " << ++i << endl; // undefined
```

Because this program is undefined, we cannot draw any conclusions about how it might behave. The compiler might evaluate `++i` before evaluating `i`, in which case the output will be `1 1`. Or the compiler might evaluate `i` first, in which case the output will be `0 1`. Or the compiler might do something else entirely. Because this expression has undefined behavior, the program is in error, regardless of what code the compiler generates.

There are four operators that do guarantee the order in which operands are evaluated. We saw in § 3.2.3 (p. 73) that the logical AND (`&&`) operator guarantees that its left-hand operand is evaluated first. Moreover, we are also guaranteed that the right-hand operand is evaluated only if the left-hand operand is true. The only other operators that guarantee the order in which operands are evaluated are the logical OR (`||`) operator (§ 4.3, p. 108), the conditional (`? :`) operator (§ 4.7, p. 115), and the comma (`,`) operator (§ 4.10, p. 120).

### Order of Evaluation, Precedence, and Associativity

Order of operand evaluation is independent of precedence and associativity. In an expression such as `f() + g() * h() + j()`:

- Precedence guarantees that the results of `g()` and `h()` are multiplied.
- Associativity guarantees that the result of `f()` is added to the product of `g()` and `h()` and that the result of that addition is added to the value of `j()`.
- There are no guarantees as to the order in which these functions are called.

If `f`, `g`, `h`, and `j` are independent functions that do not affect the state of the same objects or perform IO, then the order in which the functions are called is irrelevant. If any of these functions do affect the same object, then the expression is in error and has undefined behavior.

#### Advice: Managing Compound Expressions

When you write compound expressions, two rules of thumb can be helpful:

1. When in doubt, parenthesize expressions to force the grouping that the logic of your program requires.
2. If you change the value of an operand, don't use that operand elsewhere in the same expression.

An important exception to the second rule occurs when the subexpression that changes the operand is itself the operand of another subexpression. For example, in `++iter`, the increment changes the value of `iter`. The (now changed) value of `iter` is the operand to the dereference operator. In this (and similar) expressions, order of evaluation isn't an issue. The increment (i.e., the subexpression that changes the operand) must be evaluated before the dereference can be evaluated. Such usage poses no problems and is quite common.

#### Exercises Section 4.1.3

**Exercise 4.3:** Order of evaluation for most of the binary operators is left undefined to give the compiler opportunities for optimization. This strategy presents a trade-off between efficient code generation and potential pitfalls in the use of the language by the programmer. Do you consider that an acceptable trade-off? Why or why not?

## 4.2 Arithmetic Operators

Table 4.1 (and the operator tables in subsequent sections) groups the operators by their precedence. The unary arithmetic operators have higher precedence than the multiplication and division operators, which in turn have higher precedence than the binary addition and subtraction operators. Operators of higher precedence group more tightly than do operators with lower precedence. These operators are all left associative, meaning that they group left to right when the precedence levels are the same.

Table 4.1: Arithmetic Operators (Left Associative)

Operator	Function	Use
+	unary plus	<code>+expr</code>
-	unary minus	<code>-expr</code>
*	multiplication	<code>expr * expr</code>
/	division	<code>expr / expr</code>
%	remainder	<code>expr % expr</code>
+	addition	<code>expr + expr</code>
-	subtraction	<code>expr - expr</code>

Unless noted otherwise, the arithmetic operators may be applied to any of the arithmetic types (§ 2.1.1, p. 25) or to any type that can be converted to an arithmetic type. The operands and results of these operators are rvalues. As described in § 4.11.1 (p. 121), operands of small integral types are promoted to a larger integral type, and all operands may be converted to a common type as part of evaluating these operators.

The unary plus operator and the addition and subtraction operators may also be applied to pointers. § 3.5.3 (p. 91) covered the use of binary `+` and `-` with pointer operands. When applied to a pointer or arithmetic value, unary plus returns a (possibly promoted) copy of the value of its operand.

The unary minus operator returns the result of negating a (possibly promoted) copy of the value of its operand:

```
int i = 1024;
int k = -i; // i is -1024
bool b = true;
bool b2 = -b; // b2 is true!
```

In § 2.1.2 (p. 27) we noted that `bool` values should not be used for computation. The result of `-b` is a good example of what we had in mind.

For most operators, operands of type `bool` are promoted to `int`. In this case, the value of `b` is `true`, which promotes to the `int` value 1 (§ 2.1.2, p. 27). That (promoted) value is negated, yielding -1. The value -1 is converted back to `bool` and used to initialize `b2`. This initializer is a nonzero value, which when converted to `bool` is `true`. Thus, the value of `b2` is `true`!

### Caution: Overflow and Other Arithmetic Exceptions

Some arithmetic expressions yield undefined results. Some of these undefined expressions are due to the nature of mathematics—for example, division by zero. Others are undefined due to the nature of computers—for example, due to overflow. Overflow happens when a value is computed that is outside the range of values that the type can represent.

Consider a machine on which `shorts` are 16 bits. In that case, the maximum `short` is 32767. On such a machine, the following compound assignment overflows:

```
short short_value = 32767; // max value if shorts are 16 bits
short_value += 1; // this calculation overflows
cout << "short_value: " << short_value << endl;
```

The assignment to `short_value` is undefined. Representing a signed value of 32768 requires 17 bits, but only 16 are available. On many systems, there is no compile-time or run-time warning when an overflow occurs. As with any undefined behavior, what happens is unpredictable. On our system the program completes and writes

```
short_value: -32768
```

The value “wrapped around”: The sign bit, which had been 0, was set to 1, resulting in a negative value. On another system, the result might be different, or the program might behave differently, including crashing entirely.

When applied to objects of arithmetic types, the arithmetic operators, `+`, `-`, `*`, and `/`, have their obvious meanings: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Division between integers returns an integer. If the quotient contains a fractional part, it is truncated toward zero:

```
int ival1 = 21/6; // ival1 is 3; result is truncated; remainder is discarded
int ival2 = 21/7; // ival2 is 3; no remainder; result is an integral value
```

The `%` operator, known as the “remainder” or the “modulus” operator, computes the remainder that results from dividing the left-hand operand by the right-hand operand. The operands to `%` must have integral type:

```
int ival = 42;
double dval = 3.14;
ival % 12; // ok: result is 6
ival % dval; // error: floating-point operand
```

In a division, a nonzero quotient is positive if the operands have the same sign and negative otherwise. Earlier versions of the language permitted a negative quotient to be rounded up or down; the new standard requires the quotient to be rounded toward zero (i.e., truncated).

The modulus operator is defined so that if `m` and `n` are integers and `n` is nonzero, then  $(m/n)*n + m\%n$  is equal to `m`. By implication, if `m%n` is nonzero, it has the same sign as `m`. Earlier versions of the language permitted `m%n` to have the same sign as `n` on implementations in which negative `m/n` was rounded away from zero, but such implementations are now prohibited. Moreover, except for the obscure case where `-m` overflows,  $(-m)/n$  and  $m/(-n)$  are always equal to  $-(m/n)$ , `nm%n`, and `(-m)%n` is equal to  $-(m\%n)$ . More concretely:

21	%	6;	/*	result is 3	*/	21	/	6;	/*	result is 3	*/
21	%	7;	/*	result is 0	*/	21	/	7;	/*	result is 3	*/
-21	%	-8;	/*	result is -5	*/	-21	/	-8;	/*	result is 2	*/
21	%	-5;	/*	result is 1	*/	21	/	-5;	/*	result is -4	*/



### Exercises Section 4.2.0

**Exercise 4.4:** Parenthesize the following expression to show how it is evaluated. Test your answer by compiling the expression (without parentheses) and printing its result.

`12 / 3 * 4 + 5 * 15 + 24 % 4 / 2`

**Exercise 4.5:** Determine the result of the following expressions.

- (a) `-30 * 3 + 21 / 5`
- (b) `-30 + 3 * 21 / 5`
- (c) `30 / 3 * 21 % 5`
- (d) `-30 / 3 * 21 % 4`

**Exercise 4.6:** Write an expression to determine whether an `int` value is even or odd.

**Exercise 4.7:** What does overflow mean? Show three expressions that will overflow.

## 4.3 Logical and Relational Operators

The relational operators take operands of arithmetic or pointer type; the logical operators take operands of any type that can be converted to `bool`. These operators all return values of type `bool`. Arithmetic and pointer operand(s) with a value of zero are `false`; all other values are `true`. The operands to these operators are rvalues and the result is an rvalue.

Table 4.2: Logical and Relational Operators

Associativity	Operator	Function	Use
Right	<code>!</code>	logical NOT	<code>!expr</code>
Left	<code>&lt;</code>	less than	<code>expr &lt; expr</code>
Left	<code>&lt;=</code>	less than or equal	<code>expr &lt;= expr</code>
Left	<code>&gt;</code>	greater than	<code>expr &gt; expr</code>
Left	<code>&gt;=</code>	greater than or equal	<code>expr &gt;= expr</code>
Left	<code>==</code>	equality	<code>expr == expr</code>
Left	<code>!=</code>	inequality	<code>expr != expr</code>
Left	<code>&amp;&amp;</code>	logical AND	<code>expr &amp;&amp; expr</code>
Left	<code>  </code>	logical OR	<code>expr    expr</code>

### Logical AND and OR Operators

The overall result of the logical AND operator is `true` if and only if both its operands evaluate to `true`. The logical OR (`||`) operator evaluates as `true` if either of its operands evaluates as `true`.

The logical AND and OR operators always evaluate their left operand before the right. Moreover, the right operand is evaluated *if and only if* the left operand does not determine the result. This strategy is known as **short-circuit evaluation**:

- The right side of an `&&` is evaluated if and only if the left side is `true`.
- The right side of an `||` is evaluated if and only if the left side is `false`.

Several of the programs in Chapter 3 used the logical AND operator. Those programs used the left-hand operand to test whether it was safe to evaluate the right-hand operand. For example, the for condition on page 73:

```
index != s.size() && !isspace(s[index])
```

first checks that `index` has not reached the end of its associated `string`. We're guaranteed that the right operand won't be evaluated unless `index` is in range.

As an example that uses the logical OR, imagine we have some text in a `vector` of `strings`. We want to print the `strings`, adding a newline after each empty `string` or after a `string` that ends with a period. We'll use a range-based for loop (§ 3.2.3, p. 71) to process each element:

```
// note s as a reference to const; the elements aren't copied and can't be changed
for (const auto &s : text) { // for each element in text
    cout << s; // print the current element
    // blank lines and those that end with a period get a newline
    if (s.empty() || s[s.size() - 1] == '.')
        cout << endl;
    else
        cout << " "; // otherwise just separate with a space
}
```

After we print the current element, we check to see if we need to print a newline. The condition in the `if` first checks whether `s` is an empty `string`. If so, we need to print a newline regardless of the value of the right-hand operand. Only if the `string` is not empty do we evaluate the second expression, which checks whether the `string` ends with a period. In this expression, we rely on short-circuit evaluation of `||` to ensure that we subscript `s` only if `s` is not empty.

It is worth noting that we declared `s` as a reference to `const` (§ 2.4.1, p. 47). The elements in `text` are `strings`, and might be large. By making `s` a reference, we avoid copying the elements. Because we don't need to write to the elements, we made `s` a reference to `const`.

### Logical NOT Operator

The logical NOT operator (`!`) returns the inverse of the truth value of its operand. We first used this operator in § 3.2.2 (p. 68). As another example, assuming `vec` is a `vector` of `ints`, we might use the logical NOT operator to see whether `vec` has elements by negating the value returned by `empty`:

```
// print the first element in vec if there is one
if (!vec.empty())
    cout << vec[0];
```

The subexpression

```
!vec.empty()
```

evaluates as `true` if the call to `empty` returns `false`.

### The Relational Operators

The relational operators (`<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`) have their ordinary meanings and return `bool` values. These operators are left associative. Because the relational operators return `bools`, the result of chaining these operators together is likely to be surprising:

Because the relational operators return `bools`, the result of chaining these operators together is likely to be surprising:

```
// oops! this condition compares k to the bool result of i < j
if (i < j < k) // true if k is greater than 1!
```

This condition groups `i` and `j` to the first `<` operator. The `bool` result of that expression is the left-hand operand of the second less-than operator. That is, `k` is compared to the `true/false` result of the first comparison! To accomplish the test we intended, we can rewrite the expression as follows:

```
// ok: condition is true if i is smaller than j and j is smaller than k
if (i < j && j < k) { /* ... */ }
```

### Equality Tests and the `bool` Literals

If we want to test the truth value of an arithmetic or pointer object, the most direct way is to use the value as a condition

```
if (val) { /* ... */ } // true if val is any nonzero value
if (!val) { /* ... */ } // true if val is zero
```

In both conditions, the compiler converts `val` to `bool`. The first condition succeeds so long as `val` is nonzero; the second succeeds if `val` is zero.

We might think we could rewrite a test of this kind as

```
if (val == true) { /* ... */ } // true only if val is equal to 1!
```

There are two problems with this approach. First, it is longer and less direct than the previous code (although admittedly when first learning C++ this kind of abbreviation can be perplexing). Much more importantly, when `val` is not a `bool`, this comparison does not work as expected.

If `val` is not a `bool`, then `true` is converted to the type of `val` before the `==` operator is applied. That is, when `val` is not a `bool`, it is as if we had written

```
if (val == 1) { /* ... */ }
```

As we've seen, when a `bool` is converted to another arithmetic type, `false` converts to 0 and `true` converts to 1 (§ 2.1.2, p. 27). If we really cared whether `val` was the specific value 1, we should write the condition to test that case directly.



It is usually a bad idea to use the boolean literals `true` and `false` as operands in a comparison. These literals should be used only to compare to an object of type `bool`.

### Exercises Section 4.3.0

**Exercise 4.8:** Explain when operands are evaluated in the logical AND, logical OR, and equality operators.

**Exercise 4.9:** Explain the behavior of the condition in the following `if`:

```
const char *cp = "Hello World";
if (cp && *cp)
```

**Exercise 4.10:** Write the condition for a `while` loop that would read `ints` from the standard input and stop when the value read is equal to 42.

**Exercise 4.11:** Write an expression that tests four values, `a`, `b`, `c`, and `d`, and ensures that `a` is greater than `b`, which is greater than `c`, which is greater than `d`.

**Exercise 4.12:** Assuming `i`, `j`, and `k` are all `ints`, explain what `i != j < k` means.

## 4.4 Assignment Operators

The left-hand operand of an assignment operator must be a modifiable lvalue. For example, given

```
int i = 0, j = 0, k = 0; // initializations, not assignment
const int ci = i; // initialization, not assignment
```

Each of these assignments is illegal:

```
1024 = k; // error: literals are rvalues
i + j = k; // error: arithmetic expressions are rvalues
ci = k; // error: ci is a const (nonmodifiable) lvalue
```

The result of an assignment is its left-hand operand, which is an lvalue. The type of the result is the type of the left-hand operand. If the types of the left and right operands differ, the right-hand operand is converted to the type of the left:

```
k = 0; // result: type int, value 0
k = 3.14159; // result: type int, value 3
```

Under the new standard, we can use a braced initializer list (§ 2.2.1, p. 33) on the right-hand side:

```
k = {3.14}; // error: narrowing conversion
vector<int> vi; // initially empty
vi = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9}; // vi now has ten elements, values 0 through 9
```

If the left-hand operand is of a built-in type, the initializer list may contain at most one value, and that value must not require a narrowing conversion (§ 2.2.1, p. 33).

For class types, what happens depends on the details of the class. In the case of `vector`, the `vector` template defines its own version of an assignment operator that can take an initializer list. This operator replaces the elements of the left-hand side with the elements in the list on the right-hand side.

Regardless of the type of the left-hand operand, the initializer list may be empty. In this case, the compiler generates a value-initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 76) temporary and assigns that value to the left-hand operand.

## Assignment Is Right Associative

Unlike the other binary operators, assignment is right associative:

```
int ival, jval;
ival = jval = 0; // ok: each assigned 0
```

Because assignment is right associative, the right-most assignment, `jval = 0`, is the right-hand operand of the left-most assignment operator. Because assignment returns its left-hand operand, the result of the right-most assignment (i.e., `jval`) is assigned to `ival`.

Each object in a multiple assignment must have the same type as its right-hand neighbor or a type to which that neighbor can be converted (§ 4.11, p. 121):

```
int ival, *pval; // ival is an int; pval is a pointer to int
ival = pval = 0; // error: cannot assign the value of a pointer to an int
string s1, s2;
s1 = s2 = "OK"; // string literal "OK" converted to string
```

The first assignment is illegal because `ival` and `pval` have different types and there is no conversion from the type of `pval` (`int*`) to the type of `ival` (`int`). It is illegal even though zero is a value that can be assigned to either object.

On the other hand, the second assignment is fine. The string literal is converted to `string`, and that `string` is assigned to `s2`. The result of that assignment is `s2`, which has the same type as `s1`.

## Assignment Has Low Precedence

Assignments often occur in conditions. Because assignment has relatively low precedence, we usually must parenthesize the assignment for the condition to work properly. To see why assignment in a condition is useful, consider the following loop. We want to call a function until it returns a desired value—say, 42:

```
// a verbose and therefore more error-prone way to write this loop
int i = get_value(); // get the first value
while (i != 42) {
    // do something ...
    i = get_value(); // get remaining values
}
```

Here we start by calling `get_value` followed by a loop whose condition uses the value returned from that call. The last statement in this loop makes another call to `get_value`, and the loop repeats. We can write this code more directly as

```
int i;
// a better way to write our loop---what the condition does is now clearer
while ((i = get_value()) != 42) {
    // do something ...
}
```

The condition now more clearly expresses our intent: We want to continue until `get_value` returns 42. The condition executes by assigning the result returned by `get_value` to `i` and then comparing the result of that assignment with 42.

Without the parentheses, the operands to `!=` would be the value returned from `get_value` and 42. The `true` or `false` result of that test would be assigned to `i` — clearly not what we intended!



Because assignment has lower precedence than the relational operators, parentheses are usually needed around assignments in conditions.

## Beware of Confusing Equality and Assignment Operators

The fact that we can use assignment in a condition can have surprising effects:

```
if (i = j)
```

The condition in this `if` assigns the value of `j` to `i` and then tests the result of the assignment. If `j` is nonzero, the condition will be `true`. The author of this code almost surely intended to test whether `i` and `j` have the same value:

```
if (i == j)
```

Bugs of this sort are notoriously difficult to find. Some, but not all, compilers are kind enough to warn about code such as this example.

### Compound Assignment Operators

We often apply an operator to an object and then assign the result to that same object. As an example, consider the sum program from § 1.4.2 (p. 9):

```
int sum = 0;
// sum values from 1 through 10 inclusive
for (int val = 1; val <= 10; ++val)
    sum += val; // equivalent to sum = sum + val
```

This kind of operation is common not just for addition but for the other arithmetic operators and the bitwise operators, which we cover in 4.8 (p. 116). There are compound assignments for each of these operators:

+=	--	*=	/=	%=
<<=	>>=	&=	^=	=

Each compound operator is essentially equivalent to

```
a = a op b;
```

with the exception that, when we use the compound assignment, the left-hand operand is evaluated only once. If we use an ordinary assignment, that operand is evaluated twice: once in the expression on the right-hand side and again as the operand on the left hand. In many, perhaps most, contexts this difference is immaterial aside from possible performance consequences.

### Exercises Section 4.4.0

**Exercise 4.13:** What are the values of `i` and `d` after each assignment? `int i; double d;`

- (a) `d = i = 3.5;`
- (b) `i = d = 3.5;`

**Exercise 4.14:** Explain what happens in each of the `if` tests:

```
if (42 = i) // ...
if (i = 42) // ...
```

**Exercise 4.15:** The following assignment is illegal. Why? How would you correct it?

```
double dval; int ival; int *pi;
dval = ival = pi = 0;
```

**Exercise 4.16:** Although the following are legal, they probably do not behave as the programmer expects. Why? Rewrite the expressions as you think they should be.

- (a) `if (p = getPtr() != 0)`
- (b) `if (i = 1024)`

## 4.5 Increment and Decrement Operators

The increment (`++`) and decrement (`--`) operators provide a convenient notational shorthand for adding or subtracting 1 from an object. This notation rises above mere convenience when we use these operators with iterators, because many iterators do not support arithmetic.

There are two forms of these operators: prefix and postfix. So far, we have used only the prefix form. This form increments (or decrements) its operand and yields the *changed* object as its result. The postfix operators increment (or decrement) the operand but yield a copy of the original, *unchanged* value as its result:

```
int i = 0, j;
j = ++i; // j = 1, i = 1: prefix yields the incremented value
j = i++; // j = 1, i = 2: postfix yields the unincremented value
```

These operators require lvalue operands. The prefix operators return the object itself as an lvalue. The postfix operators return a copy of the object's original value as an rvalue.

#### Advice: Use Postfix Operators only When Necessary

Readers from a C background might be surprised that we use the prefix increment in the programs we've written. The reason is simple: The prefix version avoids unnecessary work. It increments the value and returns the incremented version. The postfix operator must store the original value so that it can return the unincremented value as its result. If we don't need the unincremented value, there's no need for the extra work done by the postfix operator.

For `ints` and pointers, the compiler can optimize away this extra work. For more complicated iterator types, this extra work potentially might be more costly. By habitually using the prefix versions, we do not have to worry about whether the performance difference matters. Moreover—and perhaps more importantly—we can express the intent of our programs more directly.

#### Combining Dereference and Increment in a Single Expression

The postfix versions of `++` and `--` are used when we want to use the current value of a variable and increment it in a single compound expression.

As one example, we can use postfix increment to write a loop to print the values in a `vector` up to but not including the first negative value:

```
auto pbeg = v.begin();
// print elements up to the first negative value
while (pbeg != v.end() && *pbeg >= 0)
    cout << *pbeg++ << endl; // print the current value and advance pbeg
```

The expression `*pbeg++` is usually confusing to programmers new to both C++ and C. However, because this usage pattern is so common, C++ programmers must understand such expressions.

The precedence of postfix increment is higher than that of the dereference operator, so `*pbeg++` is equivalent to `*(pbeg++)`. The subexpression `pbeg++` increments `pbeg` and yields a copy of the previous value of `pbeg` as its result. Accordingly, the operand of `*` is the unincremented value of `pbeg`. Thus, the statement prints the element to which `pbeg` originally pointed and increments `pbeg`.

This usage relies on the fact that postfix increment returns a copy of its original, unincremented operand. If it returned the incremented value, we'd dereference the incremented value, with disastrous results. We'd skip the first element. Worse, if the sequence had no negative values, we would attempt to dereference one too many elements.

#### Advice: Brevity Can Be a Virtue

Expressions such as `*pbeg++` can be bewildering—at first. However, it is a useful and widely used idiom. Once the notation is familiar, writing

```
cout << *iter++ << endl;
```

is easier and less error-prone than the more verbose equivalent

```
cout << *iter << endl;
++iter;
```

It is worthwhile to study examples of such code until their meanings are immediately clear. Most C++ programs use succinct expressions rather than more verbose equivalents. Therefore, C++ programmers must be comfortable with such usages. Moreover, once these expressions are familiar, you will find them less error-prone.

#### Remember That Operands Can Be Evaluated in Any Order

Most operators give no guarantee as to the order in which operands will be evaluated (§ 4.1.3, p. 105). This lack of guaranteed order often doesn't matter. The cases where it does matter are when one subexpression changes the value of an operand that is used in another subexpression. Because the increment and decrement operators change their operands, it is easy to misuse these operators in compound expressions.

To illustrate the problem, we'll rewrite the loop from § 3.4.1 (p. 82) that capitalizes the first word in the input. That example used a `for` loop:

```
for (auto it = s.begin(); it != s.end() && !isspace(*it); ++it)
    *it = toupper(*it); // capitalize the current character
```

which allowed us to separate the statement that dereferenced `beg` from the one that incremented it. Replacing the `for` with a seemingly equivalent `while`

```
// the behavior of the following loop is undefined!
while (beg != s.end() && !isspace(*beg))
    *beg = toupper(*beg++); // error: this assignment is undefined
```

results in undefined behavior. The problem is that in the revised version, both the left and right-hand operands to `=` use `beg` and the right-hand operand changes `beg`. The assignment is therefore undefined. The compiler might evaluate this expression as either

```
*beg = toupper(*beg); // execution if left-hand side is evaluated first
*(beg + 1) = toupper(*beg); // execution if right-hand side is evaluated first
```

or it might evaluate it in yet some other way.

### Exercises Section 4.5.0

**Exercise 4.17:** Explain the difference between prefix and postfix increment.

**Exercise 4.18:** What would happen if the `while` loop on page 113 that prints the elements from a `vector` used the prefix increment operator?

**Exercise 4.19:** Given that `ptr` points to an `int`, that `vec` is a `vector<int>`, and that `ival` is an `int`, explain the behavior of each of these expressions. Which, if any, are likely to be incorrect? Why? How might each be corrected?

- (a) `ptr != 0 && *ptr++`
- (b) `ival++ && ival`
- (c) `vec[ival++] <= vec[ival]`

## 4.6 The Member Access Operators

The dot (§ 1.5.2, p. 16) and arrow (§ 3.4.1, p. 83) operators provide for member access. The dot operator fetches a member from an object of class type; arrow is defined so that `ptr->mem` is a synonym for `(*ptr).mem`:

```
string s1 = "a string", *p = &s1;
auto n = s1.size(); // run the size member of the string s1
n = (*p).size(); // run size on the object to which p points
n = p->size(); // equivalent to (*p).size()
```

Because dereference has a lower precedence than dot, we must parenthesize the dereference subexpression. If we omit the parentheses, this code means something quite different:

```
// run the size member of p, then dereference the result!
*p.size(); // error: p is a pointer and has no member named size
```

This expression attempts to fetch the `size` member of the object `p`. However, `p` is a pointer, which has no members; this code will not compile.

The arrow operator requires a pointer operand and yields an lvalue. The dot operator yields an lvalue if the object from which the member is fetched is an lvalue; otherwise the result is an rvalue.



**Exercises Section 4.6.0**

**Exercise 4.20:** Assuming that `iter` is a `vector<string>::iterator`, indicate which, if any, of the following expressions are legal. Explain the behavior of the legal expressions and why those that aren't legal are in error.

- (a) `*iter++;`
- (b) `(*iter)++;`
- (c) `*iter.empty()`
- (d) `iter->empty();`
- (e) `++*iter;`
- (f) `iter++->empty();`

## 4.7 The Conditional Operator

The conditional operator (the **`?:` operator**) lets us embed simple if-else logic inside an expression. The conditional operator has the following form:

```
cond ? expr1 : expr2;
```

where `cond` is an expression that is used as a condition and `expr1` and `expr2` are expressions of the same type (or types that can be converted to a common type). This operator executes by evaluating `cond`. If the condition is **true**, then `expr1` is evaluated; otherwise, `expr2` is evaluated. As one example, we can use a conditional operator to determine whether a grade is pass or fail:

```
string finalgrade = (grade < 60) ? "fail" : "pass";
```

The condition checks whether `grade` is less than 60. If so, the result of the expression is `"fail"`; otherwise the result is `"pass"`. Like the logical AND and logical OR (`&&` and `||`) operators, the conditional operator guarantees that only one of `expr1` or `expr2` is evaluated.

That result of the conditional operator is an lvalue if both expressions are lvalues or if they convert to a common lvalue type. Otherwise the result is an rvalue.

### Nesting Conditional Operations

We can nest one conditional operator inside another. That is, the conditional operator can be used as the `cond` or as one or both of the `exprs` of another conditional expression. As an example, we'll use a pair of nested conditionals to perform a three-way test to indicate whether a grade is a high pass, an ordinary pass, or fail:

```
finalgrade = (grade > 90) ? "high pass"
              : (grade < 60) ? "fail" : "pass";
```

The first condition checks whether the grade is above 90. If so, the expression after the `?` is evaluated, which yields `"high pass"`. If the condition fails, the `:` branch is executed, which is itself another conditional expression. This conditional asks whether the `grade` is less than 60. If so, the `?` branch is evaluated and yields `"fail"`. If not, the `:` branch returns `"pass"`.

The conditional operator is right associative, meaning (as usual) that the operands group right to left. Associativity accounts for the fact that the right-hand conditional—the one that compares `grade` to 60—forms the `:` branch of the left-hand conditional expression.



Nested conditionals quickly become unreadable. It's a good idea to nest no more than two or three.

### Using a Conditional Operator in an Output Expression

The conditional operator has fairly low precedence. When we embed a conditional expression in a larger expression, we usually must parenthesize the conditional subexpression. For example, we often use the conditional operator to print one or another value, depending on the result of a condition. An incompletely parenthesized conditional operator in an output expression can have surprising results:

```
cout << ((grade < 60) ? "fail" : "pass"); // prints pass or fail
cout << (grade < 60) ? "fail" : "pass"; // prints 1 or 0!
cout << grade < 60 ? "fail" : "pass"; // error: compares cout to 60
```

The second expression uses the comparison between `grade` and 60 as the operand to the `<<` operator. The value 1 or 0 is printed, depending on whether `grade < 60` is `true` or `false`. The `<<` operator returns `cout`, which is tested as the condition for the conditional operator. That is, the second expression is equivalent to

```
cout << (grade < 60); // prints 1 or 0
cout ? "fail" : "pass"; // test cout and then yield one of the two literals
                        // depending on whether cout is true or false
```

The last expression is an error because it is equivalent to

```
cout << grade; // less-than has lower precedence than shift, so print grade first
cout < 60 ? "fail" : "pass"; // then compare cout to 60!
```

### Exercises Section 4.7.0

**Exercise 4.21:** Write a program to use a conditional operator to find the elements in a `vector<int>` that have odd value and double the value of each such element.

**Exercise 4.22:** Extend the program that assigned high pass, pass, and fail grades to also assign low pass for grades between 60 and 75 inclusive. Write two versions: One version that uses only conditional operators; the other should use one or more `if` statements. Which version do you think is easier to understand and why?

**Exercise 4.23:** The following expression fails to compile due to operator precedence. Using Table 4.4 (p. 126), explain why it fails. How would you fix it?

```
string s = "word";
string pl = s + s[s.size() - 1] == 's' ? "" : "s" ;
```

**Exercise 4.24:** Our program that distinguished between high pass, pass, and fail depended on the fact that the conditional operator is right associative. Describe how that operator would be evaluated if the operator were left associative.

## 4.8 The Bitwise Operators

The bitwise operators take operands of integral type that they use as a collection of bits. These operators let us test and set individual bits. As we'll see in § 17.2 (p. 328), we can also use these operators on a library type named `bitset` that represents a flexibly sized collection of bits.

As usual, if an operand is a “small integer,” its value is first promoted (§ 4.11.1, p. 121) to a larger integral type. The operand(s) can be either signed or unsigned.

Table 4.3: Bitwise Operators (Left Associative)

Operator	Function	Use
<code>~</code>	bitwise NOT	<code>~expr</code>
<code>&lt;&lt;</code>	left shift	<code>expr1&lt;&lt;expr2</code>
<code>&gt;&gt;</code>	right shift	<code>expr1&gt;&gt;expr2</code>
<code>&amp;</code>	bitwise AND	<code>expr &amp; expr</code>
<code>^</code>	bitwise XOR	<code>expr ^ expr</code>
<code> </code>	bitwise OR	<code>expr   expr</code>

If the operand is signed and its value is negative, then the way that the “sign bit” is handled in a number of the bitwise operations is machine dependent. Moreover, doing a left shift that changes the value of the sign bit is undefined.



Because there are no guarantees for how the sign bit is handled, we strongly recommend using unsigned types with the bitwise operators.

## Bitwise Shift Operators

We have already used the overloaded versions of the `>>` and `<<` operators that the IO library defines to do input and output. The built-in meaning of these operators is that they perform a bitwise shift on their operands. They yield a value that is a copy of the (possibly promoted) left-hand operand with the bits shifted as directed by the righthand operand. The right-hand operand must not be negative and must be a value that is strictly less than the number of bits in the result. Otherwise, the operation is undefined. The bits are shifted left (`<<`) or right (`>>`). Bits that are shifted off the end are discarded:

These illustrations have the lower-order bit on the right  
 These examples assume `char` has 8 bits, and `int` has 32 bits  
*// 0233 is an octal literal (§ 2.1.3, p. 29)*  
`unsigned char bits = 0233;`

1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

`bits << 8` *// bits promoted to int and then shifted left by 8 bits*  

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

`bits << 31` *// left shift 31 bits, left-most bits discarded*  

1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

`bits >> 3` *// right shift 3 bits, 3 right-most bits discarded*  

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1

The left-shift operator (the `<<` **operator**) inserts 0-valued bits on the right. The behavior of the right-shift operator (the `>>` **operator**) depends on the type of the left-hand operand: If that operand is `unsigned`, then the operator inserts 0-valued bits on the left; if it is a signed type, the result is implementation defined—either copies of the sign bit or 0-valued bits are inserted on the left.

## Bitwise NOT Operator

The bitwise NOT operator (the `~` **operator**) generates a new value with the bits of its operand inverted. Each 1 bit is set to 0; each 0 bit is set to 1:

`unsigned char bits = 0227;`

1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

`~bits`  

1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0

Here, our `char` operand is first promoted to `int`. Promoting a `char` to `int` leaves the value unchanged but adds 0 bits to the high order positions. Thus, promoting `bits` to `int` adds 24 high order bits, all of which are 0-valued. The bits in the promoted value are inverted.

## Bitwise AND, OR, and XOR Operators

The AND (`&`), OR (`|`), and XOR (`^`) operators generate new values with the bit pattern composed from its two operands:

`unsigned char b1 = 0145;`

0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

  
`unsigned char b2 = 0257;`

1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

`b1 & b2`

24	high-order bits all 0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
----	-----------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

  
`b1 | b2`

24	high-order bits all 0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
----	-----------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

  
`b1 ^ b2`

24	high-order bits all 0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0
----	-----------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

For each bit position in the result of the bitwise AND operator (the `&` **operator**) the bit is 1 if both operands contain 1; otherwise, the result is 0. For the OR (inclusive or) operator (the `|` **operator**), the bit is 1 if either or both operands contain 1; otherwise, the result is 0. For the XOR (exclusive or) operator (the `^` **operator**), the bit is 1 if either but not both operands contain 1; otherwise, the result is 0.



It is a common error to confuse the bitwise and logical operators (§ 4.3, p. 108). For example to confuse the bitwise `&` with the logical `&&`, the bitwise `|` with the logical `||`, and the bitwise `~` and the logical `!`.

## Using Bitwise Operators

As an example of using the bitwise operators let's assume a teacher has 30 students in a class. Each week the class is given a pass/fail quiz. We'll track the results of each quiz using one bit per student to represent the pass or fail grade on a given test. We might represent each quiz in an `unsigned` integral value:

```
unsigned long quiz1 = 0; // we'll use this value as a collection of bits
```

We define `quiz1` as an `unsigned long`. Thus, `quiz1` will have at least 32 bits on any machine. We explicitly initialize `quiz1` to ensure that the bits start out with welldefined values.

The teacher must be able to set and test individual bits. For example, we'd like to be able to set the bit corresponding to student number 27 to indicate that this student passed the quiz. We can indicate that student number 27 passed by creating a value that has only bit 27 turned on. If we then bitwise OR that value with `quiz1`, all the bits except bit 27 will remain unchanged.

For the purpose of this example, we will count the bits of `quiz1` by assigning 0 to the low-order bit, 1 to the next bit, and so on.

We can obtain a value indicating that student 27 passed by using the left-shift operator and an `unsigned long` integer literal 1 (§ 2.1.3, p. 29):

```
1UL << 27 // generate a value with only bit number 27 set
```

`1UL` has a 1 in the low-order bit and (at least) 31 zero bits. We specified `unsigned long` because ints are only guaranteed to have 16 bits, and we need at least 17. This expression shifts the 1 bit left 27 positions inserting 0 bits behind it.

Next we OR this value with `quiz1`. Because we want to update the value of `quiz1`, we use a compound assignment (§ 4.4, p. 112):

```
quiz1 |= 1UL << 27; // indicate student number 27 passed
```

The `|=` operator executes analogously to how `+=` does. It is equivalent to

```
quiz1 = quiz1 | 1UL << 27; // equivalent to quiz1 |= 1UL << 27;
```

Imagine that the teacher reexamined the quiz and discovered that student 27 actually had failed the test. The teacher must now turn off bit 27. This time we need an integer that has bit 27 turned off and all the other bits turned on. We'll bitwise AND this value with `quiz1` to turn off just that bit:

```
quiz1 &= ~(1UL << 27); // student number 27 failed
```

We obtain a value with all but bit 27 turned on by inverting our previous value. That value had 0 bits in all but bit 27, which was a 1. Applying the bitwise NOT to that value will turn off bit 27 and turn on all the others. When we bitwise AND this value with `quiz1`, all except bit 27 will remain unchanged.

Finally, we might want to know how the student at position 27 fared:

```
bool status = quiz1 & (1UL << 27); // how did student number 27 do?
```

Here we AND a value that has bit 27 turned on with `quiz1`. The result is nonzero (i.e., true) if bit 27 of `quiz1` is also on; otherwise, it evaluates to zero.

## Shift Operators (aka IO Operators) Are Left Associative

Although many programmers never use the bitwise operators directly, most programmers do use overloaded versions of these operators for IO. An overloaded operator has the same precedence and associativity as the built-in version of that operator. Therefore, programmers need to understand the precedence and associativity of the shift operators even if they never use them with their built-in meaning.

Because the shift operators are left associative, the expression

```
cout << "hi" << " there" << endl;
```

executes as

```
( (cout << "hi") << " there" ) << endl;
```

In this statement, the operand `"hi"` is grouped with the first `<<` symbol. Its result is grouped with the second, and then that result is grouped with the third.

The shift operators have midlevel precedence: lower than the arithmetic operators but higher than the relational, assignment, and conditional operators. These relative precedence levels mean we usually have to use parentheses to force the correct grouping of operators with lower precedence.

```
cout << 42 + 10; // ok: + has higher precedence, so the sum is printed
cout << (10 < 42); // ok: parentheses force intended grouping; prints 1
cout << 10 < 42; // error: attempt to compare cout to 42!
```

The last `cout` is interpreted as

```
(cout << 10) < 42;
```

which says to “write 10 onto `cout` and then compare the result of that operation (i.e., `cout`) to 42.”

### Exercises Section 4.8.0

**Exercise 4.25:** What is the value of `~'q' << 6` on a machine with 32-bit `ints` and 8 bit `chars`, that uses Latin-1 character set in which `'q'` has the bit pattern 01110001?

**Exercise 4.26:** In our grading example in this section, what would happen if we used `unsigned int` as the type for `quiz1`?

**Exercise 4.27:** What is the result of each of these expressions?

```
unsigned long ul1 = 3, ul2 = 7;
```

- (a) `ul1 & ul2`
- (b) `ul1 | ul2`
- (c) `ul1 && ul2`
- (d) `ul1 || ul2`

## 4.9 The sizeof Operator

The `sizeof` operator returns the size, in bytes, of an expression or a type name. The operator is right associative. The result of `sizeof` is a constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51) of type `size_t` (§ 3.5.2, p. 88). The operator takes one of two forms:

```
sizeof(type)
sizeof expr
```

In the second form, `sizeof` returns the size of the type returned by the given expression. The `sizeof` operator is unusual in that it does not evaluate its operand:

```
Sales_data data, *p;
sizeof(Sales_data); // size required to hold an object of type Sales_data
sizeof data; // size of data's type, i.e., sizeof(Sales_data)
sizeof p; // size of a pointer
sizeof *p; // size of the type to which p points, i.e., sizeof(Sales_data)
sizeof data.revenue; // size of the type of Sales_data's revenue member
sizeof Sales_data::revenue; // alternative way to get the size of revenue
```

The most interesting of these examples is `sizeof *p`. First, because `sizeof` is right associative and has the same precedence as `*`, this expression groups right to left. That is, it is equivalent to `sizeof(*p)`. Second, because `sizeof` does not evaluate its operand, it doesn't matter that `p` is an invalid (i.e., uninitialized) pointer (§ 2.3.2, p. 41). Dereferencing an invalid pointer as the operand to `sizeof` is safe because the pointer is not actually used. `sizeof` doesn't need dereference the pointer to know what type it will return.

Under the new standard, we can use the scope operator to ask for the size of a member of a class type. Ordinarily we can only access the members of a class through an object of that type. We don't need to supply an object, because `sizeof` does not need to fetch the member to know its size.

The result of applying `sizeof` depends in part on the type involved:

- `sizeof char` or an expression of type `char` is guaranteed to be 1.
- `sizeof` a reference type returns the size of an object of the referenced type.
- `sizeof` a pointer returns the size needed hold a pointer.
- `sizeof` a dereferenced pointer returns the size of an object of the type to which the pointer points; the pointer need not be valid.

- `sizeof` an array is the size of the entire array. It is equivalent to taking the `sizeof` the element type times the number of elements in the array. Note that `sizeof` does not convert the array to a pointer.
- `sizeof` a `string` or a `vector` returns only the size of the fixed part of these types; it does not return the size used by the object's elements.

Because `sizeof` returns the size of the entire array, we can determine the number of elements in an array by dividing the array size by the element size:

```
// sizeof(ia)/sizeof(*ia) returns the number of elements in ia
constexpr size_t sz = sizeof(ia)/sizeof(*ia);
int arr2[sz]; // ok sizeof returns a constant expression
```

Because `sizeof` returns a constant expression, we can use the result of a `sizeof` expression to specify the dimension of an array.

### Exercises Section 4.9.0

**Exercise 4.28:** Write a program to print the size of each of the built-in types.

**Exercise 4.29:** Predict the output of the following code and explain your reasoning. Now run the program. Is the output what you expected? If not, figure out why.

```
int x[10]; int *p = x;
cout << sizeof(x)/sizeof(*x) << endl;
cout << sizeof(p)/sizeof(*p) << endl;
```

**Exercise 4.30:** Using Table 4.4 (p. 126), parenthesize the following expressions to match the default evaluation:

- `sizeof x + y`
- `sizeof p->mem[i]`
- `sizeof a < b`
- `sizeof f()`

## 4.10 Comma Operator

The **comma operator** takes two operands, which it evaluates from left to right. Like the logical AND and logical OR and the conditional operator, the comma operator guarantees the order in which its operands are evaluated.

The left-hand expression is evaluated and its result is discarded. The result of a comma expression is the value of its right-hand expression. The result is an lvalue if the right-hand operand is an lvalue.

One common use for the comma operator is in a `for` loop:

```
vector<int>::size_type cnt = ivec.size();
// assign values from size... 1 to the elements in ivec
for(vector<int>::size_type ix = 0; ix != ivec.size(); ++ix, --cnt)
    ivec[ix] = cnt;
```

This loop increments `ix` and decrements `cnt` in the expression in the `for` header. Both `ix` and `cnt` are changed on each trip through the loop. As long as the test of `ix` succeeds, we reset the next element to the current value of `cnt`.

**Exercises Section 4.10.0**

**Exercise 4.31:** The program in this section used the prefix increment and decrement operators. Explain why we used prefix and not postfix. What changes would have to be made to use the postfix versions? Rewrite the program using postfix operators.

**Exercise 4.32:** Explain the following loop.

```
constexpr int size = 5;
int ia[size] = {1,2,3,4,5};
for (int *ptr = ia, ix = 0; ix != size && ptr != ia+size; ++ix, ++ptr)
    { /* ... */ }
```

**Exercise 4.33:** Using Table 4.4 (p. 126) explain what the following expression does:

```
someValue ? ++x, ++y : --x, --y
```

## 4.11 Type Conversions

In C++ some types are related to each other. When two types are related, we can use an object or value of one type where an operand of the related type is expected. Two types are related if there is a **conversion** between them.

As an example, consider the following expression, which initializes `ival` to 6:

```
int ival = 3.541 + 3; // the compiler might warn about loss of precision
```

The operands of the addition are values of two different types: `3.541` has type `double`, and `3` is an `int`. Rather than attempt to add values of the two different types, C++ defines a set of conversions to transform the operands to a common type. These conversions are carried out automatically without programmer intervention—and sometimes without programmer knowledge. For that reason, they are referred to as **implicit conversions**.

The implicit conversions among the arithmetic types are defined to preserve precision, if possible. Most often, if an expression has both integral and floatingpoint operands, the integer is converted to floating-point. In this case, `3` is converted to `double`, floating-point addition is done, and the result is a `double`.

The initialization happens next. In an initialization, the type of the object we are initializing dominates. The initializer is converted to the object's type. In this case, the `double` result of the addition is converted to `int` and used to initialize `ival`. Converting a `double` to an `int` truncates the `double`'s value, discarding the decimal portion. In this expression, the value 6 is assigned to `ival`.

### When Implicit Conversions Occur

The compiler automatically converts operands in the following circumstances:

- In most expressions, values of integral types smaller than `int` are first promoted to an appropriate larger integral type.
- In conditions, nonbool expressions are converted to `bool`.
- In initializations, the initializer is converted to the type of the variable; in assignments, the right-hand operand is converted to the type of the left-hand.
- In arithmetic and relational expressions with operands of mixed types, the types are converted to a common type.
- As we'll see in Chapter 6, conversions also happen during function calls.

#### 4.11.1 The Arithmetic Conversions

The **arithmetic conversions**, which we introduced in § 2.1.2 (p. 27), convert one arithmetic type to another. The rules define a hierarchy of type conversions in which operands to an operator are converted to the widest type. For example, if one operand is of type `long double`, then the other operand is converted to type `long double` regardless of what the second type is. More generally, in expressions that mix floating-point and integral values, the integral value is converted to an appropriate floating-point type.



## Integral Promotions

The **integral promotions** convert the small integral types to a larger integral type. The types `bool`, `char`, `signed char`, `unsigned char`, `short`, and `unsigned short` are promoted to `int` if all possible values of that type fit in an `int`. Otherwise, the value is promoted to `unsigned int`. As we've seen many times, a `bool` that is false promotes to 0 and true to 1.

The larger char types (`wchar_t`, `char16_t`, and `char32_t`) are promoted to the smallest type of `int`, `unsigned int`, `long`, `unsigned long`, `long long`, or `unsigned long long` in which all possible values of that character type fit.

## Operands of Unsigned Type

If the operands of an operator have differing types, those operands are ordinarily converted to a common type. If any operand is an `unsigned` type, the type to which the operands are converted depends on the relative sizes of the integral types on the machine.

As usual, integral promotions happen first. If the resulting type(s) match, no further conversion is needed. If both (possibly promoted) operands have the same signedness, then the operand with the smaller type is converted to the larger type.

When the signedness differs and the type of the unsigned operand is the same as or larger than that of the signed operand, the signed operand is converted to unsigned. For example, given an `unsigned int` and an `int`, the `int` is converted to `unsigned int`. It is worth noting that if the `int` has a negative value, the result will be converted as described in § 2.1.2 (p. 28), with the same results.

The remaining case is when the signed operand has a larger type than the unsigned operand. In this case, the result is machine dependent. If all values in the unsigned type fit in the larger type, then the unsigned operand is converted to the signed type. If the values don't fit, then the signed operand is converted to the unsigned type. For example, if the operands are `long` and `unsigned int`, and `int` and `long` have the same size, the `long` will be converted to `unsigned int`. If the `long` type has more bits, then the `unsigned int` will be converted to `long`.

## Understanding the Arithmetic Conversions

One way to understand the arithmetic conversions is to study lots of examples:

```
bool flag; char cval;
short sval; unsigned short usval;
int ival; unsigned int uival;
long lval; unsigned long ulval;
float fval; double dval;
3.14159L + 'a'; // 'a' promoted to int, then that int converted to long double
dval + ival; // ival converted to double
dval + fval; // fval converted to double
ival = dval; // dval converted (by truncation) to int
flag = dval; // if dval is 0, then flag is false, otherwise true
cval + fval; // cval promoted to int, then that int converted to float
sval + cval; // sval and cval promoted to int
cval + lval; // cval converted to long
ival + ulval; // ival converted to unsigned long
usval + ival; // promotion depends on the size of unsigned short and int
uival + lval; // conversion depends on the size of unsigned int and long
```

In the first addition, the character constant lowercase 'a' has type `char`, which is a numeric value (§ 2.1.1, p. 25). What that value is depends on the machine's character set. On our machine, 'a' has the numeric value 97. When we add 'a' to a `long double`, the `char` value is promoted to `int`, and then that `int` value is converted to a `long double`. The converted value is added to the literal. The other interesting cases are the last two expressions involving unsigned values. The type of the result in these expressions is machine dependent.

### Exercises Section 4.11.1

**Exercise 4.34:** Given the variable definitions in this section, explain what conversions take place in the following expressions:

- (a) `if (fval)`
- (b) `dval = fval + ival;`
- (c) `dval + ival * cval;`

Remember that you may need to consider the associativity of the operators.

**Exercise 4.35:** Given the following definitions,

```
char cval; int ival; unsigned int ui;
float fval; double dval;
```

identify the implicit type conversions, if any, taking place:

- (a) `cval = 'a' + 3;`
- (b) `fval = ui - ival * 1.0;`
- (c) `dval = ui * fval;`
- (d) `cval = ival + fval + dval;`

### 4.11.2 Other Implicit Conversions

In addition to the arithmetic conversions, there are several additional kinds of implicit conversions. These include:

**Array to Pointer Conversions:** In most expressions, when we use an array, the array is automatically converted to a pointer to the first element in that array:

```
int ia[10]; // array of ten ints
int* ip = ia; // convert ia to a pointer to the first element
```

This conversion is not performed when an array is used with `decltype` or as the operand of the address-of (`&`), `sizeof`, or `typeid` (which we'll cover in § 19.2.2 (p. 333)) operators. The conversion is also omitted when we initialize a reference to an array (§ 3.5.1, p. 87). As we'll see in § 6.7 (p. 188), a similar pointer conversion happens when we use a function type in an expression.

**Pointer Conversions:** There are several other pointer conversions: A constant integral value of 0 and the literal `nullptr` can be converted to any pointer type; a pointer to any nonconst type can be converted to `void*`, and a pointer to any type can be converted to a `const void*`. We'll see in § 15.2.2 (p. 291) that there is an additional pointer conversion that applies to types related by inheritance.

**Conversions to bool:** There is an automatic conversion from arithmetic or pointer types to `bool`. If the pointer or arithmetic value is zero, the conversion yields `false`; any other value yields `true`:

```
char *cp = get_string();
if (cp) /* ... */ // true if the pointer cp is not zero
while (*cp) /* ... */ // true if *cp is not the null character
```

**Conversion to const:** We can convert a pointer to a nonconst type to a pointer to the corresponding `const` type, and similarly for references. That is, if `T` is a type, we can convert a pointer or a reference to `T` into a pointer or reference to `const T`, respectively (§ 2.4.1, p. 47, and § 2.4.2, p. 48):

```
int i;
const int &j = i; // convert a nonconst to a reference to const int
const int *p = &i; // convert address of a nonconst to the address of a const
int &r = j, *q = p; // error: conversion from const to nonconst not allowed
```

The reverse conversion—removing a low-level `const`—does not exist.

**Conversions Defined by Class Types:** Class types can define conversions that the compiler will apply

automatically. The compiler will apply only one class-type conversion at a time. In § 7.5.4 (p. 224) we'll see an example of when multiple conversions might be required, and will be rejected.

Our programs have already used class-type conversions: We use a class-type conversion when we use a C-style character string where a library `string` is expected (§ 3.5.5, p. 94) and when we read from an `istream` in a condition:

```
string s, t = "a value"; // character string literal converted to type string
while (cin >> s) // while condition converts cin to bool
```

The condition `(cin >> s)` reads `cin` and yields `cin` as its result. Conditions expect a value of type `bool`, but this condition tests a value of type `istream`. The IO library defines a conversion from `istream` to `bool`. That conversion is used (automatically) to convert `cin` to `bool`. The resulting `bool` value depends on the state of the stream. If the last read succeeded, then the conversion yields `true`. If the last attempt failed, then the conversion to `bool` yields `false`.

### 4.11.3 Explicit Conversions

Sometimes we want to explicitly force an object to be converted to a different type. For example, we might want to use floating-point division in the following code:

```
int i, j;
double slope = i / j;
```

To do so, we'd need a way to explicitly convert `i` and/or `j` to `double`. We use a `cast` to request an explicit conversion.



Although necessary at times, casts are inherently dangerous constructs.

#### Named Casts

A named cast has the following form:

```
cast-name<type>(expression);
```

where `type` is the target type of the conversion, and `expression` is the value to be cast. If `type` is a reference, then the result is an lvalue. The `cast-name` may be one of `static_cast`, `dynamic_cast`, `const_cast`, and `reinterpret_cast`. We'll cover `dynamic_cast`, which supports the run-time type identification, in § 19.2 (p. 333). The `cast-name` determines what kind of conversion is performed.

#### `static_cast`

Any well-defined type conversion, other than those involving low-level `const`, can be requested using a `static_cast`. For example, we can force our expression to use floating-point division by casting one of the operands to `double`:

```
// cast used to force floating-point division
double slope = static_cast<double>(j) / i;
```

A `static_cast` is often useful when a larger arithmetic type is assigned to a smaller type. The cast informs both the reader of the program and the compiler that we are aware of and are not concerned about the potential loss of precision. Compilers often generate a warning for assignments of a larger arithmetic type to a smaller type. When we do an explicit cast, the warning message is turned off.

A `static_cast` is also useful to perform a conversion that the compiler will not generate automatically. For example, we can use a `static_cast` to retrieve a pointer value that was stored in a `void*` pointer (§ 2.3.2, p. 40):

```
void* p = &d; // ok: address of any nonconst object can be stored in a void*
// ok: converts void* back to the original pointer type
double *dp = static_cast<double*>(p);
```

When we store a pointer in a `void*` and then use a `static_cast` to cast the pointer back to its original type, we are guaranteed that the pointer value is preserved. That is, the result of the cast will be equal to the original address value. However, we must be certain that the type to which we cast the pointer is the actual type of that pointer; if the types do not match, the result is undefined.

**const\_cast**

A `const_cast` changes only a low-level (§ 2.4.3, p. 50) `const` in its operand:

```
const char *pc;
char *p = const_cast<char*>(pc); // ok: but writing through p is undefined
```

Conventionally we say that a cast that converts a `const` object to a `nonconst` type “casts away the `const`.” Once we have cast away the `const` of an object, the compiler will no longer prevent us from writing to that object. If the object was originally not a `const`, using a cast to obtain write access is legal. However, using a `const_cast` in order to write to a `const` object is undefined.

Only a `const_cast` may be used to change the `constness` of an expression. Trying to change whether an expression is `const` with any of the other forms of named cast is a compile-time error. Similarly, we cannot use a `const_cast` to change the type of an expression:

```
const char *cp;
// error: static_cast can't cast away const
char *q = static_cast<char*>(cp);
static_cast<string>(cp); // ok: converts string literal to string
const_cast<string>(cp); // error: const_cast only changes constness
```

A `const_cast` is most useful in the context of overloaded functions, which we’ll describe in § 6.4 (p. 177).

**reinterpret\_cast**

A `reinterpret_cast` generally performs a low-level reinterpretation of the bit pattern of its operands. As an example, given the following cast

```
int *ip;
char *pc = reinterpret_cast<char*>(ip);
```

we must never forget that the actual object addressed by `pc` is an `int`, not a character. Any use of `pc` that assumes it’s an ordinary character pointer is likely to fail at run time. For example:

```
string str(pc);
```

is likely to result in bizarre run-time behavior.

The use of `pc` to initialize `str` is a good example of why `reinterpret_cast` is dangerous. The problem is that types are changed, yet there are no warnings or errors from the compiler. When we initialized `pc` with the address of an `int`, there is no error or warning from the compiler because we explicitly said the conversion was okay. Any subsequent use of `pc` will assume that the value it holds is a `char*`. The compiler has no way of knowing that it actually holds a pointer to an `int`. Thus, the initialization of `str` with `pc` is absolutely correct—albeit in this case meaningless or worse! Tracking down the cause of this sort of problem can prove extremely difficult, especially if the cast of `ip` to `pc` occurs in a file separate from the one in which `pc` is used to initialize a `string`.



A `reinterpret_cast` is inherently machine dependent. Safely using `reinterpret_cast` requires completely understanding the types involved as well as the details of how the compiler implements the cast.

**Advice: Avoid Casts**

Casts interfere with normal type checking (§ 2.2.2, p. 36). As a result, we strongly recommend that programmers avoid casts. This advice is particularly applicable to `reinterpret_casts`. Such casts are always hazardous. A `const_cast` can be useful in the context of overloaded functions, which we’ll cover in § 6.4 (p. 177). Other uses of `const_cast` often indicate a design flaw. The other casts, `static_cast` and `dynamic_cast`, should be needed infrequently. Every time you write a cast, you should think hard about whether you can achieve the same result in a different way. If the cast is unavoidable, errors can be mitigated by limiting the scope in which the cast value is used and by documenting all assumptions about the types involved.

**Old-Style Casts**

In early versions of C++, an explicit cast took one of the following two forms:

```
type (expr); // function-style cast notation
(type) expr; // C-language-style cast notation
```

Depending on the types involved, an old-style cast has the same behavior as a `const_cast`, a `static_cast`, or a `reinterpret_cast`. When we use an old-style cast where a `static_cast` or a `const_cast` would be legal, the old-style cast does the same conversion as the respective named cast. If neither cast is legal, then an old-style cast performs a `reinterpret_cast`. For example:

```
char *pc = (char*) ip; // ip is a pointer to int
```

has the same effect as using a `reinterpret_cast`.



Old-style casts are less visible than are named casts. Because they are easily overlooked, it is more difficult to track down a rogue cast.

### Exercises Section 4.11.3

**Exercise 4.36:** Assuming `i` is an `int` and `d` is a `double` write the expression `i *= d` so that it does integral, rather than floating-point, multiplication.

**Exercise 4.37:** Rewrite each of the following old-style casts to use a named cast:

- (a) `pv = (void*)ps;`
- (b) `i = int(*pc);`
- (c) `pv = &d;`
- (d) `pc = (char*) pv;`

**Exercise 4.38:** Explain the following expression:

```
double slope = static_cast<double>(j/i);
```

## 4.12 Operator Precedence Table

Table 4.4: Operator Precedence

Associativity and Operator		Function	Use	See Page
L	::	global scope	::name	??
L	::	class scope	class::name	68
L	::	namespace scope	namespace::name	65
L	.	member selectors	object.member	17
L	->	member selectors	pointer->member	83
L	[]	subscript	expr[expr]	88
L	()	function call	name(expr_list)	17
L	()	type construction	type(expr_list)	125
R	++	postfix increment	lvalue++	112
R	--	postfix decrement	lvalue--	112
R	typeid	type ID	typeid(type)	??
R	typeid	run-time type ID	typeid(expr)	??
R	explicit cast	type conversion	cast_name<type>(expr)	124
R	++	prefix increment	++lvalue	112
R	--	prefix decrement	--lvalue	112
R	~	bitwise NOT	~expr	117
R	!	logical NOT	!expr	109
R	-	unary minus	-expr	106
R	+	unary plus	+expr	106
R	*	dereference	*expr	41
R	&	address-of	&lvalue	40
R	()	type conversion	(type) expr	125
R	sizeof	size of object	sizeof expr	119

continued to Table

	Associativity and Operator	Function	Use	See Page
R	sizeof	sizeof type	sizeof(type)	119
R	sizeof...	size of parameter pack	sizeof...(name)	??
R	new	allocate object	new type	??
R	new[]	allocate array	new type[size]	??
R	delete	deallocate object	delete expr	??
R	delete[]	deallocate array	delete[] expr	??
R	noexcept	can expr throw	noexcept(expr)	??
L	->*	ptr to member select	ptr->*ptr_to_member	??
L	.*	ptr to member select	obj.*ptr_to_member	??
L	*	multiply	expr * expr	106
L	/	divide	expr / expr	106
L	%	mudulo(remainder)	expr % expr	106
L	+	add	expr + expr	106
L	-	subtract	expr - expr	106
L	<<	bitwise shift left	expr << expr	117
L	>>	bitwise shift right	expr >> expr	117
L	<	less than	expr < expr	109
L	<=	less than or equal	expr <= expr	109
L	>	greater than	expr > expr	109
L	>=	greater than or equal	expr >= expr	109
L	==	equality	expr == expr	108
L	!=	inequality	expr != expr	108
L	&	bitwise AND	expr & expr	117
L	^	bitwise XOR	expr ^ expr	117
L		bitwise OR	expr   expr	117
L	&&	logical AND	expr && expr	108
L		logical OR	expr    expr	108
R	?:	conditional	expr?expr:expr	115
R	=	assignment	lvalue = expr	110
R	*, /=, %=,	compound assign	lvalue += expr, etc.	112
R	+=, -=,			
R	<<=, >>=,			
R	&=,  =, ^=			
R	throw	throw exception	throw expr	??
L	,	comma	expr,expr	120

## Chapter Summary

C++ provides a rich set of operators and defines their meaning when applied to values of the built-in types. Additionally, the language supports operator overloading, which allows us to define the meaning of the operators for class types. We'll see in Chapter 14 how to define operators for our own types.

To understand expressions involving more than one operator it is necessary to understand precedence, associativity, and order of operand evaluation. Each operator has a precedence level and associativity. Precedence determines how operators are grouped in a compound expression. Associativity determines how operators at the same precedence level are grouped.

Most operators do not specify the order in which operands are evaluated: The compiler is free to evaluate either the left- or right-hand operand first. Often, the order of operand evaluation has no impact on the result of the expression. However, if both operands refer to the same object and one of the operands changes that object, then the program has a serious bug—and a bug that may be hard to find.

Finally, operands are often converted automatically from their initial type to another related type. For example, small integral types are promoted to a larger integral type in every expression. Conversions exist for both built-in and class types. Conversions can also be done explicitly through a cast.

## Defined Terms

**arithmetic conversion** A conversion from one arithmetic type to another. In the context of the binary arithmetic operators, arithmetic conversions usually attempt to preserve precision by converting a smaller type to a larger type (e.g., integral types are converted to floating point).

**associativity** Determines how operators with the same precedence are grouped. Operators can be either right associative (operators are grouped from right to left) or left associative (operators are grouped from left to right).

**binary operators** Operators that take two operands.

**cast** An explicit conversion.

**compound expression** An expression involving more than one operator.

**const\_cast** A cast that converts a low-level `const` object to the corresponding `nonconst` type or vice versa.

**conversion** Process whereby a value of one type is transformed into a value of another type. The language defines conversions among the built-in types. Conversions to and from class types are also possible.

**dynamic\_cast** Used in combination with inheritance and run-time type identification. See § 19.2 (p. 333).

**expression** The lowest level of computation in a C++ program. Expressions generally apply an operator to one or more operands. Each expression yields a result. Expressions can be used as operands, so we can write compound expressions requiring the evaluation of multiple operators.

**implicit conversion** A conversion that is automatically generated by the compiler. Given an expression that needs a particular type but has an operand of

a differing type, the compiler will automatically convert the operand to the desired type if an appropriate conversion exists.

**integral promotions** conversions that take a smaller integral type to its most closely related larger integral type. Operands of small integral types (e.g., `short`, `char`, etc.) are always promoted, even in contexts where such conversions might not seem to be required.

**lvalue** An expression that yields an object or function. A `nonconst` lvalue that denotes an object may be the left-hand operand of assignment.

**operands** Values on which an expression operates. Each operator has one or more operands associated with it.

**operator** Symbol that determines what action an expression performs. The language defines a set of operators and what those operators mean when applied to values of built-in type. The language also defines the precedence and associativity of each operator and specifies how many operands each operator takes. Operators may be overloaded and applied to values of class type.

**order of evaluation** Order, if any, in which the operands to an operator are evaluated. In most cases, the compiler is free to evaluate operands in any order. However, the operands are always evaluated before the operator itself is evaluated. Only the `&&`, `||`, `?:`, and comma operators specify the order in which their operands are evaluated.

**overloaded operator** Version of an operator that is defined for use with a class type. We'll see in Chapter 14 how to define overloaded versions of operators.

**precedence** Defines the order in which different operators in a compound expression are grouped. Oper-



ators with higher precedence are grouped more tightly than operators with lower precedence.

**promoted** See integral promotions.

**reinterpret\_cast** Interprets the contents of the operand as a different type. Inherently machine dependent and dangerous.

**result** Value or object obtained by evaluating an expression.

**rvalue** Expression that yields a value but not the associated location, if any, of that value.

**short-circuit evaluation** Term used to describe how the logical AND and logical OR operators execute. If the first operand to these operators is sufficient to determine the overall result, evaluation stops. We are guaranteed that the second operand is not evaluated.

**sizeof** Operator that returns the size, in bytes, to store an object of a given type name or of the type of a given expression.

**static\_cast** An explicit request for a well-defined type conversion. Often used to override an implicit conversion that the compiler would otherwise perform.

**unary operators** Operators that take a single operand.

**, operator** Comma operator. Binary operator that is evaluated left to right. The result of a comma expression is the value of the right-hand operand. The result is an lvalue if and only if that operand is an lvalue.

**?: operator** Conditional operator. Provides an if-then-else expression of the form

```
cond ? expr1 : expr2;
```

If the condition **cond** is true, then **expr1** is evaluated. Otherwise, **expr2** is evaluated. The type **expr1** and **expr2** must be the same type or be convertible to a common type. Only one of **expr1** or **expr2** is evaluated.

**&& operator** Logical AND operator. Result is **true** if both operands are **true**. The right-hand operand is evaluated only if the left-hand operand is **true**.

**& operator** Bitwise AND operator. Generates a new integral value in which each bit position is 1 if both operands have a 1 in that position; otherwise the bit is 0.

**^ operator** Bitwise exclusive or operator. Generates a new integral value in which each bit position is 1 if either but not both operands contain a 1 in that bit position; otherwise, the bit is 0.

**|| operator** Logical OR operator. Yields **true** if either operand is **true**. The righthand operand is evaluated only if the left-hand operand is **false**.

**| operator** Bitwise OR operator. Generates a new integral value in which each bit position is 1 if either operand has a 1 in that position; otherwise the bit is 0.

**++ operator** The increment operator. The increment operator has two forms, prefix and postfix. Prefix increment yields an lvalue. It adds 1 to the operand and returns the changed value of the operand. Postfix increment yields an rvalue. It adds 1 to the operand and returns a copy of the original, unchanged value of the operand. Note: Iterators have **++** even if they do not have the **+** operator.

**-- operator** The decrement operator has two forms, prefix and postfix. Prefix decrement yields an lvalue. It subtracts 1 from the operand and returns the changed value of the operand. Postfix decrement yields an rvalue. It subtracts 1 from the operand and returns a copy of the original, unchanged value of the operand. Note: Iterators have **--** even if they do not have the **-**.

**<< operator** The left-shift operator. Shifts bits in a (possibly promoted) copy of the value of the left-hand operand to the left. Shifts as many bits as indicated by the right-hand operand. The right-hand operand must be zero or positive and strictly less than the number of bits in the result. Left-hand operand should be **unsigned**; if the left-hand operand is **signed**, it is undefined if a shift causes a different bit to shift into the sign bit.

**>> operator** The right-shift operator. Like the left-shift operator except that bits are shifted to the right. If the left-hand operand is **signed**, it is implementation defined whether bits shifted into the result are 0 or a copy of the sign bit.

**~ operator** Bitwise NOT operator. Generates a new integral value in which each bit is an inverted copy of the corresponding bit in the (possibly promoted) operand.

**! operator** Logical NOT operator. Returns the inverse of the **bool** value of its operand. Result is **true** if operand is **false** and vice versa.

# Chapter 5

## Statements

### Contents

---

5.1 Simple Statements .....	131
5.2 Statement Scope .....	132
5.3 Conditional Statements .....	133
5.4 Iterative Statements .....	141
5.5 Jump Statements .....	145
5.6 try Blocks and Exception Handling .....	147
Chapter Summary .....	152
Defined Terms .....	152

---

Like most languages, C++ provides statements for conditional execution, loops that repeatedly execute the same body of code, and jump statements that interrupt the flow of control. This chapter looks in detail at the statements supported by C++.

Statements are executed sequentially. Except for the simplest programs, sequential execution is inadequate. Therefore, C++ also defines a set of *flow-of-control* statements that allow more complicated execution paths.

## 5.1 Simple Statements

Most statements in C++ end with a semicolon. An expression, such as `ival + 5`, becomes an **expression statement** when it is followed by a semicolon. Expression statements cause the expression to be evaluated and its result discarded:

```
ival + 5; // rather useless expression statement
cout << ival; // useful expression statement
```

The first statement is pretty useless: The addition is done but the result is not used. More commonly, an expression statement contains an expression that has a side effect—such as assigning a new value to a variable, or printing a result—when it is evaluated.

### Null Statements

The simplest statement is the empty statement, also known as a **null statement**. A null statement is a single semicolon:

```
; // null statement
```

A null statement is useful where the language requires a statement but the program's logic does not. Such usage is most common when a loop's work can be done within its condition. For example, we might want to read an input stream, ignoring everything we read until we encounter a particular value:

```
// read until we hit end-of-file or find an input equal to sought
while (cin >> s && s != sought)
    ; // null statement
```

This condition reads a value from the standard input and implicitly tests `cin` to see whether the read was successful. Assuming the read succeeded, the second part of the condition tests whether the value we read is equal to the value in `sought`. If we found the value we want, the `while` loop is exited. Otherwise, the condition is evaluated again, which reads another value from `cin`.



Null statements should be commented. That way anyone reading the code can see that the statement was omitted intentionally.

### Beware of Missing or Extraneous Semicolons

Because a null statement is a statement, it is legal anywhere a statement is expected. For this reason, semicolons that might appear illegal are often nothing more than null statements. The following fragment contains two statements—the expression statement and the null statement:

```
ival = v1 + v2;; // ok: second semicolon is a superfluous null statement
```

Although an unnecessary null statement is often harmless, an extra semicolon following the condition in a `while` or `if` can drastically alter the programmer's intent. For example, the following code will loop indefinitely:

```
// disaster: extra semicolon: loop body is this null statement
while (iter != svec.end()) ; // the while body is the empty statement
    ++iter; // increment is not part of the loop
```

Contrary to the indentation, the increment is not part of the loop. The loop body is the null statement formed by the semicolon that follows the condition.



Extraneous null statements are not always harmless.

## Compound Statements (Blocks)

A **compound statement**, usually referred to as a **block**, is a (possibly empty) sequence of statements and declarations surrounded by a pair of curly braces. A block is a scope (§ 2.2.4, p. 37). Names introduced inside a block are accessible only in that block and in blocks nested inside that block. Names are visible from where they are defined until the end of the (immediately) enclosing block.

Compound statements are used when the language requires a single statement but the logic of our program needs more than one. For example, the body of a **while** or **for** loop must be a single statement, yet we often need to execute more than one statement in the body of a loop. We do so by enclosing the statements in curly braces, thus turning the sequence of statements into a block.

As one example, recall the while loop in the program in § 1.4.1 (p. 9):

```
while (val <= 10) {
    sum += val; // assigns sum + val to sum
    ++val; // add 1 to val
}
```

The logic of our program needed two statements but a **while** loop may contain only one statement. By enclosing these statements in curly braces, we made them into a single (compound) statement.



A block is not terminated by a semicolon.

We also can define an empty block by writing a pair of curlies with no statements. An empty block is equivalent to a null statement:

```
while (cin >> s && s != sought)
    { } // empty block
```

### Exercises Section 5.1.0

**Exercise 5.1:** What is a null statement? When might you use a null statement?

**Exercise 5.2:** What is a block? When might you use a block?

**Exercise 5.3:** Use the comma operator (§ 4.10, p. 120) to rewrite the **while** loop from § 1.4.1 (p. 9) so that it no longer requires a block. Explain whether this rewrite improves or diminishes the readability of this code.

## 5.2 Statement Scope

We can define variables inside the control structure of the **if**, **switch**, **while**, and **for** statements. Variables defined in the control structure are visible only within that statement and are out of scope after the statement ends:

```
while (int i = get_num()) // i is created and initialized on each iteration
    cout << i << endl;
    i = 0; // error: i is not accessible outside the loop
```

If we need access to the control variable, then that variable must be defined outside the statement:

```
// find the first negative element
auto beg = v.begin();
while (beg != v.end() && *beg >= 0)
    ++beg;
if (beg == v.end())
    // we know that all elements in v are greater than or equal to zero
```

### Exercises Section 5.2.0

**Exercise 5.4:** Explain each of the following examples, and correct any problems you detect.

- (a) `while (string::iterator iter != s.end()) { /* . . . */ }`
- (b) `while (bool status = find(word)) { /* . . . */ }`  
`if (!status) { /* . . . */ }`

## 5.3 Conditional Statements

C++ provides two statements that allow for conditional execution. The `if` statement determines the flow of control based on a condition. The `switch` statement evaluates an integral expression and chooses one of several execution paths based on the expression's value.

### 5.3.1 The `if` Statement

An **if statement** conditionally executes another statement based on whether a specified condition is true. There are two forms of the `if`: one with an `else` branch and one without. The syntactic form of the simple `if` is

```
if (condition)
    statement
```

An **if else statement** has the form

```
if (condition)
    statement
else
    statement2
```

In both versions, `condition` must be enclosed in parentheses. `condition` can be an expression or an initialized variable declaration (§ 5.2, p. 132). The expression or variable must have a type that is convertible (§ 4.11.1, p. 121) to `bool`. As usual, either or both `statement` and `statement2` can be a block.

If `condition` is true, then `statement` is executed. After `statement` completes, execution continues with the statement following the `if`.

If `condition` is false, `statement` is skipped. In a simple `if`, execution continues with the statement following the `if`. In an `if else`, `statement2` is executed.

### Using an `if else` Statement

To illustrate an `if` statement, we'll calculate a letter grade from a numeric grade. We'll assume that the numeric grades range from zero to 100 inclusive. A grade of 100 gets an "A++," grades below 60 get an "F," and the others range in clumps of ten: grades from 60 to 69 inclusive get a "D," 70 to 79 a "C," and so on. We'll use a `vector` to hold the possible letter grades:

```
vector<string> scores = {"F", "D", "C", "B", "A", "A++"};
```

To solve this problem, we can use an `if else` statement to execute different actions for failing and passing grades:

```
// if grade is less than 60 it's an F, otherwise compute a subscript
string lettergrade;
if (grade < 60)
    lettergrade = scores[0];
else
    lettergrade = scores[(grade - 50)/10];
```

Depending on the value of `grade`, we execute the statement after the `if` or the one after the `else`. In the `else`, we compute a subscript from a `grade` by reducing the grade to account for the larger range of failing grades. Then we use integer division (§ 4.2, p. 107), which truncates the remainder, to calculate the appropriate `scores` index.

## Nested if Statements

To make our program more interesting, we'll add a plus or minus to passing grades. We'll give a plus to grades ending in 8 or 9, and a minus to those ending in 0, 1, or 2:

```
if (grade % 10 > 7)
    lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
else if (grade % 10 < 3)
    lettergrade += '-'; // those ending in 0, 1, or 2 get a -
```

Here we use the modulus operator (§ 4.2, p. 107) to get the remainder and decide based on the remainder whether to add plus or minus.

We next will incorporate the code that adds a plus or minus to the code that fetches the letter grade from scores:

```
// if failing grade, no need to check for a plus or minus
if (grade < 60)
    lettergrade = scores[0];
else {
    lettergrade = scores[(grade - 50)/10]; // fetch the letter grade
    if (grade != 100) // add plus or minus only if not already an A++
        if (grade % 10 > 7)
            lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
        else if (grade % 10 < 3)
            lettergrade += '-'; // grades ending in 0, 1, or 2 get a -
}
```

Note that we use a block to enclose the two statements that follow the first **else**. If the **grade** is 60 or more, we have two actions that we need to do: Fetch the letter grade from **scores**, and conditionally set the plus or minus.

## Watch Your Braces

It is a common mistake to forget the curly braces when multiple statements must be executed as a block. In the following example, contrary to the indentation, the code to add a plus or minus happens unconditionally:

```
if (grade < 60)
    lettergrade = scores[0];
else // WRONG: missing curly
    lettergrade = scores[(grade - 50)/10];
// despite appearances, without the curly brace, this code is always executed
// failing grades will incorrectly get a - or a +
if (grade != 100)
    if (grade % 10 > 7)
        lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
    else if (grade % 10 < 3)
        lettergrade += '-'; // grades ending in 0, 1, or 2 get a -
```

Uncovering this error may be very difficult because the program looks correct.

To avoid such problems, some coding styles recommend always using braces after an **if** or an **else** (and also around the bodies of **while** and **for** statements).

Doing so avoids any possible confusion. It also means that the braces are already in place if later modifications of the code require adding statements.



Many editors and development environments have tools to automatically indent source code to match its structure. It is a good idea to use such tools if they are available.

## Dangling else

When we nest an **if** inside another **if**, it is possible that there will be more **if** branches than **else** branches. Indeed, our grading program has four **ifs** and two **elses**. The question arises: How do we know to which **if** a given **else** belongs?

This problem, usually referred to as a **dangling else**, is common to many programming languages that have both `if` and `if else` statements. Different languages solve this problem in different ways. In C++ the ambiguity is resolved by specifying that each `else` is matched with the closest preceding unmatched `if`.

Programmers sometimes get into trouble when they write code that contains more `if` than `else` branches. To illustrate the problem, we'll rewrite the innermost `if else` that adds a plus or minus using a different set of conditions:

```
// WRONG: execution does NOT match indentation; the else goes with the inner if
if (grade % 10 >= 3)
    if (grade % 10 > 7)
        lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
    else
        lettergrade += '-'; // grades ending in 3, 4, 5, 6 will get a minus!
```

The indentation in our code indicates that we intend the `else` to go with the outer `if`—we intend for the `else` branch to be executed when the `grade` ends in a digit less than 3. However, despite our intentions, and contrary to the indentation, the `else` branch is part of the inner `if`. This code adds a '-' to grades ending in 3 to 7 inclusive! Properly indented to match the actual execution, what we wrote is:

```
// indentation matches the execution path, not the programmer's intent
if (grade % 10 >= 3)
    if (grade % 10 > 7)
        lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
    else
        lettergrade += '-'; // grades ending in 3, 4, 5, 6 will get a minus!
```

### Controlling the Execution Path with Braces

We can make the `else` part of the outer `if` by enclosing the inner `if` in a block:

```
// add a plus for grades that end in 8 or 9 and a minus for those ending in 0, 1, or 2
if (grade % 10 >= 3) {
    if (grade % 10 > 7)
        lettergrade += '+'; // grades ending in 8 or 9 get a +
}
else // curlies force the else to go with the outer if
    lettergrade += '-'; // grades ending in 0, 1, or 2 will get a minus
```

Statements do not span block boundaries, so the inner `if` ends at the close curly before the `else`. The `else` cannot be part of the inner `if`. Now, the nearest unmatched `if` is the outer `if`, which is what we intended all along.



### Exercises Section 5.3.1

**Exercise 5.5:** Using an `if-else` statement, write your own version of the program to generate the letter grade from a numeric grade.

**Exercise 5.6:** Rewrite your grading program to use the conditional operator (§ 4.7, p. 115) in place of the `if-else` statement.

**Exercise 5.7:** Correct the errors in each of the following code fragments:

- ```
(a) if (ival1 != ival2)
    ival1 = ival2
    else ival1 = ival2 = 0;

(b) if (ival < minval)
    minval = ival;
    occurs = 1;

(c) if (int ival = get_value())
    cout << "ival = " << ival << endl;
    if (!ival)
    cout << "ival = 0\n";

(d) if (ival = 0)
    ival = get_value();
```

**Exercise 5.8:** What is a “dangling `else`”? How are `else` clauses resolved in C++?

### 5.3.2 The switch Statement

A **switch statement** provides a convenient way of selecting among a (possibly large) number of fixed alternatives. As one example, suppose that we want to count how often each of the five vowels appears in some segment of text. Our program logic is as follows:

- Read every character in the input.
- Compare each character to the set of vowels.
- If the character matches one of the vowels, add 1 to that vowel’s count.
- Display the results.

For example, when we run the program on the text of this chapter, the output is

```
Number of vowel a: 3195
Number of vowel e: 6230
Number of vowel i: 3102
Number of vowel o: 3289
Number of vowel u: 1033
```

We can solve our problem most directly using a `switch` statement:

```
// initialize counters for each vowel
unsigned aCnt = 0, eCnt = 0, iCnt = 0, oCnt = 0, uCnt = 0;
char ch;
while (cin >> ch) {
    // if ch is a vowel, increment the appropriate counter
    switch (ch) {
        case 'a':
            ++aCnt;
            break;
        case 'e':
            ++eCnt;
            break;
        case 'i':
            ++iCnt;
```

```

        break;
    case 'o':
        ++oCnt;
        break;
    case 'u':
        ++uCnt;
        break;
    }
}
// print results
cout << "Number of vowel a: \t" << aCnt << '\n'
    << "Number of vowel e: \t" << eCnt << '\n'
    << "Number of vowel i: \t" << iCnt << '\n'
    << "Number of vowel o: \t" << oCnt << '\n'
    << "Number of vowel u: \t" << uCnt << endl;

```

A **switch** statement executes by evaluating the parenthesized expression that follows the keyword **switch**. That expression may be an initialized variable declaration (§ 5.2, p. 132). The expression is converted to integral type. The result of the expression is compared with the value associated with each **case**.

If the expression matches the value of a **case** label, execution begins with the first statement following that label. Execution continues normally from that statement through the end of the **switch** or until a **break** statement.

We'll look at **break** statements in detail in § 5.5.1 (p. 145), but, briefly, a **break** interrupts the current control flow. In this case, the **break** transfers control out of the **switch**. In this program, the **switch** is the only statement in the body of a **while**. Breaking out of this **switch** returns control to the enclosing **while**. Because there are no other statements in that **while**, execution continues at the condition in the **while**.

If no match is found, execution falls through to the first statement following the **switch**. As we already know, in this example, exiting the **switch** returns control to the condition in the **while**.

The **case** keyword and its associated value together are known as the **case label**. **case** labels must be integral constant expressions (§ 2.4.4, p. 51):

```

char ch = getVal();
int ival = 42;
switch(ch) {
    case 3.14: // error: noninteger as case label
    case ival: // error: nonconstant as case label
    // . . .

```

It is an error for any two **case** labels to have the same value. There is also a specialcase label, **default**, which we cover on page 138.

### Control Flow within a switch

It is important to understand that execution flows across **case** labels. After a **case** label is matched, execution starts at that label and continues across all the remaining **cases** or until the program explicitly interrupts it. To avoid executing code for subsequent cases, we must explicitly tell the compiler to stop execution. Under most conditions, the last statement before the next **case** label is **break**.

However, there are situations where the default **switch** behavior is exactly what is needed. Each **case** label can have only a single value, but sometimes we have two or more values that share a common set of actions. In such instances, we omit a **break** statement, allowing the program to fall through multiple **case** labels.

For example, we might want to count only the total number of vowels:

```

unsigned vowelCnt = 0;
// ...
switch (ch)
{
    // any occurrence of a, e, i, o, or u increments vowelCnt
    case 'a':
    case 'e':
    case 'i':
    case 'o':
    case 'u':
        ++vowelCnt;

```

```

        break;
    }

```

Here we stacked several **case** labels together with no intervening **break**. The same code will be executed whenever **ch** is a vowel.

Because C++ programs are free-form, **case** labels need not appear on a new line. We can emphasize that the **cases** represent a range of values by listing them all on a single line:

```

switch (ch)
{
    // alternative legal syntax
    case 'a': case 'e': case 'i': case 'o': case 'u':
        ++vowelCnt;
        break;
}

```



Omitting a **break** at the end of a **case** happens rarely. If you do omit a **break**, include a comment explaining the logic.

### Forgetting a break Is a Common Source of Bugs

It is a common misconception to think that only the statements associated with the matched **case** label are executed. For example, here is an incorrect implementation of our vowel-counting **switch** statement:

```

// warning: deliberately incorrect!
switch (ch) {
    case 'a':
        ++aCnt; // oops: should have a break statement
    case 'e':
        ++eCnt; // oops: should have a break statement
    case 'i':
        ++iCnt; // oops: should have a break statement
    case 'o':
        ++oCnt; // oops: should have a break statement
    case 'u':
        ++uCnt;
}

```

To understand what happens, assume that the value of **ch** is **'e'**. Execution jumps to the code following the **case 'e'** label, which increments **eCnt**. Execution continues across the **case** labels, incrementing **iCnt**, **oCnt**, and **uCnt** as well.



Although it is not necessary to include a **break** after the last label of a **switch**, the safest course is to provide one. That way, if an additional **case** is added later, the **break** is already in place.

### The default Label

The statements following the **default label** are executed when no **case** label matches the value of the **switch** expression. For example, we might add a counter to track how many nonvowels we read. We'll increment this counter, which we'll name **otherCnt**, in the **default** case:

```

// if ch is a vowel, increment the appropriate counter
switch (ch) {
    case 'a': case 'e': case 'i': case 'o': case 'u':
        ++vowelCnt;
        break;
    default:
        ++otherCnt;
        break;
}

```

In this version, if `ch` is not a vowel, execution will start at the `default` label and we'll increment `otherCnt`.



It can be useful to define a `default` label even if there is no work for the `default` case. Defining an empty `default` section indicates to subsequent readers that the case was considered.

A label may not stand alone; it must precede a statement or another `case` label. If a `switch` ends with a `default` case that has no work to do, then the `default` label must be followed by a null statement or an empty block.

### Variable Definitions inside the Body of a switch

As we've seen, execution in a `switch` can jump across `case` labels. When execution jumps to a particular `case`, any code that occurred inside the switch before that label is ignored. The fact that code is bypassed raises an interesting question: What happens if the code that is skipped includes a variable definition?

The answer is that it is illegal to jump from a place where a variable with an initializer is out of scope to a place where that variable is in scope:

```
case true:
    // this switch statement is illegal because these initializations might be bypassed
    string file_name; // error: control bypasses an implicitly initialized variable
    int ival = 0; // error: control bypasses an explicitly initialized variable
    int jval; // ok: because jval is not initialized
    break;
case false:
    // ok: jval is in scope but is uninitialized
    jval = next_num(); // ok: assign a value to jval
    if (file_name.empty()) // file_name is in scope but wasn't initialized
        // ...
```

If this code were legal, then any time control jumped to the `false` case, it would bypass the initialization of `file_name` and `ival`. Those variables would be in scope. Code following `false` could use those variables. However, these variables would not have been initialized. As a result, the language does not allow us to jump over an initialization if the initialized variable is in scope at the point to which control transfers.

If we need to define and initialize a variable for a particular `case`, we can do so by defining the variable inside a block, thereby ensuring that the variable is out of scope at the point of any subsequent label.

```
case true:
{
    // ok: declaration statement within a statement block
    string file_name = get_file_name();
    // ...
}
break;
case false:
    if (file_name.empty()) // error: file_name is not in scope
```

### Exercises Section 5.3.2

**Exercise 5.9:** Write a program using a series of if statements to count the number of vowels in text read from cin.

**Exercise 5.10:** There is one problem with our vowel-counting program as we've implemented it: It doesn't count capital letters as vowels. Write a program that counts both lower- and uppercase letters as the appropriate vowel—that is, your program should count both 'a' and 'A' as part of aCnt, and so forth.

**Exercise 5.11:** Modify our vowel-counting program so that it also counts the number of blank spaces, tabs, and newlines read.

**Exercise 5.12:** Modify our vowel-counting program so that it counts the number of occurrences of the following two-character sequences: ff, fl, and fi.

**Exercise 5.13:** Each of the programs in the highlighted text on page 140 contains a common programming error. Identify and correct each error.

- (a) 

```
unsigned aCnt = 0, eCnt = 0, iouCnt = 0;
char ch = next_text();
switch (ch) {
    case 'a': aCnt++;
    case 'e': eCnt++;
    default: iouCnt++;
}
```
- (b) 

```
unsigned index = some_value();
switch (index) {
    case 1:
        int ix = get_value();
        ivec[ ix ] = index;
        break;
    default:
        ix = ivec.size()-1;
        ivec[ ix ] = index;
}
```
- (c) 

```
unsigned evenCnt = 0, oddCnt = 0;
int digit = get_num() % 10;
switch (digit) {
    case 1, 3, 5, 7, 9:
        oddcnt++;
        break;
    case 2, 4, 6, 8, 10:
        evencnt++;
        break;
}
```
- (d) 

```
unsigned ival=512, jval=1024, kval=4096;
unsigned bufsize;
unsigned swt = get_bufCnt();
switch(swt) {
    case ival:
        bufsize = ival * sizeof(int);
        break;
    case jval:
        bufsize = jval * sizeof(int);
        break;
    case kval:
        bufsize = kval * sizeof(int);
        break;
}
```

## 5.4 Iterative Statements

Iterative statements, commonly called loops, provide for repeated execution until a condition is true. The **while** and **for** statements test the condition before executing the body. The **do while** executes the body and then tests its condition.

### 5.4.1 The while Statement

A **while** statement repeatedly executes a target statement as long as a condition is **true**. Its syntactic form is

```
while (condition)
    statement
```

In a **while**, statement (which is often a block) is executed as long as condition evaluates as **true**. condition may not be empty. If the first evaluation of condition yields **false**, statement is not executed.

The condition can be an expression or an initialized variable declaration (§ 5.2, p. 132). Ordinarily, the condition itself or the loop body must do something to change the value of the expression. Otherwise, the loop might never terminate.



Variables defined in a **while** condition or **while** body are created and destroyed on each iteration.

### Using a while Loop

A **while** loop is generally used when we want to iterate indefinitely, such as when we read input. A **while** is also useful when we want access to the value of the loop control variable after the loop finishes. For example:

```
vector<int> v;
int i;
// read until end-of-file or other input failure
while (cin >> i)
    v.push_back(i);
// find the first negative element
auto beg = v.begin();
while (beg != v.end() && *beg >= 0)
    ++beg;
if (beg == v.end())
    // we know that all elements in v are greater than or equal to zero
```

The first loop reads data from the standard input. We have no idea how many times this loop will execute. The condition fails when **cin** reads invalid data, encounters some other input failure, or hits end-of-file. The second loop continues until we find a negative value. When the loop terminates, **beg** is either equal to **v.end()**, or it denotes an element in **v** whose value is less than zero. We can use the state of **beg** outside the **while** to determine further processing.

### Exercises Section 5.4.1

**Exercise 5.14:** Write a program to read **strings** from standard input looking for duplicated words. The program should find places in the input where one word is followed immediately by itself. Keep track of the largest number of times a single repetition occurs and which word is repeated. Print the maximum number of duplicates, or else print a message saying that no word was repeated. For example, if the input is

**how now now now brown cow cow**

the output should indicate that the word **now** occurred three times.

### 5.4.2 Traditional for Statement

The syntactic form of the **for statement** is:

```
for (init-statement condition; expression)
    statement
```

The `for` and the part inside the parentheses is often referred to as the `for` header.

`init-statement` must be a declaration statement, an expression statement, or a null statement. Each of these statements ends with a semicolon, so the syntactic form can also be thought of as

```
for (initializer; condition; expression)
    statement
```

In general, `init-statement` is used to initialize or assign a starting value that is modified over the course of the loop. `condition` serves as the loop control. As long as `condition` evaluates as `true`, `statement` is executed. If the first evaluation of `condition` yields `false`, `statement` is not executed. `expression` usually modifies the variable(s) initialized in `init-statement` and tested in `condition`. `expression` is evaluated after each iteration of the loop. As usual, `statement` can be either a single or a compound statement.



Variables defined in a `for` body are created and destroyed on each iteration.

### Execution Flow in a Traditional `for` Loop

Given the following `for` loop from § 3.2.3 (p. 73):

```
// process characters in s until we run out of characters or we hit a whitespace
for (decltype(s.size()) index = 0; index != s.size() && !isspace(s[index]); ++index)
    s[index] = toupper(s[index]); // capitalize the current character
```

the order of evaluation is as follows:

1. `init-statement` is executed once at the start of the loop. In this example, `index` is defined and initialized to zero.
2. Next, `condition` is evaluated. If `index` is not equal to `s.size()` and the character at `s[index]` is not whitespace, the `for` body is executed. Otherwise, the loop terminates. If the condition is `false` on the first iteration, then the `for` body is not executed at all.
3. If the condition is `true`, the `for` body executes. In this case, the `for` body makes the character at `s[index]` uppercase.
4. Finally, `expression` is evaluated. In this example, `index` is incremented by 1

These four steps represent the first iteration of the `for` loop. Step 1 is executed only once on entry to the loop. Steps 2, 3, and 4 are repeated until the condition evaluates as `false`—that is, when we encounter a whitespace character in `s`, or `index` is greater than `s.size()`.



It is worth remembering that the visibility of any object defined within the `for` header is limited to the body of the `for` loop. Thus, in this example, `index` is inaccessible after the `for` completes.

### Multiple Definitions in the `for` Header

As in any other declaration, `init-statement` can define several objects. However, `initstatement` may be only a single declaration statement. Therefore, all the variables must have the same base type (§ 2.3, p. 38). As one example, we might write a loop to duplicate the elements of a `vector` on the end as follows:

```
// remember the size of v and stop when we get to the original last element
for (decltype(v.size()) i = 0, sz = v.size(); i != sz; ++i)
    v.push_back(v[i]);
```

In this loop we define both the index, `i`, and the loop control, `sz`, in `init-statement`.

### Omitting Parts of the `for` Header

A `for` header can omit any (or all) of `init-statement`, `condition`, or `expression`.

We can use a null statement for `init-statement` when an initialization is unnecessary. For example, we might rewrite the loop that looked for the first negative number in a `vector` so that it uses a `for`:



```

auto beg = v.begin();
for ( /* null */; beg != v.end() && *beg >= 0; ++beg)
    ; // no work to do

```

Note that the semicolon is necessary to indicate the absence of `init-statement`—more precisely, the semicolon represents a null `init-statement`. In this loop, the `for` body is also empty because all the work of the loop is done inside the `for` condition and `expression`. The `condition` decides when it's time to stop looking and the `expression` increments the iterator.

Omitting `condition` is equivalent to writing `true` as the `condition`. Because the `condition` always evaluates as `true`, the `for` body must contain a statement that exits the loop. Otherwise the loop will execute indefinitely:

```

for (int i = 0; /* no condition */ ; ++i) {
    // process i; code inside the loop must stop the iteration!
}

```

We can also omit `expression` from the `for` header. In such loops, either the `condition` or the body must do something to advance the iteration. As an example, we'll rewrite the `while` loop that read input into a `vector` of `ints`:

```

vector<int> v;
for (int i; cin >> i; /* no expression */ )
    v.push_back(i);

```

In this loop there is no need for an `expression` because the `condition` changes the value of `i`. The `condition` tests the input stream so that the loop ends when we've read all the input or encounter an input error.

### Exercises Section 5.4.2

**Exercise 5.15:** Explain each of the following loops. Correct any problems you detect.

- (a) 

```
for (int ix = 0; ix != sz; ++ix) { /* . . . */ }
    if (ix != sz)
        // . . .
```
- (b) 

```
int ix;
for (ix != sz; ++ix) { /* . . . */ }
```
- (c) 

```
for (int ix = 0; ix != sz; ++ix, ++sz) { /* . . . */ }
```

**Exercise 5.16:** The `while` loop is particularly good at executing while some condition holds; for example, when we need to read values until end-of-file. The `for` loop is generally thought of as a step loop: An index steps through a range of values in a collection. Write an idiomatic use of each loop and then rewrite each using the other loop construct. If you could use only one loop, which would you choose? Why?

**Exercise 5.17:** Given two `vectors` of `ints`, write a program to determine whether one `vector` is a prefix of the other. For `vectors` of unequal length, compare the number of elements of the smaller `vector`. For example, given the `vectors` containing 0, 1, 1, and 2 and 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, respectively your program should return `true`.

### 5.4.3 Range for Statement

The new standard introduced a simpler `for` statement that can be used to iterate through the elements of a container or other sequence. The syntactic form of the **range for statement** is:

```

for (declaration : expression)
    statement

```

`expression` must represent a sequence, such as a braced initializer list (§ 2.2.1, p. 33), an array (§ 3.5, p. 86), or an object of a type such as `vector` or `string` that has `begin` and `end` members that return iterators (§ 3.4, p. 81).

`declaration` defines a variable. It must be possible to convert each element of the sequence to the variable's type (§ 4.11, p. 121). The easiest way to ensure that the types match is to use the `auto` type specifier (§ 2.5.2, p. 53). That way the compiler will deduce the type for us. If we want to write to the elements in the sequence, the loop variable must be a reference type.

On each iteration, the control variable is defined and initialized by the next value in the sequence, after which **statement** is executed. As usual, **statement** can be a single statement or a block. Execution ends once all the elements have been processed.

We have already seen several such loops, but for completeness, here is one that doubles the value of each element in a vector:

```
vector<int> v = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
// range variable must be a reference so we can write to the elements
for (auto &r : v) // for each element in v
    r *= 2; // double the value of each element in v
```

The **for** header declares the loop control variable, **r**, and associates it with **v**. We use **auto** to let the compiler infer the correct type for **r**. Because we want to change the value of the elements in **v**, we declare **r** as a reference. When we assign to **r** inside the loop, that assignment changes the element to which **r** is bound.

A range **for** is defined in terms of the equivalent traditional **for**:

```
for (auto beg = v.begin(), end = v.end(); beg != end; ++beg)
{
    auto &r = *beg; // r must be a reference so we can change the element
    r *= 2; // double the value of each element in v
}
```

Now that we know how a range **for** works, we can understand why we said in § 3.3.2 (p. 78) that we cannot use a range **for** to add elements to a **vector** (or other container). In a range **for**, the value of **end()** is cached. If we add elements to (or remove them from) the sequence, the value of **end** might be invalidated (§ 3.4.1, p. 84). We'll have more to say about these matters in § 9.3.6 (p. 265).

#### 5.4.4 The do while Statement

A **do while statement** is like a **while** but the condition is tested after the statement body completes. Regardless of the value of the condition, we execute the loop at least once. The syntactic form is as follows:

```
do
    statement
while (condition);
```



A **do while** ends with a semicolon after the parenthesized condition.

In a **do**, **statement** is executed before **condition** is evaluated. **condition** cannot be empty. If **condition** evaluates as **false**, then the loop terminates; otherwise, the loop is repeated. Variables used in **condition** must be defined outside the body of the **do while** statement.

We can write a program that (indefinitely) does sums using a **do while**:

```
// repeatedly ask the user for a pair of numbers to sum
string rsp; // used in the condition; can't be defined inside the do
do {
    cout << "please enter two values: ";
    int val1 = 0, val2 = 0;
    cin >> val1 >> val2;
    cout << "The sum of " << val1 << " and " << val2
        << " = " << val1 + val2 << "\n\n";
    << "More? Enter yes or no: ";
    cin >> rsp;
} while (!rsp.empty() && rsp[0] != 'n');
```

The loop starts by prompting the user for two numbers. It then prints their sum and asks whether the user wishes to do another sum. The condition checks that the user gave a response. If not, or if the input starts with an **n**, the loop is exited. Otherwise the loop is repeated.

Because the condition is not evaluated until after the statement or block is executed, the **do while** loop does not allow variable definitions inside the condition:

```
do {
    // . . .
    mumble(foo);
} while (int foo = get_foo()); // error: declaration in a do condition
```

If we could define variables in the condition, then any use of the variable would happen before the variable was defined!

### Exercises Section 5.4.4

**Exercise 5.18:** Explain each of the following loops. Correct any problems you detect.

- (a) 

```
do
    int v1, v2;
    cout << "Please enter two numbers to sum:" ;
    if (cin >> v1 >> v2)
        cout << "Sum is: " << v1 + v2 << endl;
while (cin);
```
- (b) 

```
do {
    // . . .
} while (int ival = get_response());
```
- (c) 

```
do {
    int ival = get_response();
} while (ival);
```

**Exercise 5.19:** Write a program that uses a `do while` loop to repetitively request two strings from the user and report which string is less than the other.

## 5.5 Jump Statements

Jump statements interrupt the flow of execution. C++ offers four jumps: `break`, `continue`, and `goto`, which we cover in this chapter, and the `return` statement, which we'll describe in § 6.3 (p. 170).

### 5.5.1 The `break` Statement

A **break statement** terminates the nearest enclosing `while`, `do while`, `for`, or `switch` statement. Execution resumes at the statement immediately following the terminated statement.

A `break` can appear only within an iteration statement or `switch` statement (including inside statements or blocks nested inside such loops). A `break` affects only the nearest enclosing loop or `switch`:

```
string buf;
while (cin >> buf && !buf.empty()) {
    switch(buf[0]) {
        case '-':
            // process up to the first blank
            for (auto it = buf.begin()+1; it != buf.end(); ++it){
                if (*it == ' ')
                    break; // #1, leaves the for loop
            }
            // break #1 transfers control here
            // remaining '-' processing:
            break; // #2, leaves the switch statement
        case '+':
            // . . .
    } // end switch
    // end of switch: break #2 transfers control here
} // end while
```

The `break` labeled #1 terminates the `for` loop that follows the hyphen case label. It does not terminate the enclosing `switch` statement and in fact does not even terminate the processing for the current case. Processing continues with the first statement following the `for`, which might be additional code to handle a hyphen or the `break` that completes that section.

The `break` labeled #2 terminates the `switch` but does not terminate the enclosing `while` loop. Processing continues after that `break` by executing the condition in the `while`.

### Exercises Section 5.5.1

**Exercise 5.20:** Write a program to read a sequence of `strings` from the standard input until either the same word occurs twice in succession or all the words have been read. Use a `while` loop to read the text one word at a time. Use the `break` statement to terminate the loop if a word occurs twice in succession. Print the word if it occurs twice in succession, or else print a message saying that no word was repeated.

### 5.5.2 The `continue` Statement

A `continue statement` terminates the current iteration of the nearest enclosing loop and immediately begins the next iteration. A `continue` can appear only inside a `for`, `while`, or `do while` loop, including inside statements or blocks nested inside such loops. Like the `break` statement, a `continue` inside a nested loop affects only the nearest enclosing loop. Unlike a `break`, a `continue` may appear inside a `switch` only if that `switch` is embedded inside an iterative statement.

A `continue` interrupts the current iteration; execution stays inside the loop. In the case of a `while` or a `do while`, execution continues by evaluating the condition. In a traditional `for` loop, execution continues at the `expression` inside the `for` header. In a range `for`, execution continues by initializing the control variable from the next element in the sequence.

For example, the following loop reads the standard input one word at a time. Only words that begin with an underscore will be processed. For any other value, we terminate the current iteration and get the next input:

```
string buf;
while (cin >> buf && !buf.empty()) {
    if (buf[0] != '_')
        continue; // get another input
    // still here? the input starts with an underscore; process buf . . .
}
```

### Exercises Section 5.5.2

**Exercise 5.21:** Revise the program from the exercise in § 5.5.1 (p. 145) so that it looks only for duplicated words that start with an uppercase letter.

### 5.5.3 The `goto` Statement

A `goto statement` provides an unconditional jump from the `goto` to a another statement in the same function.



Programs should not use `gotos`. `gotos` make programs hard to understand and hard to modify.

The syntactic form of a `goto` statement is

```
goto label;
```

where `label` is an identifier that identifies a statement. A `labeled statement` is any statement that is preceded by an identifier followed by a colon:

```
end: return; // labeled statement; may be the target of a goto
```

Label identifiers are independent of names used for variables and other identifiers. Hence, a label may have the same identifier as another entity in the program without interfering with the other uses of that identifier. The `goto` and the labeled statement to which it transfers control must be in the same function.

As with a `switch` statement, a `goto` cannot transfer control from a point where an initialized variable is out of scope to a point where that variable is in scope:

```

// . . .
goto end;
int ix = 10; // error: goto bypasses an initialized variable definition
end:
// error: code here could use ix but the goto bypassed its declaration
ix = 42;

```

A jump backward over an already executed definition is okay. Jumping back to a point before a variable is defined destroys the variable and constructs it again:

```

// backward jump over an initialized variable definition is okay
begin:
int sz = get_size();
if (sz <= 0) {
    goto begin;
}

```

Here `sz` is destroyed when the `goto` executes. It is defined and initialized anew when control passes back through its definition after the jump back to `begin`.

### Exercises Section 5.5.3

**Exercise 5.22:** The last example in this section that jumped back to `begin` could be better written using a loop. Rewrite the code to eliminate the `goto`.

## 5.6 try Blocks and Exception Handling

Exceptions are run-time anomalies—such as losing a database connection or encountering unexpected input—that exist outside the normal functioning of a program. Dealing with anomalous behavior can be one of the most difficult parts of designing any system.

Exception handling is generally used when one part of a program detects a problem that it cannot resolve and the problem is such that the detecting part of the program cannot continue. In such cases, the detecting part needs a way to signal that something happened and that it cannot continue. Moreover, the detecting part needs a way to signal the problem without knowing what part of the program will deal with the exceptional condition. Having signaled what happened, the detecting part stops processing.

A program that contains code that might raise an exception (usually) has another part to handle whatever happened. For example, if the problem is invalid input, the handling part might ask the user to provide correct input. If the database was lost, the handling part might alert an operator.

Exception handling supports this cooperation between the detecting and handling parts of a program. In C++, exception handling involves

- **throw expressions**, which the detecting part uses to indicate that it encountered something it can't handle. We say that a **throw** **raises** an exception.
- **try blocks**, which the handling part uses to deal with an exception. A **try** block starts with the keyword **try** and ends with one or more **catch clauses**.

Exceptions thrown from code executed inside a **try** block are usually handled by one of the **catch** clauses. Because they “handle” the exception, **catch** clauses are also known as **exception handlers**.

- A set of **exception classes** that are used to pass information about what happened between a **throw** and an associated **catch**.

In the remainder of this section, we'll introduce these three components of exception handling. We'll also have more to say about exceptions in § 18.1 (p. 330).

### 5.6.1 A throw Expression

The detecting part of a program uses a **throw** expression to raise an exception. A **throw** consists of the keyword **throw** followed by an expression. The type of the expression determines what kind of exception is thrown. A **throw** expression is usually followed by a semicolon, making it into an expression statement.

As a simple example, recall the program in § 1.5.2 (p. 16) that added two objects of type `Sales_item`. That program checked whether the records it read referred to the same book. If not, it printed a message and exited.

```

Sales_item item1, item2;
cin >> item1 >> item2;
// first check that item1 and item2 represent the same book
if (item1.isbn() == item2.isbn()) {
    cout << item1 + item2 << endl;
    return 0; // indicate success
}
else {
    cerr << "Data must refer to same ISBN"
        << endl;
    return -1; // indicate failure
}

```

In a more realistic program, the part that adds the objects might be separated from the part that manages the interaction with a user. In this case, we might rewrite the test to throw an exception rather than returning an error indicator:

```

// first check that the data are for the same item
if (item1.isbn() != item2.isbn())
    throw runtime_error("Data must refer to same ISBN");
// if we're still here, the ISBNs are the same
cout << item1 + item2 << endl;

```

In this code, if the ISBNs differ, we throw an expression that is an object of type `runtime_error`. Throwing an exception terminates the current function and transfers control to a handler that will know how to handle this error.

The type `runtime_error` is one of the standard library exception types and is defined in the `stdexcept` header. We'll have more to say about these types in § 5.6.3 (p. 150). We must initialize a `runtime_error` by giving it a `string` or a C-style character string (§ 3.5.4, p. 93). That string provides additional information about the problem.

## 5.6.2 The try Block

The general form of a `try` block is

```

try{
    program-statements
}
catch(exception-declaration){
    handler-statements
}
catch(exception-declaration){
    handler-statements
} //

```

A `try` block begins with the keyword `try` followed by a block, which, as usual, is a sequence of statements enclosed in curly braces.

Following the `try` block is a list of one or more `catch` clauses. A `catch` consists of three parts: the keyword `catch`, the declaration of a (possibly unnamed) object within parentheses (referred to as an **exception declaration**), and a block. When a `catch` is selected to handle an exception, the associated block is executed. Once the `catch` finishes, execution continues with the statement immediately following the last `catch` clause of the `try` block.

The `program-statements` inside the `try` constitute the normal logic of the program. Like any other blocks, they can contain any C++ statement, including declarations. As with any block, variables declared inside a `try` block are inaccessible outside the block—in particular, they are not accessible to the `catch` clauses.

### Writing a Handler

In the preceding example, we used a `throw` to avoid adding two `Sales_items` that represented different books. We imagined that the part of the program that added two `Sales_items` was separate from the part that communicated with the user. The part that interacts with the user might contain code something like the following to handle the exception that was thrown:

```

while (cin >> item1 >> item2) {
    try{
        // execute code that will add the two Sales_items
        // if the addition fails, the code throws a runtime_error exception
    }
    catch(runtime_error err){
        // remind the user that the ISBNs must match and prompt for another pair
        cout << err.what()
            << "\nTry Again? Enter y or n" << endl;
        char c;
        cin >> c;
        if (!cin || c == 'n')
            break; // break out of the while loop
    }
}

```

The ordinary logic of the program that manages the interaction with the user appears inside the `try` block. This part of the program is wrapped inside a `try` because it might throw an exception of type `runtime_error`.

This `try` block has a single `catch` clause, which handles exceptions of type `runtime_error`. The statements in the block following the `catch` are executed if code inside the `try` block throws a `runtime_error`. Our `catch` handles the error by printing a message and asking the user to indicate whether to continue. If the user enters 'n', then the `break` is executed and we exit the `while`. Otherwise, execution falls through to the closing brace of the `while`, which transfers control back to the `while` condition for the next iteration.

The prompt to the user prints the return from `err.what()`. We know that `err` has type `runtime_error`, so we can infer that `what` is a member function (§ 1.5.2, p. 17) of the `runtime_error` class. Each of the library exception classes defines a member function named `what`. These functions take no arguments and return a C-style character string (i.e., a `const char*`). The `what` member of `runtime_error` returns a copy of the `string` used to initialize the particular object. If the code described in the previous section threw an exception, then this `catch` would print

```

Data must refer to same ISBN
Try Again? Enter y or n

```

### Functions Are Exited during the Search for a Handler

In complicated systems, the execution path of a program may pass through multiple `try` blocks before encountering code that throws an exception. For example, a `try` block might call a function that contains a `try`, which calls another function with its own `try`, and so on.

The search for a handler reverses the call chain. When an exception is thrown, the function that threw the exception is searched first. If no matching `catch` is found, that function terminates. The function that called the one that threw is searched next. If no handler is found, that function also exits. That function's caller is searched next, and so on back up the execution path until a `catch` of an appropriate type is found.

If no appropriate `catch` is found, execution is transferred to a library function named `terminate`. The behavior of that function is system dependent but is guaranteed to stop further execution of the program.

Exceptions that occur in programs that do not define any `try` blocks are handled in the same manner: After all, if there are no `try` blocks, there can be no handlers. If a program has no `try` blocks and an exception occurs, then `terminate` is called and the program is exited.



### Caution: Writing Exception Safe Code is Hard

It is important to realize that exceptions interrupt the normal flow of a program. At the point where the exception occurs, some of the computations that the caller requested may have been done, while others remain undone. In general, bypassing part of the program might mean that an object is left in an invalid or incomplete state, or that a resource is not freed, and so on. Programs that properly “clean up” during exception handling are said to be **exception safe**. Writing exception safe code is surprisingly hard, and (largely) beyond the scope of this language Primer.

Some programs use exceptions simply to terminate the program when an exceptional condition occurs. Such programs generally don’t worry about exception safety.

Programs that do handle exceptions and continue processing generally must be constantly aware of whether an exception might occur and what the program must do to ensure that objects are valid, that resources don’t leak, and that the program is restored to an appropriate state.

We will occasionally point out particularly common techniques used to promote exception safety. However, readers whose programs require robust exception handling should be aware that the techniques we cover are insufficient by themselves to achieve exception safety.

### 5.6.3 Standard Exceptions

The C++ library defines several classes that it uses to report problems encountered in the functions in the standard library. These exception classes are also intended to be used in the programs we write. These classes are defined in four headers:

- The **exception** header defines the most general kind of exception class named **exception**. It communicates only that an exception occurred but provides no additional information.
- The **stdexcept** header defines several general-purpose exception classes, which are listed in Table 5.1.
- The **new** header defines the **bad\_alloc** exception type, which we cover in § 12.1.2 (p. 274).
- The **type\_info** header defines the **bad\_cast** exception type, which we cover in § 19.2 (p. 333).

Table 5.1: Standard Exception Classes Defined in `<stdexcept>`

|                         |                                                                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>exception</b>        | The most general kind of problem.                                                    |
| <b>runtime_error</b>    | Problem that can be detected only at run time.                                       |
| <b>range_error</b>      | Run-time error: result generated outside the range of values that are meaningful.    |
| <b>overflow_error</b>   | Run-time error: computation that overflowed.                                         |
| <b>underflow_error</b>  | Run-time error: computation that underflowed.                                        |
| <b>logic_error</b>      | Error in the logic of the program.                                                   |
| <b>domain_error</b>     | Logic error: argument for which no result exists.                                    |
| <b>invalid_argument</b> | Logic error: inappropriate argument.                                                 |
| <b>length_error</b>     | Logic error: attempt to create an object larger than the maximum size for that type. |
| <b>out_of_range</b>     | Logic error: used a value outside the valid range                                    |

The library exception classes have only a few operations. We can create, copy, and assign objects of any of the exception types.

We can only default initialize (§ 2.2.1, p. 34) **exception**, **bad\_alloc**, and **bad\_cast** objects; it is not possible to provide an initializer for objects of these exception types.

The other exception types have the opposite behavior: We can initialize those objects from either a **string** or a C-style string, but we cannot default initialize them. When we create objects of any of these other exception types, we must supply an initializer. That initializer is used to provide additional information about the error that occurred.

The exception types define only a single operation named **what**. That function takes no arguments and returns a **const char\*** that points to a C-style character string (§ 3.5.4, p. 93). The purpose of this C-style character string is to provide some sort of textual description of the exception thrown.

The contents of the C-style string that **what** returns depends on the type of the exception object. For the types that take a string initializer, the **what** function returns that string. For the other types, the value of the string that **what** returns varies by compiler.

**Exercises Section 5.6.3**

**Exercise 5.23:** Write a program that reads two integers from the standard input and prints the result of dividing the first number by the second.

**Exercise 5.24:** Revise your program to throw an exception if the second number is zero. Test your program with a zero input to see what happens on your system if you don't **catch** an exception.

**Exercise 5.25:** Revise your program from the previous exercise to use a **try** block to **catch** the exception. The **catch** clause should print a message to the user and ask them to supply a new number and repeat the code inside the **try**.

## Chapter Summary

C++ provides a limited number of statements. Most of these affect the flow of control within a program:

- **while**, **for**, and **do while** statements, which provide iterative execution.
- **if** and **switch**, which provide conditional execution.
- **continue**, which stops the current iteration of a loop.
- **break**, which exits a loop or **switch** statement.
- **goto**, which transfers control to a labeled statement.
- **try** and **catch**, which define a **try** block enclosing a sequence of statements that might throw an exception. The **catch** clause(s) are intended to handle the exception(s) that the enclosed code might throw.
- **throw** expression statements, which exit a block of code, transferring control to an associated **catch** clause.
- **return**, which stops execution of a function. (We'll cover **return** statements in Chapter 6.)

In addition, there are expression statements and declaration statements. An expression statement causes the subject expression to be evaluated. Declarations and definitions of variables were described in Chapter 2.

## Defined Terms

**block** Sequence of zero or more statements enclosed in curly braces. A block is a statement, so it can appear anywhere a statement is expected.

**break statement** Terminates the nearest enclosing loop or **switch** statement. Execution transfers to the first statement following the terminated loop or **switch**.

**case label** Constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51) that follows the keyword **case** in a **switch** statement. No two **case** labels in the same **switch** statement may have the same value.

**catch clause** The **catch** keyword, an exception declaration in parentheses, and a block of statements. The code inside a **catch** clause does whatever is necessary to handle an exception of the type defined in its exception declaration.

**compound statement** Synonym for block.

**continue statement** Terminates the current iteration of the nearest enclosing loop. Execution transfers to the loop condition in a **while** or **do while**, to the next iteration in a range **for**, or to the expression in the header of a traditional **for** loop.

**dangling else** Colloquial term used to refer to the problem of how to process nested **if** statements in which there are more **ifs** than **elses**. In C++, an **else** is always paired with the closest preceding unmatched **if**. Note that curly braces can be used to effectively hide an inner **if** so that the programmer can control which **if** a given **else** should match.

**default label** **case** label that matches any otherwise unmatched value computed in the **switch** expression.

**do while statement** Like a **while**, except that the condition is tested at the end of the loop, not the beginning. The statement inside the **do** is executed at least once.

**exception classes** Set of classes defined by the standard library to be used to represent errors. Table 5.1 (p. 150) lists the general-purpose exception classes.

**exception declaration** The declaration in a **catch** clause. This declaration specifies the type of exceptions the **catch** can handle.

**exception handler** Code that deals with an exception raised in another part of the program. Synonym for **catch** clause.

**exception safe** Term used to describe programs that behave correctly when exceptions are thrown.

**expression statement** An expression followed by a semicolon. An expression statement causes the expression to be evaluated.

**flow of control** Execution path through a program.

**for statement** Iteration statement that provides iterative execution. Ordinarily used to step through a container or to repeat a calculation a given number of times.

**goto statement** Statement that causes an unconditional transfer of control to a specified labeled statement elsewhere in the same function. **gotos** obfuscate the flow of control within a program and should be avoided.

**if else statement** Conditional execution of code following the **if** or the **else**, depending on the truth value of the condition.

**if statement** Conditional execution based on the value of the specified condition. If the condition is true, then the **if** body is executed. If not, control flows to the statement following the **if**.

**labeled statement** Statement preceded by a label. A label is an identifier followed by a colon. Label identifiers are independent of other uses of the same identifier.

**null statement** An empty statement. Indicated by a single semicolon.

**raise** Often used as a synonym for **throw**. C++ programmers speak of “throwing” or “raising” an exception interchangeably.

**range for statement** Statement that iterates through a sequence.

**switch statement** A conditional statement that starts by evaluating the expression that follows the **switch** keyword. Control passes to the labeled statement with a **case** label that matches the value of the expression. If there is no matching label, execution

either continues at the **default** label, if there is one, or falls out of the **switch** if there is no **default** label.

**terminate** Library function that is called if an exception is not caught. **terminate** aborts the program.

**throw expression** Expression that interrupts the current execution path. Each **throw** throws an object and transfers control to the nearest enclosing **catch** clause that can handle the type of exception that is thrown.

**try block** Block enclosed by the keyword **try** and one or more **catch** clauses. If the code inside a **try** block raises an exception and one of the **catch** clauses matches the type of the exception, then the exception is handled by that **catch**. Otherwise, the exception is handled by an enclosing **try** block or the program terminates.

**while statement** Iteration statement that executes its target statement as long as a specified condition is **true**. The statement is executed zero or more times, depending on the truth value of the condition.

# Chapter 6

## Functions

### Contents

---

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.1 Function Basics .....                       | 155 |
| 6.2 Argument Passing.....                       | 159 |
| 6.3 Return Types and the return Statement ..... | 170 |
| 6.4 Overloaded Functions .....                  | 175 |
| 6.5 Features for Specialized Uses.....          | 179 |
| 6.6 Function Matching .....                     | 184 |
| 6.7 Pointers to Functions .....                 | 188 |
| Chapter Summary .....                           | 191 |
| Defined Terms .....                             | 191 |

---

This chapter describes how to define and declare functions. We'll cover how arguments are passed to and values returned from functions. In C++, functions can be overloaded, which means that we can use the same name for several different functions. We'll cover both how to overload functions and how the compiler selects the matching version for a particular call from several overloaded functions. The chapter closes by describing pointers to functions.

A function is a block of code with a name. We execute the code by calling the function. A function may take zero or more arguments and (usually) yields a result. Functions can be overloaded, meaning that the same name may refer to several different functions.

## 6.1 Function Basics

A *function* definition typically consists of a *return type*, a name, a list of zero or more *parameters*, and a body. The parameters are specified in a comma-separated list enclosed in parentheses. The actions that the function performs are specified in a statement block (§ 5.1, p. 132), referred to as the *function body*.

We execute a function through the *call operator*, which is a pair of parentheses. The call operator takes an expression that is a function or points to a function. Inside the parentheses is a comma-separated list of *arguments*. The arguments are used to initialize the function's parameters. The type of a call expression is the return type of the function.

### Writing a Function

As an example, we'll write a function to determine the factorial of a given number. The factorial of a number  $n$  is the product of the numbers from 1 through  $n$ . The factorial of 5, for example, is 120.

$$1 * 2 * 3 * 4 * 5 = 120$$

We might define this function as follows:

```
// factorial of val is val * (val - 1) * (val - 2) . . . * ((val - (val - 1)) * 1)
int fact(int val)
{
    int ret = 1; // local variable to hold the result as we calculate it
    while (val > 1)
        ret *= val--; // assign ret * val to ret and decrement val
    return ret; // return the result
}
```

Our function is named `fact`. It takes one `int` parameter and returns an `int` value. Inside the `while` loop, we compute the factorial using the postfix decrement operator (§ 4.5, p. 112) to reduce the value of `val` by 1 on each iteration. The `return` statement ends execution of `fact` and returns the value of `ret`.

### Calling a Function

To call `fact`, we must supply an `int` value. The result of the call is also an `int`:

```
int main()
{
    int j = fact(5); // j equals 120, i.e., the result of fact(5)
    cout << "5! is " << j << endl;
    return 0;
}
```

A function call does two things: It initializes the function's parameters from the corresponding arguments, and it transfers control to that function. Execution of the calling function is suspended and execution of the called function begins.

Execution of a function begins with the (implicit) definition and initialization of its parameters. Thus, when we call `fact`, the first thing that happens is that an `int` variable named `val` is created. This variable is initialized by the argument in the call to `fact`, which in this case is 5.

Execution of a function ends when a `return` statement is encountered. Like a function call, the `return` statement does two things: It returns the value (if any) in the `return`, and it transfers control out of the called function back to the calling function. The value returned by the function is used to initialize the result of the call expression. Execution continues with whatever remains of the expression in which the call appeared. Thus, our call to `fact` is equivalent to the following:

```
int val = 5; // initialize val from the literal 5
int ret = 1; // code from the body of fact
while (val > 1)
    ret *= val--;
int j = ret; // initialize j as a copy of ret
```

## Parameters and Arguments

Arguments are the initializers for a function's parameters. The first argument initializes the first parameter, the second argument initializes the second parameter, and so on. Although we know which argument initializes which parameter, we have no guarantees about the order in which arguments are evaluated (§ 4.1.3, p. 105). The compiler is free to evaluate the arguments in whatever order it prefers.

The type of each argument must match the corresponding parameter in the same way that the type of any initializer must match the type of the object it initializes. We must pass exactly the same number of arguments as the function has parameters. Because every call is guaranteed to pass as many arguments as the function has parameters, parameters are always initialized.

Because `fact` has a single parameter of type `int`, every time we call it we must supply a single argument that can be converted (§ 4.11, p. 121) to `int`:

```
fact("hello"); // error: wrong argument type
fact(); // error: too few arguments
fact(42, 10, 0); // error: too many arguments
fact(3.14); // ok: argument is converted to int
```

The first call fails because there is no conversion from `const char*` to `int`. The second and third calls pass the wrong number of arguments. The `fact` function must be called with one argument; it is an error to call it with any other number. The last call is legal because there is a conversion from `double` to `int`. In this call, the argument is implicitly converted to `int` (through truncation). After the conversion, this call is equivalent to

```
fact(3);
```

## Function Parameter List

A function's parameter list can be empty but cannot be omitted. Typically we define a function with no parameters by writing an empty parameter list. For compatibility with C, we also can use the keyword `void` to indicate that there are no parameters:

```
void f1(){ /* ... */ } // implicit void parameter list
void f2(void){ /* ... */ } // explicit void parameter list
```

A parameter list typically consists of a comma-separated list of parameters, each of which looks like a declaration with a single declarator. Even when the types of two parameters are the same, the type must be repeated:

```
int f3(int v1, v2) { /* ... */ } // error
int f4(int v1, int v2) { /* ... */ } // ok
```

No two parameters can have the same name. Moreover, local variables at the outermost scope of the function may not use the same name as any parameter.

Parameter names are optional. However, there is no way to use an unnamed parameter. Therefore, parameters ordinarily have names. Occasionally a function has a parameter that is not used. Such parameters are often left unnamed, to indicate that they aren't used. Leaving a parameter unnamed doesn't change the number of arguments that a call must supply. A call must supply an argument for every parameter, even if that parameter isn't used.

## Function Return Type

Most types can be used as the return type of a function. In particular, the return type can be `void`, which means that the function does not return a value. However, the return type may not be an array type (§ 3.5, p. 86) or a function type. However, a function may return a pointer to an array or a function. We'll see how to define functions that return pointers (or references) to arrays in § 6.3.3 (p. 174) and how to return pointers to functions in § 6.7 (p. 188).



### Exercises Section 6.1.0

**Exercise 6.1:** What is the difference between a parameter and an argument?

**Exercise 6.2:** Indicate which of the following functions are in error and why. Suggest how you might correct the problems.

- ```
(a) int f() {
    string s;
    // ...
    return s;
}

(b) f2(int i) { /* ... */ }

(c) int calc(int v1, int v1) /* ... */ }

(d) double square(double x) return x * x;
```

**Exercise 6.3:** Write and test your own version of `fact`.

**Exercise 6.4:** Write a function that interacts with the user, asking for a number and generating the factorial of that number. Call this function from `main`.

**Exercise 6.5:** Write a function to return the absolute value of its argument.

#### 6.1.1 Local Objects

In C++, names have scope (§ 2.2.4, p. 37), and objects have **lifetimes**. It is important to understand both of these concepts.

- The scope of a name is the part of the program’s text in which that name is visible.
- The lifetime of an object is the time during the program’s execution that the object exists.

As we’ve seen, the body of a function is a statement block. As usual, the block forms a new scope in which we can define variables. Parameters and variables defined inside a function body are referred to as **local variables**. They are “local” to that function and **hide** declarations of the same name made in an outer scope.

Objects defined outside any function (referred as **global objects**) exist throughout the program’s execution. Such objects are created when the program starts and are not destroyed until the program ends. The lifetime of a local variable depends on how it is defined.

##### Automatic Objects

The objects that correspond to ordinary local variables are created when the function’s control path passes through the variable’s definition. They are destroyed when control passes through the end of the block in which the variable is defined. Objects that exist only while a block is executing are known as **automatic objects**. After execution exits a block, the values of the automatic objects created in that block are undefined.

Parameters are automatic objects. Storage for the parameters is allocated when the function begins. Parameters are defined in the scope of the function body. Hence they are destroyed when the function terminates.

Automatic objects corresponding to the function’s parameters are initialized by the arguments passed to the function. Automatic objects corresponding to local variables are initialized if their definition contains an initializer. Otherwise, they are default initialized (§ 2.2.1, p. 34), which means that uninitialized local variables of built-in type have undefined values.

##### Local static Objects

It can be useful to have a local variable whose lifetime continues across calls to the function. We obtain such objects by defining a local variable as **static**. Each **local static object** is initialized before the first time execution passes through the object’s definition. Local **statics** are not destroyed when a function ends; they are destroyed when the program terminates.

```
size_t count_calls()
{
```

```

    static size_t ctr = 0; // value will persist across calls
    return ++ctr;
}

int main()
{
    for (size_t i = 0; i != 10; ++i)
        cout << count_calls() << endl;
    return 0;
}

```

This program will print the numbers from 1 through 10 inclusive.

Before control flows through the definition of `ctr` for the first time, `ctr` is created and given an initial value of 0. Each call increments `ctr` and returns its new value. Whenever `count_calls` is executed, the variable `ctr` already exists and has whatever value was in that variable the last time the function exited. Thus, on the second invocation, the value of `ctr` is 1, on the third it is 2, and so on.

If a local `static` has no explicit initializer, it is value initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 76), meaning that local `statics` of built-in type are initialized to zero.

### Exercises Section 6.1.1

**Exercise 6.6:** Explain the differences between a parameter, a local variable, and a local `static` variable. Give an example of a function in which each might be useful.

**Exercise 6.7:** Write a function that returns 0 when it is first called and then generates numbers in sequence each time it is called again.

## 6.1.2 Function Declarations

Like any other name, the name of a function must be declared before we can use it. As with variables (§ 2.2.2, p. 35), a function may be defined only once but may be declared multiple times. With one exception that we'll cover in § 15.3 (p. 297), we can declare a function that is not defined so long as we never use that function.

A function declaration is just like a function definition except that a declaration has no function body. In a declaration, a semicolon replaces the function body.

Because a function declaration has no body, there is no need for parameter names. Hence, parameter names are often omitted in a declaration. Although parameter names are not required, they can be used to help users of the function understand what the function does:

```

// parameter names chosen to indicate that the iterators denote a range of values to print
void print(vector<int>::const_iterator beg, vector<int>::const_iterator end);

```

These three elements—the return type, function name, and parameter types—describe the function's interface. They specify all the information we need to call the function. Function declarations are also known as the **function prototype**.

### Function Declarations Go in Header Files

Recall that variables are declared in header files (§ 2.6.3, p. 59) and defined in source files. For the same reasons, functions should be declared in header files and defined in source files.

It may be tempting—and would be legal—to put a function declaration directly in each source file that uses the function. However, doing so is tedious and error-prone. When we use header files for our function declarations, we can ensure that all the declarations for a given function agree. Moreover, if the interface to the function changes, only one declaration has to be changed.

The source file that defines a function should include the header that contains that function's declaration. That way the compiler will verify that the definition and declaration are consistent.



The header that declares a function should be included in the source file that defines that function.

### Exercises Section 6.1.2

**Exercise 6.8:** Write a header file named `Chapter6.h` that contains declarations for the functions you wrote for the exercises in 6.1 (p. 155).

### 6.1.3 Separate Compilation

As our programs get more complicated, we'll want to store the various parts of the program in separate files. For example, we might store the functions we wrote for the exercises in § 6.1 (p. 155) in one file and store code that uses these functions in other source files. To allow programs to be written in logical parts, C++ supports what is commonly known as *separate compilation*. Separate compilation lets us split our programs into several files, each of which can be compiled independently.

#### Compiling and Linking Multiple Source Files

As an example, assume that the definition of our `fact` function is in a file named `fact.cc` and its declaration is in a header file named `Chapter6.h`. Our `fact.cc` file, like any file that uses these functions, will include the `Chapter6.h` header. We'll store a `main` function that calls `fact` in a second file named `factMain.cc`. To produce an *executable file*, we must tell the compiler where to find all of the code we use. We might compile these files as follows:

```
$ CC factMain.cc fact.cc # generates factMain.exe or a.out
$ CC factMain.cc fact.cc -o main # generates main or main.exe
```

Here `CC` is the name of our compiler, `$` is our system prompt, and `#` begins a command-line comment. We can now run the executable file, which will run our `main` function.

If we have changed only one of our source files, we'd like to recompile only the file that actually changed. Most compilers provide a way to separately compile each file. This process usually yields a file with the `.obj` (Windows) or `.o` (UNIX) file extension, indicating that the file contains *object code*.

The compiler lets us *link* object files together to form an executable. On the system we use, we would separately compile our program as follows:

```
$ CC -c factMain.cc # generates factMain.o
$ CC -c fact.cc # generates fact.o
$ CC factMain.o fact.o # generates factMain.exe or a.out
$ CC factMain.o fact.o -o main # generates main or main.exe
```

You'll need to check with your compiler's user's guide to understand how to compile and execute programs made up of multiple source files.

### Exercises Section 6.1.3

**Exercise 6.9:** Write your own versions of the `fact.cc` and `factMain.cc` files. These files should include your `Chapter6.h` from the exercises in the previous section. Use these files to understand how your compiler supports separate compilation.

## 6.2 Argument Passing

As we've seen, each time we call a function, its parameters are created and initialized by the arguments passed in the call.



Parameter initialization works the same way as variable initialization.

As with any other variable, the type of a parameter determines the interaction between the parameter and its argument. If the parameter is a reference (§ 2.3.1, p. 39), then the parameter is bound to its argument. Otherwise, the argument's value is copied.

When a parameter is a reference, we say that its corresponding argument is "*passed by reference*" or that the function is "*called by reference*." As with any other reference, a reference parameter is an alias for the object to which it is bound; that is, the parameter is an alias for its corresponding argument.

When the argument value is copied, the parameter and argument are independent objects. We say such arguments are “**passed by value**” or alternatively that the function is “**called by value**.”

### 6.2.1 Passing Arguments by Value

When we initialize a nonreference type variable, the value of the initializer is copied. Changes made to the variable have no effect on the initializer:

```
int n = 0; // ordinary variable of type int
int i = n; // i is a copy of the value in n
i = 42; // value in i is changed; n is unchanged
```

Passing an argument by value works exactly the same way; nothing the function does to the parameter can affect the argument. For example, inside `fact` (§ 6.1, p. 155) the parameter `val` is decremented:

```
ret *= val--; // decrements the value of val
```

Although `fact` changes the value of `val`, that change has no effect on the argument passed to `fact`. Calling `fact(i)` does not change the value of `i`.

#### Pointer Parameters

Pointers (§ 2.3.2, p. 40) behave like any other nonreference type. When we copy a pointer, the value of the pointer is copied. After the copy, the two pointers are distinct. However, a pointer also gives us indirect access to the object to which that pointer points. We can change the value of that object by assigning through the pointer (§ 2.3.2, p. 41):

```
int n = 0, i = 42;
int *p = &n, *q = &i; // p points to n; q points to i
*p = 42; // value in n is changed; p is unchanged
p = q; // p now points to i; values in i and n are unchanged
```

The same behavior applies to pointer parameters:

```
// function that takes a pointer and sets the pointed-to value to zero
void reset(int *ip)
{
    *ip = 0; // changes the value of the object to which ip points
    ip = 0; // changes only the local copy of ip; the argument is unchanged
}
```

After a call to `reset`, the object to which the argument points will be 0, but the pointer argument itself is unchanged:

```
int i = 42;
reset(&i); // changes i but not the address of i
cout << "i = " << i << endl; // prints i = 0
```



Programmers accustomed to programming in C often use pointer parameters to access objects outside a function. In C++, programmers generally use reference parameters instead.

### Exercises Section 6.2.1

**Exercise 6.10:** Using pointers, write a function to swap the values of two `ints`. Test the function by calling it and printing the swapped values.

### 6.2.2 Passing Arguments by Reference

Recall that operations on a reference are actually operations on the object to which the reference refers (§ 2.3.1, p. 39):

```
int n = 0, i = 42;
int &r = n; // r is bound to n (i.e., r is another name for n)
r = 42; // n is now 42
r = i; // n now has the same value as i
i = r; // i has the same value as n
```

Reference parameters exploit this behavior. They are often used to allow a function to change the value of one or more of its arguments.

As one example, we can rewrite our `reset` program from the previous section to take a reference instead of a pointer:

```
// function that takes a reference to an int and sets the given object to zero
void reset(int &i) // i is just another name for the object passed to reset
{
    i = 0; // changes the value of the object to which i refers
}
```

As with any other reference, a reference parameter is bound directly to the object from which it is initialized. When we call this version of `reset`, `i` will be bound to whatever `int` object we pass. As with any reference, changes made to `i` are made to the object to which `i` refers. In this case, that object is the argument to `reset`.

When we call this version of `reset`, we pass an object directly; there is no need to pass its address:

```
int j = 42;
reset(j); // j is passed by reference; the value in j is changed
cout << "j = " << j << endl; // prints j = 0
```

In this call, the parameter `i` is just another name for `j`. Any use of `i` inside `reset` is a use of `j`.

### Using References to Avoid Copies

It can be inefficient to copy objects of large class types or large containers. Moreover, some class types (including the IO types) cannot be copied. Functions must use reference parameters to operate on objects of a type that cannot be copied.

As an example, we'll write a function to compare the length of two `strings`. Because `strings` can be long, we'd like to avoid copying them, so we'll make our parameters references. Because comparing two `strings` does not involve changing the `strings`, we'll make the parameters references to `const` (§ 2.4.1, p. 47):

```
// compare the length of two strings
bool isShorter(const string &s1, const string &s2)
{
    return s1.size() < s2.size();
}
```

As we'll see in § 6.2.3 (p. 162), functions should use references to `const` for reference parameters they do not need to change.



Reference parameters that are not changed inside a function should be references to `const`.

### Using Reference Parameters to Return Additional Information

A function can return only a single value. However, sometimes a function has more than one value to return. Reference parameters let us effectively return multiple results. As an example, we'll define a function named `find_char` that will return the position of the first occurrence of a given character in a `string`. We'd also like the function to return a count of how many times that character occurs.

How can we define a function that returns a position and an occurrence count? We could define a new type that contains the position and the count. An easier solution is to pass an additional reference argument to hold the occurrence count:

```
// returns the index of the first occurrence of c in s
// the reference parameter occurs counts how often c occurs
string::size_type find_char(const string &s, char c, string::size_type &occurs)
{
    auto ret = s.size(); // position of the first occurrence, if any
```

```

    occurs = 0; // set the occurrence count parameter
    for (decltype(ret) i = 0; i != s.size(); ++i) {
        if (s[i] == c) {
            if (ret == s.size())
                ret = i; // remember the first occurrence of c
            ++occurs; // increment the occurrence count
        }
    }
    return ret; // count is returned implicitly in occurs
}

```

When we call `find_char`, we have to pass three arguments: a string in which to look, the character to look for, and a `size_type` (§ 3.2.2, p. 68) object to hold the occurrence count. Assuming `s` is a `string`, and `ctr` is a `size_type` object, we can call `find_char` as follows:

```
auto index = find_char(s, 'o', ctr);
```

After the call, the value of `ctr` will be the number of times `o` occurs, and `index` will refer to the first occurrence if there is one. Otherwise, `index` will be equal to `s.size()` and `ctr` will be zero.

### Exercises Section 6.2.2

**Exercise 6.11:** Write and test your own version of `reset` that takes a reference.

**Exercise 6.12:** Rewrite the program from exercise 6.10 in § 6.2.1 (p. 160) to use references instead of pointers to swap the value of two ints. Which version do you think would be easier to use and why?

**Exercise 6.13:** Assuming `T` is the name of a type, explain the difference between a function declared as `void f(T)` and `void f(T&)`.

**Exercise 6.14:** Give an example of when a parameter should be a reference type. Give an example of when a parameter should not be a reference.

**Exercise 6.15:** Explain the rationale for the type of each of `find_char`'s parameters. In particular, why is `s` a reference to `const` but `occurs` is a plain reference? Why are these parameters references, but the `char` parameter `c` is not? What would happen if we made `s` a plain reference? What if we made `occurs` a reference to `const`?

### 6.2.3 const Parameters and Arguments

When we use parameters that are `const`, it is important to remember the discussion of top-level `const` from § 2.4.3 (p. 50). As we saw in that section, a top-level `const` is one that applies to the object itself:

```

const int ci = 42; // we cannot change ci; const is top-level
int i = ci; // ok: when we copy ci, its top-level const is ignored
int * const p = &i; // const is top-level; we can't assign to p
*p = 0; // ok: changes through p are allowed; i is now 0

```

Just as in any other initialization, when we copy an argument to initialize a parameter, top-level `const`s are ignored. As a result, top-level `const` on parameters are ignored. We can pass either a `const` or a `nonconst` object to a parameter that has a top-level `const`:

```
void fcn(const int i) { /* fcn can read but not write to i */ }
```

We can call `fcn` passing it either a `const int` or a plain `int`. The fact that top-level `const`s are ignored on a parameter has one possibly surprising implication:

```

void fcn(const int i) { /* fcn can read but not write to i */ }
void fcn(int i) { /* . . . */ } // error: redefines fcn(int)

```

In C++, we can define several different functions that have the same name. However, we can do so only if their parameter lists are sufficiently different. Because top-level `const`s are ignored, we can pass exactly the same types to either version of `fcn`. The second version of `fcn` is an error. Despite appearances, its parameter list doesn't differ from the list in the first version of `fcn`.

### Pointer or Reference Parameters and const

Because parameters are initialized in the same way that variables are initialized, it can be helpful to remember the general initialization rules. We can initialize an object with a low-level `const` from a `nonconst` object but not vice versa, and a plain reference must be initialized from an object of the same type.

```

int i = 42;
const int *cp = &i; // ok: but cp can't change i
const int &r = i; // ok: but r can't change i
const int &r2 = 42; // ok:
int *p = cp; // error: types of p and cp don't match
int &r3 = r; // error: types of r3 and r don't match
int &r4 = 42; // error: can't initialize a plain reference from a literal

```

Exactly the same initialization rules apply to parameter passing:

```

int i = 0;
const int ci = i;
string::size_type ctr = 0;
reset(&i); // calls the version of reset that has an int* parameter
reset(&ci); // error: can't initialize an int* from a pointer to a const int object
reset(i); // calls the version of reset that has an int& parameter
reset(ci); // error: can't bind a plain reference to the const object ci
reset(42); // error: can't bind a plain reference to a literal
reset(ctr); // error: types don't match; ctr has an unsigned type
// ok: find_char's first parameter is a reference to const
find_char("Hello World!", 'o', ctr);

```

We can call the reference version of `reset` (§ 6.2.2, p. 161) only on `int` objects. We cannot pass a literal, an expression that evaluates to an `int`, an object that requires conversion, or a `const int` object. Similarly, we may pass only an `int*` to the pointer version of `reset` (§ 6.2.1, p. 160). On the other hand, we can pass a string literal as the first argument to `find_char` (§ 6.2.2, p. 161). That function's reference parameter is a reference to `const`, and we can initialize references to `const` from literals.

### Use Reference to const When Possible

It is a somewhat common mistake to define parameters that a function does not change as (plain) references. Doing so gives the function's caller the misleading impression that the function might change its argument's value. Moreover, using a reference instead of a reference to `const` unduly limits the type of arguments that can be used with the function. As we've just seen, we cannot pass a `const` object, or a literal, or an object that requires conversion to a plain reference parameter.

The effect of this mistake can be surprisingly pervasive. As an example, consider our `find_char` function from § 6.2.2 (p. 161). That function (correctly) made its `string` parameter a reference to `const`. Had we defined that parameter as a plain `string&`:

```

// bad design: the first parameter should be a const string&
string::size_type find_char(string &s, char c, string::size_type &occurs);

```

we could call `find_char` only on a `string` object. A call such as

```
find_char("Hello World", 'o', ctr);
```

would fail at compile time.

More subtly, we could not use this version of `find_char` from other functions that (correctly) define their parameters as references to `const`. For example, we might want to use `find_char` inside a function that determines whether a `string` represents a sentence:

```

bool is_sentence(const string &s)
{
    // if there's a single period at the end of s, then s is a sentence
    string::size_type ctr = 0;
    return find_char(s, '.', ctr) == s.size() - 1 && ctr == 1;
}

```

If `find_char` took a plain `string&`, then this call to `find_char` would be a compile-time error. The problem is that `s` is a reference to a `const string`, but `find_char` was (incorrectly) defined to take a plain reference.

It might be tempting to try to fix this problem by changing the type of the parameter in `is_sentence`. But that fix only propagates the error—callers of `is_sentence` could pass only nonconst strings.

The right way to fix this problem is to fix the parameter in `find_char`. If it's not possible to change `find_char`, then define a local `string` copy of `s` inside `is_sentence` and pass that `string` to `find_char`.



### Exercises Section 6.2.3

**Exercise 6.16:** The following function, although legal, is less useful than it might be. Identify and correct the limitation on this function:

```
bool is_empty(string& s) { return s.empty(); }
```

**Exercise 6.17:** Write a function to determine whether a `string` contains any capital letters. Write a function to change a `string` to all lowercase. Do the parameters you used in these functions have the same type? If so, why? If not, why not?

**Exercise 6.18:** Write declarations for each of the following functions. When you write these declarations, use the name of the function to indicate what the function does.

- (a) A function named `compare` that returns a `bool` and has two parameters that are references to a class named `matrix`.
- (b) A function named `change_val` that returns a `vector<int>` iterator and takes two parameters: One is an `int` and the other is an iterator for a `vector<int>`.

**Exercise 6.19:** Given the following declarations, determine which calls are legal and which are illegal. For those that are illegal, explain why.

```
double calc(double);
int count(const string &, char);
int sum(vector<int>::iterator, vector<int>::iterator, int);
vector<int> vec(10);
```

- (a) `calc(23.4, 55.1);`
- (b) `count("abcda", 'a');`
- (c) `calc(66);`
- (d) `sum(vec.begin(), vec.end(), 3.8);`

**Exercise 6.20:** When should reference parameters be references to `const`? What happens if we make a parameter a plain reference when it could be a reference to `const`?

### 6.2.4 Array Parameters

Arrays have two special properties that affect how we define and use functions that operate on arrays: We cannot copy an array (§ 3.5.1, p. 87), and when we use an array it is (usually) converted to a pointer (§ 3.5.3, p. 89). Because we cannot copy an array, we cannot pass an array by value. Because arrays are converted to pointers, when we pass an array to a function, we are actually passing a pointer to the array's first element.

Even though we cannot pass an array by value, we can write a parameter that looks like an array:

```
// despite appearances, these three declarations of print are equivalent
// each function has a single parameter of type const int*
void print(const int*);
void print(const int[]); // shows the intent that the function takes an array
void print(const int[10]); // dimension for documentation purposes (at best)
```

Regardless of appearances, these declarations are equivalent: Each declares a function with a single parameter of type `const int*`. When the compiler checks a call to `print`, it checks only that the argument has type `const int*`:

```
int i = 0, j[2] = {0, 1};
print(&i); // ok: &i is int*
print(j); // ok: j is converted to an int* that points to j[0]
```

If we pass an array to `print`, that argument is automatically converted to a pointer to the first element in the array; the size of the array is irrelevant.



As with any code that uses arrays, functions that take array parameters must ensure that all uses of the array stay within the array bounds.

Because arrays are passed as pointers, functions ordinarily don't know the size of the array they are given. They must rely on additional information provided by the caller. There are three common techniques used to manage pointer parameters.

### Using a Marker to Specify the Extent of an Array

The first approach to managing array arguments requires the array itself to contain an end marker. C-style character strings (§ 3.5.4, p. 93) are an example of this approach. C-style strings are stored in character arrays in which the last character of the string is followed by a null character. Functions that deal with C-style strings stop processing the array when they see a null character:

```
void print(const char *cp)
{
    if (cp) // if cp is not a null pointer
        while (*cp) // so long as the character it points to is not a null character
            cout << *cp++; // print the character and advance the pointer
}
```

This convention works well for data where there is an obvious end-marker value (like the null character) that does not appear in ordinary data. It works less well with data, such as `ints`, where every value in the range is a legitimate value.

### Using the Standard Library Conventions

A second technique used to manage array arguments is to pass pointers to the first and one past the last element in the array. This approach is inspired by techniques used in the standard library. We'll learn more about this style of programming in Part II. Using this approach, we'll print the elements in an array as follows:

```
void print(const int *beg, const int *end)
{
    // print every element starting at beg up to but not including end
    while (beg != end)
        cout << *beg++ << endl; // print the current element and advance the pointer
}
```

The `while` uses the dereference and postfix increment operators (§ 4.5, p. 112) to print the current element and advance `beg` one element at a time through the array. The loop stops when `beg` is equal to `end`.

To call this function, we pass two pointers—one to the first element we want to print and one just past the last element:

```
int j[2] = {0, 1};
// j is converted to a pointer to the first element in j
// the second argument is a pointer to one past the end of j
print(begin(j), end(j)); // begin and end functions
```

This function is safe, as long as the caller correctly calculates the pointers. Here we let the library `begin` and `end` functions (§ 3.5.3, p. 90) provide those pointers.

### Explicitly Passing a Size Parameter

A third approach for array arguments, which is common in C programs and older C++ programs, is to define a second parameter that indicates the size of the array. Using this approach, we'll rewrite `print` as follows:

```
// const int ia[] is equivalent to const int* ia
// size is passed explicitly and used to control access to elements of ia
void print(const int ia[], size_t size)
{
    for (size_t i = 0; i != size; ++i) {
        cout << ia[i] << endl;
    }
}
```

This version uses the size parameter to determine how many elements there are to print. When we call `print`, we must pass this additional parameter:

```
int j[] = { 0, 1 }; // int array of size 2
print(j, end(j) - begin(j));
```

The function executes safely as long as the size passed is no greater than the actual size of the array.

### Array Parameters and `const`

Note that all three versions of our `print` function defined their array parameters as pointers to `const`. The discussion in § 6.2.3 (p. 163) applies equally to pointers as to references. When a function does not need write access to the array elements, the array parameter should be a pointer to `const` (§ 2.4.2, p. 48). A parameter should be a plain pointer to a `nonconst` type only if the function needs to change element values.

### Array Reference Parameters

Just as we can define a variable that is a reference to an array (§ 3.5.1, p. 87), we can define a parameter that is a reference to an array. As usual, the reference parameter is bound to the corresponding argument, which in this case is an array:

```
// ok: parameter is a reference to an array; the dimension is part of the type
void print(int (&arr)[10])
{
    for (auto elem : arr)
        cout << elem << endl;
}
```



The parentheses around `&arr` are necessary (§ 3.5.1, p. 87):

```
f(int &arr[10]) // error: declares arr as an array of references
f(int (&arr)[10]) // ok: arr is a reference to an array of ten ints
```

Because the size of an array is part of its type, it is safe to rely on the dimension in the body of the function. However, the fact that the size is part of the type limits the usefulness of this version of `print`. We may call this function only for an array of exactly ten ints:

```
int i = 0, j[2] = {0, 1};
int k[10] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
print(&i); // error: argument is not an array of ten ints
print(j); // error: argument is not an array of ten ints
print(k); // ok: argument is an array of ten ints
```

We'll see in § 16.1.1 (p. 324) how we might write this function in a way that would allow us to pass a reference parameter to an array of any size.

### Passing a Multidimensional Array

Recall that there are no multidimensional arrays in C++ (§ 3.6, p. 95). Instead, what appears to be a multidimensional array is an array of arrays.

As with any array, a multidimensional array is passed as a pointer to its first element (§ 3.6, p. 97). Because we are dealing with an array of arrays, that element is an array, so the pointer is a pointer to an array. The size of the second (and any subsequent) dimension is part of the element type and must be specified:

```
// matrix points to the first element in an array whose elements are arrays of ten ints
void print(int (*matrix)[10], int rowSize) { /* . . . */ }
```

declares `matrix` as a pointer to an array of ten ints.



Again, the parentheses around `*matrix` are necessary:

```
int *matrix[10]; // array of ten pointers
int (*matrix)[10]; // pointer to an array of ten ints
```

We can also define our function using array syntax. As usual, the compiler ignores the first dimension, so it is best not to include it:

```
// equivalent definition
void print(int matrix[][10], int rowSize) { /* . . . */ }
```

declares `matrix` to be what looks like a two-dimensional array. In fact, the parameter is a pointer to an array of ten ints.

### Exercises Section 6.2.4

**Exercise 6.21:** Write a function that takes an `int` and a pointer to an `int` and returns the larger of the `int` value or the value to which the pointer points. What type should you use for the pointer?

**Exercise 6.22:** Write a function to swap two `int` pointers.

**Exercise 6.23:** Write your own versions of each of the `print` functions presented in this section. Call each of these functions to print `i` and `j` defined as follows:

```
int i = 0, j[2] = {0, 1};
```

**Exercise 6.24:** Explain the behavior of the following function. If there are problems in the code, explain what they are and how you might fix them.

```
void print(const int ia[10])
{
    for (size_t i = 0; i != 10; ++i)
        cout << ia[i] << endl;
}
```

### 6.2.5 main: Handling Command-Line Options

It turns out that `main` is a good example of how C++ programs pass arrays to functions. Up to now, we have defined `main` with an empty parameter list:

```
int main() { ... }
```

However, we sometimes need to pass arguments to `main`. The most common use of arguments to `main` is to let the user specify a set of options to guide the operation of the program. For example, assuming our `main` program is in an executable file named `prog`, we might pass options to the program as follows:

```
prog -d -o ofile data0
```

Such command-line options are passed to `main` in two (optional) parameters:

```
int main(int argc, char *argv[]) { ... }
```

The second parameter, `argv`, is an array of pointers to C-style character strings. The first parameter, `argc`, passes the number of strings in that array. Because the second parameter is an array, we might alternatively define `main` as

```
int main(int argc, char **argv) { ... }
```

indicating that `argv` points to a `char*`.

When arguments are passed to `main`, the first element in `argv` points either to the name of the program or to the empty string. Subsequent elements pass the arguments provided on the command line. The element just past the last pointer is guaranteed to be 0.

Given the previous command line, `argc` would be 5, and `argv` would hold the following C-style character strings:

```
argv[0] = "prog"; // or argv[0] might point to an empty string
argv[1] = "-d";
argv[2] = "-o";
argv[3] = "ofile";
argv[4] = "data0";
argv[5] = 0;
```



When you use the arguments in `argv`, remember that the optional arguments begin in `argv[1]`; `argv[0]` contains the program's name, not user input.

### Exercises Section 6.2.5

**Exercise 6.25:** Write a main function that takes two arguments. Concatenate the supplied arguments and print the resulting string.

**Exercise 6.26:** Write a program that accepts the options presented in this section. Print the values of the arguments passed to main.

## 6.2.6 Functions with Varying Parameters

Sometimes we do not know in advance how many arguments we need to pass to a function. For example, we might want to write a routine to print error messages generated from our program. We'd like to use a single function to print these error messages in order to handle them in a uniform way. However, different calls to our error-printing function might pass different arguments, corresponding to different kinds of error messages.

The new standard provides two primary ways to write a function that takes a varying number of arguments: If all the arguments have the same type, we can pass a library type named `initializer_list`. If the argument types vary, we can write a special kind of function, known as a variadic template, which we'll cover in § 16.4 (p. 324).

C++ also has a special parameter type, ellipsis, that can be used to pass a varying number of arguments. We'll look briefly at ellipsis parameters in this section. However, it is worth noting that this facility ordinarily should be used only in programs that need to interface to C functions.

### `initializer_list` Parameters

We can write a function that takes an unknown number of arguments of a single type by using an `initializer_list` parameter. An `initializer_list` is a library type that represents an array (§ 3.5, p. 86) of values of the specified type. This type is defined in the `initializer_list` header. The operations that `initializer_list` provides are listed in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1: Operations on `initializer_lists`

<code>initializer_list&lt;T&gt; lst</code>	Default initialization; an empty list of elements of type T.
<code>initializer_list&lt;T&gt; lst{a,b,c,...}</code>	<code>lst</code> has as many elements as there are initializers; elements are copies of the corresponding initializers. Elements in the list are <code>const</code> .
<code>lst2(lst)</code> <code>lst2=lst</code>	Copying or assigning an <code>initializer_list</code> does not copy the elements in the list. After the copy, the original and the copy share the elements.
<code>lst.size()</code>	Number of elements in the list.
<code>lst.begin()</code>	Return a pointer to the first and
<code>lst.end()</code>	one past element in <code>lst</code> .

Like a `vector` (§ 3.3, p. 74), `initializer_list` is a template type. When we define an `initializer_list`, we must specify the type of the elements that the list will contain:

```
initializer_list<string> ls; // initializer_list of strings
initializer_list<int> li; // initializer_list of ints
```

Unlike `vector`, the elements in an `initializer_list` are always `const` values; there is no way to change the value of an element in an `initializer_list`.

We can write our function to produce error messages from a varying number of arguments as follows:

```
void error_msg(initializer_list<string> il)
{
    for (auto beg = il.begin(); beg != il.end(); ++beg)
        cout << *beg << " ";
    cout << endl;
}
```

The `begin` and `end` operations on `initializer_list` objects are analogous to the corresponding `vector` members (§ 3.4.1, p. 81). The `begin()` member gives us a pointer to the first element in the list, and `end()` is an off-the-end pointer one past the last element. Our function initializes `beg` to denote the first element and

iterates through each element in the `initializer_list`. In the body of the loop we dereference `beg` in order to access the current element and print its value.

When we pass a sequence of values to an `initializer_list` parameter, we must enclose the sequence in curly braces:

```
// expected, actual are strings
if (expected != actual)
    error_msg({"functionX", expected, actual});
else
    error_msg({"functionX", "okay"});
```

Here we're calling the same function, `error_msg`, passing three values in the first call and two values in the second.

A function with an `initializer_list` parameter can have other parameters as well. For example, our debugging system might have a class, named `ErrCode`, that represents various kinds of errors. We can revise our program to take an `ErrCode` in addition to an `initializer_list` as follows:

```
void error_msg(ErrCode e, initializer_list<string> il)
{
    cout << e.msg() << ": ";
    for (const auto &elem : il)
        cout << elem << " ";
    cout << endl;
}
```

Because `initializer_list` has `begin` and `end` members, we can use a range `for` (§ 5.4.3, p. 143) to process the elements. This program, like our previous version, iterates an element at a time through the braced list of values passed to the `il` parameter.

To call this version, we need to revise our calls to pass an `ErrCode` argument:

```
if (expected != actual)
    error_msg(ErrCode(42), {"functionX", expected, actual});
else
    error_msg(ErrCode(0), {"functionX", "okay"});
```

## Ellipsis Parameters

Ellipsis parameters are in C++ to allow programs to interface to C code that uses a C library facility named `varargs`. Generally an ellipsis parameter should not be used for other purposes. Your C compiler documentation will describe how to use `varargs`.



Ellipsis parameters should be used only for types that are common to both C and C++. In particular, objects of most class types are not copied properly when passed to an ellipsis parameter.

An ellipsis parameter may appear only as the last element in a parameter list and may take either of two forms:

```
void foo(parm_list, ...);
void foo(...);
```

The first form specifies the type(s) for some of `foo`'s parameters. Arguments that correspond to the specified parameters are type checked as usual. No type checking is done for the arguments that correspond to the ellipsis parameter. In this first form, the comma following the parameter declarations is optional.

### Exercises Section 6.2.6

**Exercise 6.27:** Write a function that takes an `initializer_list<int>` and produces the sum of the elements in the list.

**Exercise 6.28:** In the second version of `error_msg` that has an `ErrCode` parameter, what is the type of `elem` in the `for` loop?

**Exercise 6.29:** When you use an `initializer_list` in a range `for` would you ever use a reference as the loop control variable? If so, why? If not, why not?

## 6.3 Return Types and the return Statement

A **return** statement terminates the function that is currently executing and returns control to the point from which the function was called. There are two forms of **return** statements:

```
return;
return expression;
```

### 6.3.1 Functions with No Return Value

A **return** with no value may be used only in a function that has a return type of **void**. Functions that return **void** are not required to contain a **return**. In a **void** function, an implicit **return** takes place after the function's last statement.

Typically, **void** functions use a **return** to exit the function at an intermediate point. This use of **return** is analogous to the use of a **break** statement (§ 5.5.1, p. 145) to exit a loop. For example, we can write a **swap** function that does no work if the values are identical:

```
void swap(int &v1, int &v2)
{
    // if the values are already the same, no need to swap, just return
    if (v1 == v2)
        return;
    // if we're here, there's work to do
    int tmp = v2;
    v2 = v1;
    v1 = tmp;
    // no explicit return necessary
}
```

This function first checks if the values are equal and, if so, exits the function. If the values are unequal, the function swaps them. An implicit return occurs after the last assignment statement.

A function with a **void** return type may use the second form of the **return** statement only to return the result of calling another function that returns **void**. Returning any other expression from a **void** function is a compile-time error.

### 6.3.2 Functions That Return a Value

The second form of the **return** statement provides the function's result. Every return in a function with a return type other than **void** must return a value. The value returned must have the same type as the function return type, or it must have a type that can be implicitly converted (§ 4.11, p. 121) to that type.

Although C++ cannot guarantee the correctness of a result, it can guarantee that every **return** includes a result of the appropriate type. Although it cannot do so in all cases, the compiler attempts to ensure that functions that return a value are exited only through a valid **return** statement. For example:

```
// incorrect return values, this code will not compile
bool str_subrange(const string &str1, const string &str2)
{
    // same sizes: return normal equality test
    if (str1.size() == str2.size())
        return str1 == str2; // ok: == returns bool
    // find the size of the smaller string; conditional operator
    auto size = (str1.size() < str2.size()) ? str1.size() : str2.size();
    // look at each element up to the size of the smaller string
    for (decltype(size) i = 0; i != size; ++i) {
        if (str1[i] != str2[i])
            return; // error #1: no return value; compiler should detect this error
    }
    // error #2: control might flow off the end of the function without a return
    // the compiler might not detect this error
}
```

The **return** from within the **for** loop is an error because it fails to return a value. The compiler should detect this error.



The second error occurs because the function fails to provide a `return` after the loop. If we call this function with one `string` that is a subset of the other, execution would fall out of the `for`. There should be a return to handle this case. The compiler may or may not detect this error. If it does not detect the error, what happens at run time is undefined.



Failing to provide a `return` after a loop that contains a `return` is an error. However, many compilers will not detect such errors.

## How Values Are Returned

Values are returned in exactly the same way as variables and parameters are initialized: The return value is used to initialize a temporary at the call site, and that temporary is the result of the function call.

It is important to keep in mind the initialization rules in functions that return local variables. As an example, we might write a function that, given a counter, a word, and an ending, gives us back the plural version of the word if the counter is greater than 1:

```
// return the plural version of word if ctr is greater than 1
string make_plural(size_t ctr, const string &word, const string &ending)
{
    return (ctr > 1) ? word + ending : word;
}
```

The return type of this function is `string`, which means the return value is copied to the call site. This function returns a copy of `word`, or it returns an unnamed temporary `string` that results from adding `word` and `ending`.

As with any other reference, when a function returns a reference, that reference is just another name for the object to which it refers. As an example, consider a function that returns a reference to the shorter of its two `string` parameters:

```
// return a reference to the shorter of two strings
const string &shorterString(const string &s1, const string &s2)
{
    return s1.size() <= s2.size() ? s1 : s2;
}
```

The parameters and return type are references to `const string`. The strings are not copied when the function is called or when the result is returned.

## Never Return a Reference or Pointer to a Local Object

When a function completes, its storage is freed (§ 6.1.1, p. 157). After a function terminates, references to local objects refer to memory that is no longer valid:

```
// disaster: this function returns a reference to a local object
const string &manip()
{
    string ret;
    // transform ret in some way
    if (!ret.empty())
        return ret; // WRONG: returning a reference to a local object!
    else
        return "Empty"; // WRONG: "Empty" is a local temporary string
}
```

Both of these `return` statements return an undefined value—what happens if we try to use the value returned from `manip` is undefined. In the first return, it should be obvious that the function returns a reference to a local object. In the second case, the string literal is converted to a local temporary string object. That object, like the `string` named `s`, is local to `manip`. The storage in which the temporary resides is freed when the function ends. Both `returns` refer to memory that is no longer available.



One good way to ensure that the return is safe is to ask: To what preexisting object is the reference referring?

For the same reasons that it is wrong to return a reference to a local object, it is also wrong to return a pointer to a local object. Once the function completes, the local objects are freed. The pointer would point to a nonexistent object.

### Functions That Return Class Types and the Call Operator

Like any operator the call operator has associativity and precedence (§ 4.1.2, p. 104). The call operator has the same precedence as the dot and arrow operators (§ 4.6, p. 114). Like those operators, the call operator is left associative. As a result, if a function returns a pointer, reference or object of class type, we can use the result of a call to call a member of the resulting object.

For example, we can determine the size of the shorter `string` as follows

```
// call the size member of the string returned by shorterString
auto sz = shorterString(s1, s2).size();
```

Because these operators are left associative, the result of `shorterString` is the lefthand operand of the dot operator. That operator fetches the `size` member of that `string`. That member is the left-hand operand of the second call operator.

### Reference Returns Are Lvalues

Whether a function call is an lvalue (§ 4.1.1, p. 103) depends on the return type of the function. Calls to functions that return references are lvalues; other return types yield rvalues. A call to a function that returns a reference can be used in the same ways as any other lvalue. In particular, we can assign to the result of a function that returns a reference to `nonconst`:

```
char &get_val(string &str, string::size_type ix)
{
    return str[ix]; // get_val assumes the given index is valid
}
int main()
{
    string s("a value");
    cout << s << endl; // prints a value
    get_val(s, 0) = 'A'; // changes s[0] to A
    cout << s << endl; // prints A value
    return 0;
}
```

It may be surprising to see a function call on the left-hand side of an assignment. However, nothing special is involved. The return value is a reference, so the call is an lvalue. Like any other lvalue, it may appear as the left-hand operand of the assignment operator.

If the return type is a reference to `const`, then (as usual) we may not assign to the result of the call:

```
shorterString("hi", "bye") = "X"; // error: return value is const
```

### List Initializing the Return Value

Under the new standard, functions can return a braced list of values. As in any other return, the list is used to initialize the temporary that represents the function's return. If the list is empty, that temporary is value initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 76). Otherwise, the value of the return depends on the function's return type.

As an example, recall the `error_msg` function from § ??p. ?? . That function took a varying number of `string` arguments and printed an error message composed from the given `strings`. Rather than calling `error_msg`, in this function we'll return a `vector` that holds the error-message `strings`:

```
vector<string> process()
{
    // . . .
    // expected and actual are strings
    if (expected.empty())
        return {}; // return an empty vector
    else if (expected == actual)
        return {"functionX", "okay"}; // return list-initialized vector
```

```

    else
        return {"functionX", expected, actual};
}

```

In the first return statement, we return an empty list. In this case, the `vector` that `process` returns will be empty. Otherwise, we return a `vector` initialized with two or three elements depending on whether `expected` and `actual` are equal.

In a function that returns a built-in type, a braced list may contain at most one value, and that value must not require a narrowing conversion (§ 2.2.1, p. 33). If the function returns a class type, then the class itself defines how the initializers are used (§ 3.3.1, p. 76).

### Return from main

There is one exception to the rule that a function with a return type other than `void` must return a value: The `main` function is allowed to terminate without a return. If control reaches the end of `main` and there is no return, then the compiler implicitly inserts a return of 0.

As we saw in § 1.1 (p. 2), the value returned from `main` is treated as a status indicator. A zero return indicates success; most other values indicate failure. A nonzero value has a machine-dependent meaning. To make return values machine independent, the `cstdlib` header defines two preprocessor variables (§ 2.3.2, p. 41) that we can use to indicate success or failure:

```

int main()
{
    if (some_failure)
        return EXIT_FAILURE; // defined in cstdlib
    else
        return EXIT_SUCCESS; // defined in cstdlib
}

```

Because these are preprocessor variables, we must not precede them with `std::`, nor may we mention them in `using` declarations.

### Recursion

A function that calls itself, either directly or indirectly, is a *recursive function*. As an example, we can rewrite our factorial function to use recursion:

```

// calculate val!, which is 1 * 2 * 3 . . . * val
int factorial(int val)
{
    if (val > 1)
        return factorial(val-1) * val;
    return 1;
}

```

In this implementation, we recursively call `factorial` to compute the factorial of the numbers counting down from the original value in `val`. Once we have reduced `val` to 1, we stop the recursion by returning 1.

There must always be a path through a recursive function that does not involve a recursive call; otherwise, the function will recurse “forever,” meaning that the function will continue to call itself until the program stack is exhausted. Such functions are sometimes described as containing a **recursion loop**. In the case of `factorial`, the stopping condition occurs when `val` is 1.

The following table traces the execution of `factorial` when passed the value 5.

Trace of `factorial(5)`

Call	Returns	Value
<code>factorial(5)</code>	<code>factorial(4)*5</code>	120
<code>factorial(4)</code>	<code>factorial(3)*4</code>	24
<code>factorial(3)</code>	<code>factorial(2)*3</code>	6
<code>factorial(2)</code>	<code>factorial(1)*2</code>	2
<code>factorial(1)</code>	1	1



The `main` function may not call itself.

### Exercises Section 6.3.2

**Exercise 6.30:** Compile the version of `str_subrange` as presented on page 170 to see what your compiler does with the indicated errors.

**Exercise 6.31:** When is it valid to return a reference? A reference to `const`?

**Exercise 6.32:** Indicate whether the following function is legal. If so, explain what it does; if not, correct any errors and then explain it.

```
int &get(int *array, int index) { return array[index]; }
int main() {
    int ia[10];
    for (int i = 0; i != 10; ++i)
        get(ia, i) = i;
}
```

**Exercise 6.33:** Write a recursive function to print the contents of a vector.

**Exercise 6.34:** What would happen if the stopping condition in `factorial` were

```
if (val != 0)
```

**Exercise 6.35:** In the call to `factorial`, why did we pass `val - 1` rather than `val--`?

### 6.3.3 Returning a Pointer to an Array

Because we cannot copy an array, a function cannot return an array. However, a function can return a pointer or a reference to an array (§ 3.5.1, p. 87). Unfortunately, the syntax used to define functions that return pointers or references to arrays can be intimidating. Fortunately, there are ways to simplify such declarations. The most straightforward way is to use a type alias (§ 2.5.1, p. 53):

```
typedef int arrT[10]; // arrT is a synonym for the type array of ten ints
using arrtT = int[10]; // equivalent declaration of arrT
arrT* func(int i); // func returns a pointer to an array of ten ints
```

Here `arrT` is a synonym for an array of ten `ints`. Because we cannot return an array, we define the return type as a pointer to this type. Thus, `func` is a function that takes a single `int` argument and returns a pointer to an array of ten `ints`.

#### Declaring a Function That Returns a Pointer to an Array

To declare `func` without using a type alias, we must remember that the dimension of an array follows the name being defined:

```
int arr[10]; // arr is an array of ten ints
int *p1[10]; // p1 is an array of ten pointers
int (*p2)[10] = &arr; // p2 points to an array of ten ints
```

As with these declarations, if we want to define a function that returns a pointer to an array, the dimension must follow the function's name. However, a function includes a parameter list, which also follows the name. The parameter list precedes the dimension. Hence, the form of a function that returns a pointer to an array is:

```
Type (*function(parameter_list))[dimension]
```

As in any other array declaration, `Type` is the type of the elements and `dimension` is the size of the array. The parentheses around `(*function (parameter_list))` are necessary for the same reason that they were required when we defined `p2`. Without them, we would be defining a function that returns an array of pointers.

As a concrete example, the following declares `func` without using a type alias:

```
int (*func(int i))[10];
```

To understand this declaration, it can be helpful to think about it as follows:

- `func(int)` says that we can call `func` with an `int` argument.

- `(*func(int))` says we can dereference the result of that call.
- `(*func(int))[10]` says that dereferencing the result of a call to `func` yields an array of size ten.
- `int (*func(int))[10]` says the element type in that array is `int`.

### Using a Trailing Return Type

Under the new standard, another way to simplify the declaration of `func` is by using a **trailing return type**. Trailing returns can be defined for any function, but are most useful for functions with complicated return types, such as pointers (or references) to arrays. A trailing return type follows the parameter list and is preceded by `->`. To signal that the return follows the parameter list, we use `auto` where the return type ordinarily appears:

```
// fcn takes an int argument and returns a pointer to an array of ten ints
auto func(int i) -> int(*)[10];
```

Because the return type comes after the parameter list, it is easier to see that `func` returns a pointer and that that pointer points to an array of ten `ints`.

### Using decltype

As another alternative, if we know the array(s) to which our function can return a pointer, we can use `decltype` to declare the return type. For example, the following function returns a pointer to one of two arrays, depending on the value of its parameter:

```
int odd[] = {1,3,5,7,9};
int even[] = {0,2,4,6,8};
// returns a pointer to an array of five int elements
decltype(odd) *arrPtr(int i)
{
    return (i % 2) ? &odd : &even; // returns a pointer to the array
}
```

The return type for `arrPtr` uses `decltype` to say that the function returns a pointer to whatever type `odd` has. That object is an array, so `arrPtr` returns a pointer to an array of five `ints`. The only tricky part is that we must remember that `decltype` does not automatically convert an array to its corresponding pointer type. The type returned by `decltype` is an array type, to which we must add a `*` to indicate that `arrPtr` returns a pointer.

#### Exercises Section 6.3.3

**Exercise 6.36:** Write the declaration for a function that returns a reference to an array of ten `strings`, without using either a trailing return, `decltype`, or a type alias.

**Exercise 6.37:** Write three additional declarations for the function in the previous exercise. One should use a type alias, one should use a trailing return, and the third should use `decltype`. Which form do you prefer and why?

**Exercise 6.38:** Revise the `arrPtr` function on to return a reference to the array.

## 6.4 Overloaded Functions

Functions that have the same name but different parameter lists and that appear in the same scope are **overloaded**. For example, in § 6.2.4 (p. 164) we defined several functions named `print`:

```
void print(const char *cp);
void print(const int *beg, const int *end);
void print(const int ia[], size_t size);
```

These functions perform the same general action but apply to different parameter types. When we call these functions, the compiler can deduce which function we want based on the argument type we pass:

```
int j[2] = {0,1};
print("Hello World"); // calls print(const char*)
print(j, end(j) - begin(j)); // calls print(const int*, size_t)
print(begin(j), end(j)); // calls print(const int*, const int*)
```

Function overloading eliminates the need to invent—and remember—names that exist only to help the compiler figure out which function to call.



The `main` function may not be overloaded.

## Defining Overloaded Functions

Consider a database application with several functions to find a record based on name, phone number, account number, and so on. Function overloading lets us define a collection of functions, each named `lookup`, that differ in terms of how they do the search. We can call `lookup` passing a value of any of several types:

```
Record lookup(const Account&); // find by Account
Record lookup(const Phone&);  // find by Phone
Record lookup(const Name&);   // find by Name

Account acct;
Phone phone;
Record r1 = lookup(acct); // call version that takes an Account
Record r2 = lookup(phone); // call version that takes a Phone
```

Here, all three functions share the same name, yet they are three distinct functions. The compiler uses the argument type(s) to figure out which function to call.

Overloaded functions must differ in the number or the type(s) of their parameters. Each of the functions above takes a single parameter, but the parameters have different types.

It is an error for two functions to differ only in terms of their return types. If the parameter lists of two functions match but the return types differ, then the second declaration is an error:

```
Record lookup(const Account&);
bool lookup(const Account&); // error: only the return type is different
```

## Determining Whether Two Parameter Types Differ

Two parameter lists can be identical, even if they don't look the same:

```
// each pair declares the same function
Record lookup(const Account &acct);
Record lookup(const Account&); // parameter names are ignored

typedef Phone Telno;
Record lookup(const Phone&);
Record lookup(const Telno&); // Telno and Phone are the same type
```

In the first pair, the first declaration names its parameter. Parameter names are only a documentation aid. They do not change the parameter list.

In the second pair, it looks like the types are different, but `Telno` is not a new type; it is a synonym for `Phone`. A type alias (§ 2.5.1, p. 53) provides an alternative name for an existing type; it does not create a new type. Therefore, two parameters that differ only in that one uses an alias and the other uses the type to which the alias corresponds are not different.

## Overloading and `const` Parameters

As we saw in § 6.2.3 (p. 162), top-level `const` (§ 2.4.3, p. 50) has no effect on the objects that can be passed to the function. A parameter that has a top-level `const` is indistinguishable from one without a top-level `const`:

```
Record lookup(Phone);
Record lookup(const Phone); // redeclares Record lookup(Phone)

Record lookup(Phone*);
Record lookup(Phone* const); // redeclares Record lookup(Phone*)
```

In these declarations, the second declaration declares the same function as the first.

On the other hand, we can overload based on whether the parameter is a reference (or pointer) to the `const` or `nonconst` version of a given type; such `consts` are low-level:

```
// functions taking const and nonconst references or pointers have different parameters
// declarations for four independent, overloaded functions
Record lookup(Account&); // function that takes a reference to Account
Record lookup(const Account&); // new function that takes a const reference
Record lookup(Account*); // new function, takes a pointer to Account
Record lookup(const Account*); // new function, takes a pointer to const
```

In these cases, the compiler can use the `const`ness of the argument to distinguish which function to call. Because there is no conversion (§ 4.11.2, p. 123) from `const` to `nonconst`, we can pass a `const` object (or a pointer to `const`) only to the version with a `const` parameter. Because there is a conversion from `nonconst` to `const`, we can call either function on a `nonconst` object or a pointer to `nonconst`. However, as we'll see in § 6.6.1 (p. 187), the compiler will prefer the `nonconst` versions when we pass a `nonconst` object or pointer to `nonconst`.

#### Advice: When Not to Overload a Function Name

Although overloading lets us avoid having to invent (and remember) names for common operations, we should only overload operations that actually do similar things. There are some cases where providing different function names adds information that makes the program easier to understand. Consider a set of functions that move the cursor on a `Screen`.

```
Screen& moveHome();
Screen& moveAbs(int, int);
Screen& moveRel(int, int, string direction);
```

It might at first seem better to overload this set of functions under the name `move`:

```
Screen& move();
Screen& move(int, int);
Screen& move(int, int, string direction);
```

However, by overloading these functions, we've lost information that was inherent in the function names. Although cursor movement is a general operation shared by all these functions, the specific nature of that movement is unique to each of these functions. `moveHome`, for example, represents a special instance of cursor movement. Whether to overload these functions depends on which of these two calls is easier to understand:

```
// which is easier to understand?
myScreen.moveHome(); // we think this one!
myScreen.move();
```

#### `const_cast` and Overloading

In § 4.11.3 (p. 124) we noted that `const_cast`s are most useful in the context of overloaded functions. As one example, recall our `shorterString` function from § 6.3.2 (p. 171):

```
// return a reference to the shorter of two strings
const string &shorterString(const string &s1, const string &s2)
{
    return s1.size() <= s2.size() ? s1 : s2;
}
```

This function takes and returns references to `const string`. We can call the function on a pair of `nonconst string` arguments, but we'll get a reference to a `const string` as the result. We might want to have a version of `shorterString` that, when given `nonconst` arguments, would yield a plain reference. We can write this version of our function using a `const_cast`:

```
string &shorterString(string &s1, string &s2)
{
    auto &r = shorterString(const_cast<const string&>(s1), const_cast<const string&>(s2));
    return const_cast<string&>(r);
}
```

This version calls the `const` version of `shorterString` by casting its arguments to references to `const`. That function returns a reference to a `const string`, which we know is bound to one of our original, `nonconst` arguments. Therefore, we know it is safe to cast that `string` back to a plain `string&` in the return.



## Calling an Overloaded Function

Once we have defined a set of overloaded functions, we need to be able to call them with appropriate arguments. **Function matching** (also known as **overload resolution**) is the process by which a particular function call is associated with a specific function from a set of overloaded functions. The compiler determines which function to call by comparing the arguments in the call with the parameters offered by each function in the overload set.

In many—probably most—cases, it is straightforward for a programmer to determine whether a particular call is legal and, if so, which function will be called. Often the functions in the overload set differ in terms of the number of arguments, or the types of the arguments are unrelated. In such cases, it is easy to determine which function is called. Determining which function is called when the overloaded functions have the same number of parameters and those parameters are related by conversions (§ 4.11, p. 121) can be less obvious. We'll look at how the compiler resolves calls involving conversions in § 6.6 (p. 184).

For now, what's important to realize is that for any given call to an overloaded function, there are three possible outcomes:

- The compiler finds exactly one function that is a **best match** for the actual arguments and generates code to call that function.
- There is no function with parameters that match the arguments in the call, in which case the compiler issues an error message that there was **no match**.
- There is more than one function that matches and none of the matches is clearly best. This case is also an error; it is an **ambiguous call**.

### Exercises Section 6.4.0

**Exercise 6.39:** Explain the effect of the second declaration in each one of the following sets of declarations. Indicate which, if any, are illegal.

- (a) `int calc(int, int);`  
`int calc(const int, const int);`
- (b) `int get();`  
`double get();`
- (c) `int *reset(int *);`  
`double *reset(double *);`

## 6.4.1 Overloading and Scope



Ordinarily, it is a bad idea to declare a function locally. However, to explain how scope interacts with overloading, we will violate this practice and use local function declarations.

Programmers new to C++ are often confused about the interaction between scope and overloading. However, overloading has no special properties with respect to scope: As usual, if we declare a name in an inner scope, that name hides uses of that name declared in an outer scope. Names do not overload across scopes:

```
string read();
void print(const string &);
void print(double); // overloads the print function
void fooBar(int ival)
{
    bool read = false; // new scope: hides the outer declaration of read
    string s = read(); // error: read is a bool variable, not a function
    // bad practice: usually it's a bad idea to declare functions at local scope
    void print(int); // new scope: hides previous instances of print
    print("Value: "); // error: print(const string &) is hidden
```

```

    print(ival); // ok: print(int) is visible
    print(3.14); // ok: calls print(int); print(double) is hidden
}

```

Most readers will not be surprised that the call to `read` is in error. When the compiler processes the call to `read`, it finds the local definition of `read`. That name is a `bool` variable, and we cannot call a `bool`. Hence, the call is illegal.

Exactly the same process is used to resolve the calls to `print`. The declaration of `print(int)` in `fooBar` hides the earlier declarations of `print`. It is as if there is only one `print` function available: the one that takes a single `int` parameter.

When we call `print`, the compiler first looks for a declaration of that name. It finds the local declaration for `print` that takes an `int`. Once a name is found, the compiler ignores uses of that name in any outer scope. Instead, the compiler assumes that the declaration it found is the one for the name we are using. What remains is to see if the use of the name is valid.



In C++, name lookup happens before type checking.

The first call passes a string literal, but the only declaration for `print` that is in scope has a parameter that is an `int`. A string literal cannot be converted to an `int`, so this call is an error. The `print(const string&)` function, which would have matched this call, is hidden and is not considered.

When we call `print` passing a `double`, the process is repeated. The compiler finds the local definition of `print(int)`. The `double` argument can be converted to an `int`, so the call is legal.

Had we declared `print(int)` in the same scope as the other `print` functions, then it would be another overloaded version of `print`. In that case, these calls would be resolved differently, because the compiler will see all three functions:

```

void print(const string &);
void print(double); // overloads the print function
void print(int); // another overloaded instance

void fooBar2(int ival)
{
    print("Value: "); // calls print(const string &)
    print(ival); // calls print(int)
    print(3.14); // calls print(double)
}

```

## 6.5 Features for Specialized Uses

In this section we'll cover three function-related features that are useful in many, but not all, programs: default arguments, `inline` and `constexpr` functions, and some facilities that are often used during debugging.

### 6.5.1 Default Arguments

Some functions have parameters that are given a particular value in most, but not all, calls. In such cases, we can declare that common value as a default argument for the function. Functions with default arguments can be called with or without that argument.

For example, we might use a `string` to represent the contents of a window. By default, we might want the window to have a particular height, width, and background character. However, we might also want to allow users to pass values other than the defaults. To accommodate both default and specified values we would declare our function to define the window as follows:

```

typedef string::size_type sz;
string screen(sz ht = 24, sz wid = 80, char backgrnd = ' ');

```

#### Calling Functions with Default Arguments

If we want to use the default argument, we omit that argument when we call the function. Because `screen` provides defaults for all of its parameters, we can call `screen` with zero, one, two, or three arguments:

```
string window;
window = screen(); // equivalent to screen(24,80,' ')
window = screen(66); // equivalent to screen(66,80,' ')
window = screen(66, 256); // screen(66,256,' ')
window = screen(66, 256, '#'); // screen(66,256,'#')
```

Arguments in the call are resolved by position. The default arguments are used for the trailing (right-most) arguments of a call. For example, to override the default for `background`, we must also supply arguments for `height` and `width`:

```
window = screen(, , '?'); // error: can omit only trailing arguments
window = screen('?'); // calls screen('?',80,' ')
```

Note that the second call, which passes a single character value, is legal. Although legal, it is unlikely to be what was intended. The call is legal because `'?'` is a `char`, and a `char` can be converted (§ 4.11.1, p. 121) to the type of the left-most parameter. That parameter is `string::size_type`, which is an unsigned integral type. In this call, the `char` argument is implicitly converted to `string::size_type`, and is passed as the argument to `height`. On our machine, `'?'` has the hexadecimal value `0x3F`, which is decimal 63. Thus, this call passes 63 to the `height` parameter.

Part of the work of designing a function with default arguments is ordering the parameters so that those least likely to use a default value appear first and those most likely to use a default appear last.

### Default Argument Declarations

Although it is normal practice to declare a function once inside a header, it is legal to redeclare a function multiple times. However, each parameter can have its default specified only once in a given scope. Thus, any subsequent declaration can add a default only for a parameter that has not previously had a default specified. As usual, defaults can be specified only if all parameters to the right already have defaults. For example, given

```
// no default for the height or width parameters
string screen(sz, sz, char = ' ');
```

we cannot change an already declared default value:

```
string screen(sz, sz, char = '*'); // error: redeclaration
```

but we can add a default argument as follows:

```
string screen(sz = 24, sz = 80, char); // ok: adds default arguments
```



Default arguments ordinarily should be specified with the function declaration in an appropriate header.

### Default Argument Initializers

Local variables may not be used as a default argument. Excepting that restriction, a default argument can be any expression that has a type that is convertible to the type of the parameter:

```
// the declarations of wd, def, and ht must appear outside a function
sz wd = 80;
char def = ' ';
sz ht();
string screen(sz = ht(), sz = wd, char = def);
string window = screen(); // calls screen(ht(), 80, ' ')
```

Names used as default arguments are resolved in the scope of the function declaration. The value that those names represent is evaluated at the time of the call:

```
void f2()
{
    def = '*'; // changes the value of a default argument
    sz wd = 100; // hides the outer definition of wd but does not change the default
    window = screen(); // calls screen(ht(), 80, '*')
}
```

Inside `f2`, we changed the value of `def`. The call to `screen` passes this updated value. Our function also declared a local variable that hides the outer `wd`. However, the local named `wd` is unrelated to the default argument passed to `screen`.

### Exercises Section 6.5.1

**Exercise 6.40:** Which, if either, of the following declarations are errors? Why?

- (a) `int ff(int a, int b = 0, int c = 0);`
- (b) `char *init(int ht = 24, int wd, char bckgrnd);`

**Exercise 6.41:** Which, if any, of the following calls are illegal? Why? Which, if any, are legal but unlikely to match the programmer's intent? Why?

```
char *init(int ht, int wd = 80, char bckgrnd = ' ');
```

- (a) `init();`
- (b) `init(24,10);`
- (c) `init(14, '*');`

**Exercise 6.42:** Give the second parameter of `make_plural` (§ 6.3.2, p. 171) a default argument of `'s'`. Test your program by printing singular and plural versions of the words `success` and `failure`.

### 6.5.2 Inline and constexpr Functions

In § 6.3.2 (p. 171) we wrote a small function that returned a reference to the shorter of its two string parameters. The benefits of defining a function for such a small operation include the following:

- It is easier to read and understand a call to `shorterString` than it would be to read and understand the equivalent conditional expression.
- Using a function ensures uniform behavior. Each test is guaranteed to be done the same way.
- If we need to change the computation, it is easier to change the function than to find and change every occurrence of the equivalent expression.
- The function can be reused rather than rewritten for other applications.

There is, however, one potential drawback to making `shorterString` a function: Calling a function is apt to be slower than evaluating the equivalent expression. On most machines, a function call does a lot of work: Registers are saved before the call and restored after the return; arguments may be copied; and the program branches to a new location.

#### inline Functions Avoid Function Call Overhead

A function specified as **inline** (usually) is expanded “in line” at each call. If `shorterString` were defined as **inline**, then this call

```
cout << shorterString(s1, s2) << endl;
```

(probably) would be expanded during compilation into something like

```
cout << (s1.size() < s2.size() ? s1 : s2) << endl;
```

The run-time overhead of making `shorterString` a function is thus removed.

We can define `shorterString` as an **inline** function by putting the keyword **inline** before the function's return type:

```
// inline version: find the shorter of two strings
inline const string &shorterString(const string &s1, const string &s2)
{
    return s1.size() <= s2.size() ? s1 : s2;
}
```



The `inline` specification is only a request to the compiler. The compiler may choose to ignore this request.

In general, the `inline` mechanism is meant to optimize small, straight-line functions that are called frequently. Many compilers will not inline a recursive function. A 75-line function will almost surely not be expanded inline.

### constexpr Functions

A **constexpr function** is a function that can be used in a constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51). A `constexpr` function is defined like any other function but must meet certain restrictions: The `return` type and the type of each parameter in a must be a literal type (§ 2.4.4, p. 52), and the function body must contain exactly one `return` statement:

```
constexpr int new_sz() { return 42; }
constexpr int foo = new_sz(); // ok: foo is a constant expression
```

Here we defined `new_sz` as a `constexpr` that takes no arguments. The compiler can verify—at compile time—that a call to `new_sz` returns a constant expression, so we can use `new_sz` to initialize our `constexpr` variable, `foo`.

When it can do so, the compiler will replace a call to a `constexpr` function with its resulting value. In order to be able to expand the function immediately, `constexpr` functions are implicitly `inline`.

A `constexpr` function body may contain other statements so long as those statements generate no actions at run time. For example, a `constexpr` function may contain null statements, type aliases (§ 2.5.1, p. 53), and `using` declarations.

A `constexpr` function is permitted to return a value that is not a constant:

```
// scale(arg) is a constant expression if arg is a constant expression
constexpr size_t scale(size_t cnt) { return new_sz() * cnt; }
```

The `scale` function will return a constant expression if its argument is a constant expression but not otherwise:

```
int arr[scale(2)]; // ok: scale(2) is a constant expression
int i = 2; // i is not a constant expression
int a2[scale(i)]; // error: scale(i) is not a constant expression
```

When we pass a constant expression—such as the literal 2—then the return is a constant expression. In this case, the compiler will replace the call to `scale` with the resulting value.

If we call `scale` with an expression that is not a constant expression—such as on the `int` object `i`—then the return is not a constant expression. If we use `scale` in a context that requires a constant expression, the compiler checks that the result is a constant expression. If it is not, the compiler will produce an error message.



A `constexpr` function is not required to return a constant expression.

### Put inline and constexpr Functions in Header Files

Unlike other functions, `inline` and `constexpr` functions may be defined multiple times in the program. After all, the compiler needs the definition, not just the declaration, in order to expand the code. However, all of the definitions of a given `inline` or `constexpr` must match exactly. As a result, `inline` and `constexpr` functions normally are defined in headers.

### Exercises Section 6.5.2

**Exercise 6.43:** Which one of the following declarations and definitions would you put in a header? In a source file? Explain why.

- (a) `inline bool eq(const BigInt&, const BigInt&) {...}`
- (b) `void putValues(int *arr, int size);`

**Exercise 6.44:** Rewrite the `isShorter` function from § 6.2.2 (p. 161) to be `inline`.

**Exercise 6.45:** Review the programs you’ve written for the earlier exercises and decide whether they should be defined as `inline`. If so, do so. If not, explain why they should not be `inline`.

**Exercise 6.46:** Would it be possible to define `isShorter` as a `constexpr`? If so, do so. If not, explain why not.

### 6.5.3 Aids for Debugging

C++ programmers sometimes use a technique similar to header guards (§ 2.6.3, p. 59) to conditionally execute debugging code. The idea is that the program will contain debugging code that is executed only while the program is being developed. When the application is completed and ready to ship, the debugging code is turned off. This approach uses two preprocessor facilities: `assert` and `NDEBUG`.

#### The `assert` Preprocessor Macro

`assert` is a **preprocessor macro**. A preprocessor macro is a preprocessor variable that acts somewhat like an inline function. The `assert` macro takes a single expression, which it uses as a condition:

```
assert(expr);
```

evaluates `expr` and if the expression is `false` (i.e., zero), then `assert` writes a message and terminates the program. If the expression is `true` (i.e., is nonzero), then `assert` does nothing.

The `assert` macro is defined in the `cassert` header. As we’ve seen, preprocessor names are managed by the preprocessor not the compiler (§ 2.3.2, p. 41). As a result, we use preprocessor names directly and do not provide a `using` declaration for them. That is, we refer to `assert`, not `std::assert`, and provide no `using` declaration for `assert`.

As with preprocessor variables, macro names must be unique within the program. Programs that include the `cassert` header may not define a variable, function, or other entity named `assert`. In practice, it is a good idea to avoid using the name `assert` for our own purposes even if we don’t include `cassert`. Many headers include the `cassert` header, which means that even if you don’t directly include that file, your programs are likely to have it included anyway.

The `assert` macro is often used to check for conditions that “cannot happen.” For example, a program that does some manipulation of input text might know that all words it is given are always longer than a threshold. That program might contain a statement such as

```
assert(word.size() > threshold);
```

#### The `NDEBUG` Preprocessor Variable

The behavior of `assert` depends on the status of a preprocessor variable named `NDEBUG`. If `NDEBUG` is defined, `assert` does nothing. By default, `NDEBUG` is not defined, so, by default, `assert` performs a run-time check.

We can “turn off” debugging by providing a `#define` to define `NDEBUG`. Alternatively, most compilers provide a command-line option that lets us define preprocessor variables:

```
$ CC -D NDEBUG main.C # use /D with the Microsoft compiler
```

has the same effect as writing `#define NDEBUG` at the beginning of `main.C`.

If `NDEBUG` is defined, we avoid the potential run-time overhead involved in checking various conditions. Of course, there is also no run-time check. Therefore, `assert` should be used only to verify things that truly should not be possible. It can be useful as an aid in getting a program debugged but should not be used to substitute for runtime logic checks or error checking that the program should do.

In addition to using `assert`, we can write our own conditional debugging code using `NDEBUG`. If `NDEBUG` is not defined, the code between the `#ifndef` and the `#endif` is executed. If `NDEBUG` is defined, that code is ignored:

```

void print(const int ia[], size_t size)
{
    #ifndef NDEBUG
        // __func__ is a local static defined by the compiler that holds the function's name
        cerr << __func__ << ": array size is " << size << endl;
    #endif
    // ...
}

```

Here we use a variable named `__func__` to print the name of the function we are debugging. The compiler defines `__func__` in every function. It is a local static array of `const char` that holds the name of the function.

In addition to `__func__`, which the C++ compiler defines, the preprocessor defines four other names that can be useful in debugging:

- `__FILE__` string literal containing the name of the file
- `__LINE__` integer literal containing the current line number
- `__TIME__` string literal containing the time the file was compiled
- `__DATE__` string literal containing the date the file was compiled

We might use these constants to report additional information in error messages:

```

if (word.size() < threshold)
    cerr << "Error: " << __FILE__
        << " : in function " << __func__
        << " at line " << __LINE__ << endl
        << " Compiled on " << __DATE__
        << " at " << __TIME__ << endl
        << " Word read was \"" << word
        << "\": Length too short" << endl;

```

If we give this program a string that is shorter than the `threshold`, then the following error message will be generated:

```

Error: wdebug.cc : in function main at line 27
Compiled on Jul 11 2012 at 20:50:03
Word read was "foo": Length too short

```

### Exercises Section 6.5.3

**Exercise 6.47:** Revise the program you wrote in the exercises in § 33 (p. 174) that used recursion to print the contents of a `vector` to conditionally print information about its execution. For example, you might print the size of the `vector` on each call. Compile and run the program with debugging turned on and again with it turned off.

**Exercise 6.48:** Explain what this loop does and whether it is a good use of `assert`:

```

string s;
while (cin >> s && s != sought) { } // empty body
assert(cin);

```

## 6.6 Function Matching

In many (if not most) cases, it is easy to figure out which overloaded function matches a given call. However, it is not so simple when the overloaded functions have the same number of parameters and when one or more of the parameters have types that are related by conversions. As an example, consider the following set of functions and function call:

```

void f();
void f(int);
void f(int, int);
void f(double, double = 3.14);
f(5.6); // calls void f(double, double)

```



## Determining the Candidate and Viable Functions

The first step of function matching identifies the set of overloaded functions considered for the call. The functions in this set are the **candidate functions**. A candidate function is a function with the same name as the called function and for which a declaration is visible at the point of the call. In this example, there are four candidate functions named `f`.

The second step selects from the set of candidate functions those functions that can be called with the arguments in the given call. The selected functions are the **viable functions**. To be viable, a function must have the same number of parameters as there are arguments in the call, and the type of each argument must match—or be convertible to—the type of its corresponding parameter.

We can eliminate two of our candidate functions based on the number of arguments. The function that has no parameters and the one that has two `int` parameters are not viable for this call. Our call has only one argument, and these functions have zero and two parameters, respectively.

The function that takes a single `int` and the function that takes two `doubles` might be viable. Either of these functions can be called with a single argument. The function taking two `doubles` has a default argument, which means it can be called with a single argument.



When a function has default arguments (§ 6.5.1, p. 179), a call may appear to have fewer arguments than it actually does.

Having used the number of arguments to winnow the candidate functions, we next look at whether the argument types match those of the parameters. As with any call, an argument might match its parameter either because the types match exactly or because there is a conversion from the argument type to the type of the parameter. In this example, both of our remaining functions are viable:

- `f(int)` is viable because a conversion exists that can convert the argument of type `double` to the parameter of type `int`.
- `f(double, double)` is viable because a default argument is provided for the function's second parameter and its first parameter is of type `double`, which exactly matches the type of the parameter.



If there are no viable functions, the compiler will complain that there is no matching function.

## Finding the Best Match, If Any

The third step of function matching determines which viable function provides the best match for the call. This process looks at each argument in the call and selects the viable function (or functions) for which the corresponding parameter best matches the argument. We'll explain the details of "best" in the next section, but the idea is that the closer the types of the argument and parameter are to each other, the better the match.

In our case, there is only one (explicit) argument in the call. That argument has type `double`. To call `f(int)`, the argument would have to be converted from `double` to `int`. The other viable function, `f(double, double)`, is an exact match for this argument. An exact match is better than a match that requires a conversion. Therefore, the compiler will resolve the call `f(5.6)` as a call to the function that has two `double` parameters. The compiler will add the default argument for the second, missing argument.

## Function Matching with Multiple Parameters

Function matching is more complicated if there are two or more arguments. Given the same functions named `f`, let's analyze the following call:

```
f(42, 2.56);
```

The set of viable functions is selected in the same way as when there is only one parameter. The compiler selects those functions that have the required number of parameters and for which the argument types match the parameter types. In this case, the viable functions are `f(int, int)` and `f(double, double)`. The compiler then determines, argument by argument, which function is (or functions are) the best match. There is an overall best match if there is one and only one function for which

- The match for each argument is no worse than the match required by any other viable function

- There is at least one argument for which the match is better than the match provided by any other viable function

If after looking at each argument there is no single function that is preferable, then the call is in error. The compiler will complain that the call is ambiguous.

In this call, when we look only at the first argument, we find that the function `f(int, int)` is an exact match. To match the second function, the `int` argument `42` must be converted to `double`. A match through a built-in conversion is “less good” than one that is exact. Considering only the first argument, `f(int, int)` is a better match than `f(double, double)`.

When we look at the second argument, `f(double, double)` is an exact match to the argument `2.56`. Calling `f(int, int)` would require that `2.56` be converted from `double` to `int`. When we consider only the second parameter, the function `f(double, double)` is a better match.

The compiler will reject this call because it is ambiguous: Each viable function is a better match than the other on one of the arguments to the call. It might be tempting to force a match by explicitly casting (§ 4.11.3, p. 124) one of our arguments. However, in well-designed systems, argument casts should not be necessary.



Casts should not be needed to call an overloaded function. The need for a cast suggests that the parameter sets are designed poorly.

## Exercises Section 6.6.0

**Exercise 6.49:** What is a candidate function? What is a viable function?

**Exercise 6.50:** Given the declarations for `f` from page 184, list the viable functions, if any for each of the following calls. Indicate which function is the best match, or if the call is illegal whether there is no match or why the call is ambiguous.

- (a) `f(2.56, 42)`
- (b) `f(42)`
- (c) `f(42, 0)`
- (d) `f(2.56, 3.14)`

**Exercise 6.51:** Write all four versions of `f`. Each function should print a distinguishing message. Check your answers for the previous exercise. If your answers were incorrect, study this section until you understand why your answers were wrong.

## 6.6.1 Argument Type Conversions

In order to determine the best match, the compiler ranks the conversions that could be used to convert each argument to the type of its corresponding parameter. Conversions are ranked as follows:

1. An exact match. An exact match happens when:
  - The argument and parameter types are identical.
  - The argument is converted from an array or function type to the corresponding pointer type. (§ 6.7 (p. 188) covers function pointers.)
  - top-level `const` is added to or discarded from the argument.
2. Match through a `const` conversion (§ 4.11.2, p. 123).
3. Match through a promotion (§ 4.11.1, p. 122).
4. Match through an arithmetic (§ 4.11.1, p. 121) or pointer conversion (§ 4.11.2, p. 123).
5. Match through a class-type conversion. (§ 14.9 (p. 286) covers these conversions.)

## Matches Requiring Promotion or Arithmetic Conversion



Promotions and conversions among the built-in types can yield surprising results in the context of function matching. Fortunately, well-designed systems rarely include functions with parameters as closely related as those in the following examples.

In order to analyze a call, it is important to remember that the small integral types always promote to `int` or to a larger integral type. Given two functions, one of which takes an `int` and the other a `short`, the `short` version will be called only on values of type `short`. Even though the smaller integral values might appear to be a closer match, those values are promoted to `int`, whereas calling the short version would require a conversion:

```
void ff(int);
void ff(short);
ff('a'); // char promotes to int; calls f(int)
```

All the arithmetic conversions are treated as equivalent to each other. The conversion from `int` to `unsigned int`, for example, does not take precedence over the conversion from `int` to `double`. As a concrete example, consider

```
void manip(long);
void manip(float);
manip(3.14); // error: ambiguous call
```

The literal `3.14` is a `double`. That type can be converted to either `long` or `float`. Because there are two possible arithmetic conversions, the call is ambiguous.

### Function Matching and `const` Arguments

When we call an overloaded function that differs on whether a reference or pointer parameter refers or points to `const`, the compiler uses the `constness` of the argument to decide which function to call:

```
Record lookup(Account&); // function that takes a reference to Account
Record lookup(const Account&); // new function that takes a const reference
const Account a;
Account b;
lookup(a); // calls lookup(const Account&)
lookup(b); // calls lookup(Account&)
```

In the first call, we pass the `const` object `a`. We cannot bind a plain reference to a `const` object. In this case the only viable function is the version that takes a reference to `const`. Moreover, that call is an exact match to the argument `a`.

In the second call, we pass the `nonconst` object `b`. For this call, both functions are viable. We can use `b` to initialize a reference to either `const` or `nonconst` type. However, initializing a reference to `const` from a `nonconst` object requires a conversion. The version that takes a `nonconst` parameter is an exact match for `b`. Hence, the `nonconst` version is preferred.

Pointer parameters work in a similar way. If two functions differ only as to whether a pointer parameter points to `const` or `nonconst`, the compiler can distinguish which function to call based on the `constness` of the argument: If the argument is a pointer to `const`, the call will match the function that takes a `const*`; otherwise, if the argument is a pointer to `nonconst`, the function taking a plain pointer is called.

### Exercises Section 6.6.1

**Exercise 6.52:** Given the following declarations,

```
void manip(int, int);
double dobj
```

what is the rank (§ 6.6.1, p. 186) of each conversion in the following calls?

- (a) `manip('a', 'z');`
- (b) `manip(55.4, dobj);`

**Exercise 6.53:** Explain the effect of the second declaration in each one of the following sets of declarations. Indicate which, if any, are illegal.

- (a) `int calc(int&, int&);`  
`int calc(const int&, const int&);`
- (b) `int calc(char*, char*);`  
`int calc(const char*, const char*);`
- (c) `int calc(char*, char*);`  
`int calc(char* const, char* const);`

## 6.7 Pointers to Functions

A function pointer is just that—a pointer that denotes a function rather than an object. Like any other pointer, a function pointer points to a particular type. A function's type is determined by its return type and the types of its parameters. The function's name is not part of its type. For example:

```
// compares lengths of two strings
bool lengthCompare(const string &, const string &);
```

has type `bool(const string&, const string&)`. To declare a pointer that can point at this function, we declare a pointer in place of the function name:

```
// pf points to a function returning bool that takes two const string references
bool (*pf)(const string &, const string &); // uninitialized
```

Starting from the name we are declaring, we see that `pf` is preceded by a `*`, so `pf` is a pointer. To the right is a parameter list, which means that `pf` points to a function. Looking left, we find that the type the function returns is `bool`. Thus, `pf` points to a function that has two `const string&` parameters and returns `bool`.



The parentheses around `*pf` are necessary. If we omit the parentheses, then we declare `pf` as a function that returns a pointer to `bool`:

```
// declares a function named pf that returns a bool*
bool *pf(const string &, const string &);
```

### Using Function Pointers

When we use the name of a function as a value, the function is automatically converted to a pointer. For example, we can assign the address of `lengthCompare` to `pf` as follows:

```
pf = lengthCompare; // pf now points to the function named lengthCompare
pf = &lengthCompare; // equivalent assignment: address-of operator is optional
```

Moreover, we can use a pointer to a function to call the function to which the pointer points. We can do so directly—there is no need to dereference the pointer:

```
bool b1 = pf("hello", "goodbye"); // calls lengthCompare
bool b2 = (*pf)("hello", "goodbye"); // equivalent call
bool b3 = lengthCompare("hello", "goodbye"); // equivalent call
```

There is no conversion between pointers to one function type and pointers to another function type. However, as usual, we can assign `nullptr` (§ 2.3.2, p. 41) or a zero-valued integer constant expression to a function pointer to indicate that the pointer does not point to any function:

```
string::size_type sumLength(const string&, const string&);
bool cstringCompare(const char*, const char*);
pf = 0; // ok: pf points to no function
pf = sumLength; // error: return type differs
pf = cstringCompare; // error: parameter types differ
pf = lengthCompare; // ok: function and pointer types match exactly
```

## Pointers to Overloaded Functions

As usual, when we use an overloaded function, the context must make it clear which version is being used. When we declare a pointer to an overloaded function

```
void ff(int*);
void ff(unsigned int);
void (*pf1)(unsigned int) = ff; // pf1 points to ff(unsigned)
```

the compiler uses the type of the pointer to determine which overloaded function to use. The type of the pointer must match one of the overloaded functions exactly:

```
void (*pf2)(int) = ff; // error: no ff with a matching parameter list
double (*pf3)(int*) = ff; // error: return type of ff and pf3 don't match
```

## Function Pointer Parameters

Just as with arrays (§ 6.2.4, p. 164), we cannot define parameters of function type but can have a parameter that is a pointer to function. As with arrays, we can write a parameter that looks like a function type, but it will be treated as a pointer:

```
// third parameter is a function type and is automatically treated as a pointer to function
void useBigger(const string &s1, const string &s2, bool pf(const string &, const string &));
// equivalent declaration: explicitly define the parameter as a pointer to function
void useBigger(const string &s1, const string &s2, bool (*pf)(const string &, const string &));
```

When we pass a function as an argument, we can do so directly. It will be automatically converted to a pointer:

```
// automatically converts the function lengthCompare to a pointer to function
useBigger(s1, s2, lengthCompare);
```

As we've just seen in the declaration of `useBigger`, writing function pointer types quickly gets tedious. Type aliases (§ 2.5.1, p. 53), along with `decltype` (§ 2.5.3, p. 54), let us simplify code that uses function pointers:

```
// Func and Func2 have function type
typedef bool Func(const string&, const string&);
typedef decltype(lengthCompare) Func2; // equivalent type

// FuncP and FuncP2 have pointer to function type
typedef bool(*FuncP)(const string&, const string&);
typedef decltype(lengthCompare) *FuncP2; // equivalent type
```

Here we've used `typedef` to define our types. Both `Func` and `Func2` are function types, whereas `FuncP` and `FuncP2` are pointer types. It is important to note that `decltype` returns the function type; the automatic conversion to pointer is not done. Because `decltype` returns a function type, if we want a pointer we must add the `*` ourselves. We can redeclare `useBigger` using any of these types:

```
// equivalent declarations of useBigger using type aliases
void useBigger(const string&, const string&, Func);
void useBigger(const string&, const string&, FuncP2);
```

Both declarations declare the same function. In the first case, the compiler will automatically convert the function type represented by `Func` to a pointer.

## Returning a Pointer to Function

As with arrays (§ 6.3.3, p. 174), we can't return a function type but can return a pointer to a function type. Similarly, we must write the return type as a pointer type; the compiler will not automatically treat a function return type as the corresponding pointer type. Also as with array returns, by far the easiest way to declare a function that returns a pointer to function is by using a type alias:

```
using F = int(int*, int); // F is a function type, not a pointer
using PF = int (*)(int*, int); // PF is a pointer type
```

Here we used type alias declarations (§ 2.5.1, p. 53) to define `F` as a function type and `PF` as a pointer to function type. The thing to keep in mind is that, unlike what happens to parameters that have function type, the return type is not automatically converted to a pointer type. We must explicitly specify that the return type is a pointer type:

```
PF f1(int); // ok: PF is a pointer to function; f1 returns a pointer to function
F f1(int); // error: F is a function type; f1 can't return a function
F *f1(int); // ok: explicitly specify that the return type is a pointer to function
```

Of course, we can also declare `f1` directly, which we'd do as

```
int (*f1(int))(int*, int);
```

Reading this declaration from the inside out, we see that `f1` has a parameter list, so `f1` is a function. `f1` is preceded by a `*` so `f1` returns a pointer. The type of that pointer itself has a parameter list, so the pointer points to a function. That function returns an `int`.

For completeness, it's worth noting that we can simplify declarations of functions that return pointers to function by using a trailing return (§ 6.3.3, p. 175):

```
auto f1(int) -> int (*)(int*, int);
```

## Using auto or decltype for Function Pointer Types

If we know which function(s) we want to return, we can use `decltype` to simplify writing a function pointer return type. For example, assume we have two functions, both of which return a `string::size_type` and have two `const string&` parameters. We can write a third function that takes a `string` parameter and returns a pointer to one of these two functions as follows:

```
string::size_type sumLength(const string&, const string&);
string::size_type largerLength(const string&, const string&);

// depending on the value of its string parameter,
// getFcn returns a pointer to sumLength or to largerLength
decltype(sumLength) *getFcn(const string &);
```

The only tricky part in declaring `getFcn` is to remember that when we apply `decltype` to a function, it returns a function type, not a pointer to function type. We must add a `*` to indicate that we are returning a pointer, not a function.

### Exercises Section 6.7.0

**Exercise 6.54:** Write a declaration for a function that takes two `int` parameters and returns an `int`, and declare a `vector` whose elements have this function pointer type.

**Exercise 6.55:** Write four functions that add, subtract, multiply, and divide two `int` values. Store pointers to these values in your `vector` from the previous exercise.

**Exercise 6.56:** Call each element in the `vector` and print their result.



## Chapter Summary

Functions are named units of computation and are essential to structuring even modest programs. Every function has a return type, a name, a (possibly empty) list of parameters, and a function body. The function body is a block that is executed when the function is called. When a function is called, the arguments passed to the function must be compatible with the types of the corresponding parameters.

In C++, functions may be overloaded: The same name may be used to define different functions as long as the number or types of the parameters in the functions differ. The compiler automatically figures out which function to call based on the arguments in a call. The process of selecting the right function from a set of overloaded functions is referred to as function matching.

## Defined Terms

**ambiguous call** Compile-time error that results during function matching when two or more functions provide an equally good match for a call.

**arguments** Values supplied in a function call that are used to initialize the function's parameters.

**assert** Preprocessor macro that takes a single expression, which it uses as a condition. When the preprocessor variable `NDEBUG` is not defined, **assert** evaluates the condition and, if the condition is **false**, writes a message and terminates the program.

**automatic objects** Objects that exist only during the execution of a function. They are created when control passes through their definition and are destroyed at the end of the block in which they are defined.

**best match** Function selected from a set of overloaded functions for a call. If a best match exists, the selected function is a better match than all the other viable candidates for at least one argument in the call and is no worse on the rest of the arguments.

**call by reference** See pass by reference.

**call by value** See pass by value.

**candidate functions** Set of functions that are considered when resolving a function call. The candidate functions are all the functions with the name used in the call for which a declaration is in scope at the time of the call.

**constexpr function** Function that may return a constant expression. A **constexpr** function is implicitly **inline**.

**default argument** Value specified to be used when an argument is omitted in a call to the function.

**executable file** File, which the operating system executes, that contains code corresponding to our program.

**function** Callable unit of computation.

**function body** Block that defines the actions of a function.

**function matching** Compiler process by which a call to an overloaded function is resolved. Arguments used in the call are compared to the parameter list of each overloaded function.

**hidden names** Names declared inside a scope hide previously declared entities with the same names declared outside that scope.

**initializer\_list** Library class that represents a comma-separated list of objects of a single type enclosed inside curly braces.

**inline function** Request to the compiler to expand a function at the point of call, if possible. Inline functions avoid the normal function-calling overhead.

**link** Compilation step in which multiple object files are put together to form an executable program.

**local static objects** Local objects whose value persists across calls to the function. Local **static** objects that are created and initialized before control reaches their use and are destroyed when the program ends.

**local variables** Variables defined inside a block.

**no match** Compile-time error that results during function matching when there is no function with parameters that match the arguments in a given call.

**object code** Format into which the compiler transforms our source code.

**object file** File holding object code generated by the compiler from a given source file. An executable file is generated from one or more object files after the files are linked together.

**object lifetime** Every object has an associated lifetime. **Nonstatic** objects that are defined inside a block exist from when their definition is encountered until the end of the block in which they are defined. Global objects are created during program startup. Local **static** objects are created before the first time execution passes through the object's definition. Global objects and local **static** objects are destroyed when the **main** function ends.

**overload resolution** See function matching.



**overloaded function** Function that has the same name as at least one other function. Overloaded functions must differ in the number or type of their parameters.

**parameters** Local variables declared inside the function parameter list. Parameters are initialized by the arguments provided in each function call.

**pass by reference** Description of how arguments are passed to parameters of reference type. Reference parameters work the same way as any other use of references; the parameter is bound to its corresponding argument.

**pass by value** How arguments are passed to parameters of a nonreference type. A nonreference parameter is a copy of the value of its corresponding argument.

**preprocessor macro** Preprocessor facility that behaves like an `inline` function. Aside from `assert`, modern C++ programs make very little use of preprocessor macros.

**recursion loop** Description of a recursive function

that omits a stopping condition and which calls itself until exhasuting the program stack.

**recursive function** Function that calls itself directly or indirectly.

**return type** Part of a function declaration that specifies the type of the value that the function returns.

**separate compilation** Ability to split a program into multiple separate source files.

**trailing return type** Return type specified after the parameter list.

**viable functions** Subset of the candidate functions that could match a given call. Viable functions have the same number of parameters as arguments to the call, and each argument type can be converted to the corresponding parameter type.

**() operator** Call operator. Executes a function. The name of a function or a function pointer precedes the parentheses, which enclose a (possibly empty) comma-separated list of arguments.

# Chapter 7

## Classes

### Contents

7.1 Defining Abstract Data Types .....	194
7.2 Access Control and Encapsulation .....	203
7.3 Additional Class Features .....	206
7.4 Class Scope .....	214
7.5 Constructors Revisited .....	218
7.6 static Class Members .....	228
Chapter Summary .....	232
Defined Terms .....	232

In C++ we use classes to define our own data types. By defining types that mirror concepts in the problems we are trying to solve, we can make our programs easier to write, debug, and modify.

This chapter continues the coverage of classes begun in Chapter 2. Here we will focus on the importance of data abstraction, which lets us separate the implementation of an object from the operations that that object can perform. In Chapter 13 we'll learn how to control what happens when objects are copied, moved, assigned, or destroyed. In Chapter 14 we'll learn how to define our own operators.

The fundamental ideas behind **classes** are **data abstraction** and **encapsulation**. Data abstraction is a programming (and design) technique that relies on the separation of **interface** and **implementation**. The interface of a class consists of the operations that users of the class can execute. The implementation includes the class' data members, the bodies of the functions that constitute the interface, and any functions needed to define the class that are not intended for general use.

Encapsulation enforces the separation of a class' interface and implementation. A class that is encapsulated hides its implementation—users of the class can use the interface but have no access to the implementation.

A class that uses data abstraction and encapsulation defines an **abstract data type**. In an abstract data type, the class designer worries about how the class is implemented. Programmers who use the class need not know how the type works. They can instead think abstractly about what the type does.

## 7.1 Defining Abstract Data Types

The `Sales_item` class that we used in Chapter 1 is an abstract data type. We use a `Sales_item` object by using its interface (i.e., the operations described in § 1.5.1 (p. 14)). We have no access to the data members stored in a `Sales_item` object. Indeed, we don't even know what data members that class has.

Our `Sales_data` class (§ 2.6.1, p. 56) is not an abstract data type. It lets users of the class access its data members and forces users to write their own operations. To make `Sales_data` an abstract type, we need to define operations for users of `Sales_data` to use. Once `Sales_data` defines its own operations, we can encapsulate (that is, hide) its data members.

### 7.1.1 Designing the `Sales_data` Class

Ultimately, we want `Sales_data` to support the same set of operations as the `Sales_item` class. The `Sales_item` class had one **member function** (§ 1.5.2, p. 1.5.2), named `isbn`, and supported the `+`, `=`, `+=`, `<<`, and `>>` operators.

We'll learn how to define our own operators in Chapter 14. For now, we'll define ordinary (named) functions for these operations. For reasons that we will explain in § 14.1 (p. 286), the functions that do addition and IO will not be members of `Sales_data`. Instead, we'll define those functions as ordinary functions. The function that handles compound assignment will be a member, and for reasons we'll explain in § 7.1.5 (p. 203), our class doesn't need to define assignment.

Thus, the interface to `Sales_data` consists of the following operations:

- An `isbn` member function to return the object's ISBN
- A `combine` member function to add one `Sales_data` object into another
- A function named `add` to add two `Sales_data` objects
- A `read` function to read data from an `istream` into a `Sales_data` object
- A `print` function to print the value of a `Sales_data` object on an `ostream`

#### Key Concept: Different Kinds of Programming Roles

Programmers tend to think about the people who will run their applications as users. Similarly a class designer designs and implements a class for users of that class. In this case, the user is a programmer, not the ultimate user of the application.

When we refer to a user, the context makes it clear which kind of user is meant. If we speak of user code or the user of the `Sales_data` class, we mean a programmer who is using a class. If we speak of the user of the bookstore application, we mean the manager of the store who is running the application.



C++ programmers tend to speak of users interchangeably as users of the application or users of a class.

In simple applications, the user of a class and the designer of the class might be one and the same person. Even in such cases, it is useful to keep the roles distinct. When we design the interface of a class, we should think about how easy it will be to use the class. When we use the class, we shouldn't think about how the class works.

Authors of successful applications do a good job of understanding and implementing the needs of the application's users. Similarly, good class designers pay close attention to the needs of the programmers who will use the class. A well-designed class has an interface that is intuitive and easy to use and has an implementation that is efficient enough for its intended use.

## Using the Revised Sales\_data Class

Before we think about how to implement our class, let's look at how we can use our interface functions. As one example, we can use these functions to write a version of the bookstore program from § 1.6 (p. 17) that works with `Sales_data` objects rather than `Sales_items`:

```
Sales_data total; // variable to hold the running sum
// read the first transaction and ensure that there are data to process
if (read(cin, total)) {
    Sales_data trans; // variable to hold data for the next transaction
    // read and process the remaining transactions
    while (read(cin, trans)) {
        // if we're still processing the same book
        if (total.isbn() == trans.isbn())
            total.combine(trans); // update the running total
        else {
            // print results for the previous book
            print(cout, total) << endl;
            total = trans; // total now refers to the next book
        }
    }
    print(cout, total) << endl; // print the last transaction
}
else {
    // no input! warn the user
    cerr << "No data?!" << endl;
}
```

We start by defining a `Sales_data` object to hold the running total. Inside the `if` condition, we call `read` to read the first transaction into `total`. This condition works like other loops we've written that used the `>>` operator. Like the `>>` operator, our `read` function will return its stream parameter, which the condition checks (§ 4.11.2, p. 123). If the `read` fails, we fall through to the `else` to print an error message.

If there are data to read, we define `trans`, which we'll use to hold each transaction. The condition in the `while` also checks the stream returned by `read`. So long as the input operations in `read` succeed, the condition succeeds and we have another transaction to process.

Inside the `while`, we call the `isbn` members of `total` and `trans` to fetch their respective ISBNs. If `total` and `trans` refer to the same book, we call `combine` to add the components of `trans` into the running total in `total`. If `trans` represents a new book, we call `print` to print the total for the previous book. Because `print` returns a reference to its stream parameter, we can use the result of `print` as the left-hand operand of the `<<`. We do so to print a newline following the output generated by `print`. We next assign `trans` to `total`, thus setting up to process the records for the next book in the file.

After we have exhausted the input, we have to remember to print the data for the last transaction, which we do in the call to `print` following the `while` loop.

### Exercises Section 7.1.1

**Exercise 7.1:** Write a version of the transaction-processing program from § 1.6 (p. 17) using the `Sales_data` class you defined for the exercises in § 40 (p. 57).

## 7.1.2 Designing the revised Sales\_data Class

Our revised class will have the same data members as the version we defined in § 2.6.1 (p. 56): `bookNo`, a `string` representing the ISBN; `units_sold`, an `unsigned` that says how many copies of the book were sold; and `revenue`, a `double` representing the total revenue for those sales.

As we've seen, our class will also have two member functions, `combine` and `isbn`. In addition, we'll give `Sales_data` another member function to return the average price at which the books were sold. This function, which we'll name `avg_price`, isn't intended for general use. It will be part of the implementation, not part of the interface.

We define (§ 6.1, p. 155) and declare (§ 6.1.2, p. 158) member functions similarly to ordinary functions. Member functions must be declared inside the class. Member functions may be defined inside the class itself or

outside the class body. Nonmember functions that are part of the interface, such as `add`, `read`, and `print`, are declared and defined outside the class.

```
struct Sales_data {
    // new members: operations on Sales_data objects
    std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
    Sales_data& combine(const Sales_data&);
    double avg_price() const;
    // data members
    std::string bookNo;
    unsigned units_sold = 0;
    double revenue = 0.0;
};
// nonmember Sales_data interface functions
Sales_data add(const Sales_data&, const Sales_data&);
std::ostream &print(std::ostream&, const Sales_data&);
std::istream &read(std::istream&, Sales_data&);
```



Functions defined in the class are implicitly `inline` (§ 6.5.2, p. 181).

## Defining Member Functions

Although every member must be declared inside its class, we can define a member function's body either inside or outside of the class body. In `Sales_data`, `isbn` is defined inside the class; `combine` and `avg_price` will be defined elsewhere.

We'll start by explaining the `isbn` function, which returns a `string` and has an empty parameter list:

```
std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
```

As with any function, the body of a member function is a block. In this case, the block contains a single `return` statement that returns the `bookNo` data member of a `Sales_data` object. The interesting thing about this function is how it gets the object from which to fetch the `bookNo` member.

## Introducing `this`

Let's look again at a call to the `isbn` member function:

```
total.isbn()
```

Here we use the dot operator (§ 1.5.2, p. 17) to fetch the `isbn` member of the object named `total`, which we then call.

With one exception that we'll cover in § 7.6 (p. 228), when we call a member function we do so on behalf of an object. When `isbn` refers to members of `Sales_data` (e.g., `bookNo`), it is referring implicitly to the members of the object on which the function was called. In this call, when `isbn` returns `bookNo`, it is implicitly returning `total.bookNo`.

Member functions access the object on which they were called through an extra, implicit parameter named `this`. When we call a member function, `this` is initialized with the address of the object on which the function was invoked. For example, when we call

```
total.isbn()
```

the compiler passes the address of `total` to the implicit `this` parameter in `isbn`. It is as if the compiler rewrites this call as

```
// pseudo-code illustration of how a call to a member function is translated
Sales_data::isbn(&total)
```

which calls the `isbn` member of `Sales_data` passing the address of `total`.

Inside a member function, we can refer directly to the members of the object on which the function was called. We do not have to use a member access operator to use the members of the object to which `this` points. Any direct use of a member of the class is assumed to be an implicit reference through `this`. That is, when `isbn` uses `bookNo`, it is implicitly using the member to which `this` points. It is as if we had written `this->bookNo`.

The `this` parameter is defined for us implicitly. Indeed, it is illegal for us to define a parameter or variable named `this`. Inside the body of a member function, we can use `this`. It would be legal, although unnecessary, to define `isbn` as

```
std::string isbn() const { return this->bookNo; }
```

Because `this` is intended to always refer to “this” object, `this` is a `const` pointer (§ 2.4.2, p. 49). We cannot change the address that `this` holds.

### Introducing `const` Member Functions

The other important part about the `isbn` function is the keyword `const` that follows the parameter list. The purpose of that `const` is to modify the type of the implicit `this` pointer.

By default, the type of `this` is a `const` pointer to the `nonconst` version of the class type. For example, by default, the type of `this` in a `Sales_data` member function is `Sales_data *const`. Although `this` is implicit, it follows the normal initialization rules, which means that (by default) we cannot bind `this` to a `const` object (§ 2.4.2, p. 48). This fact, in turn, means that we cannot call an ordinary member function on a `const` object.

If `isbn` were an ordinary function and if `this` were an ordinary pointer parameter, we would declare `this` as `const Sales_data *const`. After all, the body of `isbn` doesn’t change the object to which `this` points, so our function would be more flexible if `this` were a pointer to `const` (§ 2.4.2, p. 48).

However, `this` is implicit and does not appear in the parameter list. There is no place to indicate that `this` should be a pointer to `const`. The language resolves this problem by letting us put `const` after the parameter list of a member function. A `const` following the parameter list indicates that `this` is a pointer to `const`. Member functions that use `const` in this way are `const` member functions.

We can think of the body of `isbn` as if it were written as

```
// pseudo-code illustration of how the implicit this pointer is used
// this code is illegal: we may not explicitly define the this pointer ourselves
// note that this is a pointer to const because isbn is a const member
std::string Sales_data::isbn(const Sales_data *const this)
{ return this->isbn; }
```

The fact that `this` is a pointer to `const` means that `const` member functions cannot change the object on which they are called. Thus, `isbn` may read but not write to the data members of the objects on which it is called.



Objects that are `const`, and references or pointers to `const` objects, may call only `const` member functions.

### Class Scope and Member Functions

Recall that a class is itself a scope (§ 2.6.1, p. 56). The definitions of the member functions of a class are nested inside the scope of the class itself. Hence, `isbn`’s use of the name `bookNo` is resolved as the data member defined inside `Sales_data`.

It is worth noting that `isbn` can use `bookNo` even though `bookNo` is defined after `isbn`. As we’ll see in § 7.4.1 (p. 215), the compiler processes classes in two steps— the member declarations are compiled first, after which the member function bodies, if any, are processed. Thus, member function bodies may use other members of their class regardless of where in the class those members appear.

### Defining a Member Function outside the Class

As with any other function, when we define a member function outside the class body, the member’s definition must match its declaration. That is, the return type, parameter list, and name must match the declaration in the class body. If the member was declared as a `const` member function, then the definition must also specify `const` after the parameter list. The name of a member defined outside the class must include the name of the class of which it is a member:

```
double Sales_data::avg_price() const {
    if (units_sold)
        return revenue/units_sold;
    else
        return 0;
}
```

The function name, `Sales_data::avg_price`, uses the scope operator (§ 1.2, p. 6) to say that we are defining the function named `avg_price` that is declared in the scope of the `Sales_data` class. Once the compiler sees the function name, the rest of the code is interpreted as being inside the scope of the class. Thus, when `avg_price` refers to `revenue` and `units_sold`, it is implicitly referring to the members of `Sales_data`.

### Defining a Function to Return “This” Object

The `combine` function is intended to act like the compound assignment operator, `+=`. The object on which this function is called represents the left-hand operand of the assignment. The right-hand operand is passed as an explicit argument:

```
Sales_data& Sales_data::combine(const Sales_data &rhs)
{
    units_sold += rhs.units_sold; // add the members of rhs into
    revenue += rhs.revenue; // the members of 'this' object
    return *this; // return the object on which the function was called
}
```

When our transaction-processing program calls

```
total.combine(trans); // update the running total
```

the address of `total` is bound to the implicit `this` parameter and `rhs` is bound to `trans`. Thus, when `combine` executes

```
units_sold += rhs.units_sold; // add the members of rhs into
```

the effect is to add `total.units_sold` and `trans.units_sold`, storing the result back into `total.units_sold`.

The interesting part about this function is its return type and the `return` statement. Ordinarily, when we define a function that operates like a built-in operator, our function should mimic the behavior of that operator. The built-in assignment operators return their left-hand operand as an lvalue (§ 4.4, p. 110). To return an lvalue, our `combine` function must return a reference (§ 6.3.2, p. 172). Because the left-hand operand is a `Sales_data` object, the return type is `Sales_data&`.

As we’ve seen, we do not need to use the implicit `this` pointer to access the members of the object on which a member function is executing. However, we do need to use `this` to access the object as a whole:

```
return *this; // return the object on which the function was called
```

Here the `return` statement dereferences `this` to obtain the object on which the function is executing. That is, for the call above, we return a reference to `total`.

### Exercises Section 7.1.2

**Exercise 7.2:** Add the `combine` and `isbn` members to the `Sales_data` class you wrote for the exercises in § 41 (p. 59).

**Exercise 7.3:** Revise your transaction-processing program from § 1 (p. 195) to use these members.

**Exercise 7.4:** Write a class named `Person` that represents the name and address of a person. Use a `string` to hold each of these elements. Subsequent exercises will incrementally add features to this class.

**Exercise 7.5:** Provide operations in your `Person` class to return the name and address. Should these functions be `const`? Explain your choice.

### 7.1.3 Defining Nonmember Class-Related Functions

Class authors often define auxiliary functions, such as our `add`, `read`, and `print` functions. Although such functions define operations that are conceptually part of the interface of the class, they are not part of the class itself.

We define nonmember functions as we would any other function. As with any other function, we normally separate the declaration of the function from its definition (§ 6.1.2, p. 158). Functions that are conceptually part of a class, but not defined inside the class, are typically declared (but not defined) in the same header as the class itself. That way users need to include only one file to use any part of the interface.



Ordinarily, nonmember functions that are part of the interface of a class should be declared in the same header as the class itself.



## Defining the read and print Functions

The `read` and `print` functions do the same job as the code in § 2.6.2 (p. 58) and not surprisingly, the bodies of our functions look a lot like the code presented there:

```
// input transactions contain ISBN, number of copies sold, and sales price
istream &read(istream &is, Sales_data &item)
{
    double price = 0;
    is >> item.bookNo >> item.units_sold >> price;
    item.revenue = price * item.units_sold;
    return is;
}
ostream &print(ostream &os, const Sales_data &item)
{
    os << item.isbn() << " " << item.units_sold << " "
        << item.revenue << " " << item.avg_price();
    return os;
}
```

The `read` function reads data from the given stream into the given object. The `print` function prints the contents of the given object on the given stream.

However, there are two points worth noting about these functions. First, both `read` and `write` take a reference to their respective IO class types. The IO classes are types that cannot be copied, so we may only pass them by reference (§ 6.2.2, p. 161). Moreover, reading or writing to a stream changes that stream, so both functions take ordinary references, not references to `const`.

The second thing to note is that `print` does not print a newline. Ordinarily, functions that do output should do minimal formatting. That way user code can decide whether the newline is needed.

## Defining the add Function

The `add` function takes two `Sales_data` objects and returns a new `Sales_data` representing their sum:

```
Sales_data add(const Sales_data &lhs, const Sales_data &rhs)
{
    Sales_data sum = lhs; // copy data members from lhs into sum
    sum.combine(rhs); // add data members from rhs into sum
    return sum;
}
```

In the body of the function we define a new `Sales_data` object named `sum` to hold the sum of our two transactions. We initialize `sum` as a copy of `lhs`. By default, copying a class object copies that object's members. After the copy, the `bookNo`, `units_sold`, and `revenue` members of `sum` will have the same values as those in `lhs`. Next we call `combine` to add the `units_sold` and `revenue` members of `rhs` into `sum`. When we're done, we return a copy of `sum`.

### Exercises Section 7.1.3

**Exercise 7.6:** Define your own versions of the `add`, `read`, and `print` functions.

**Exercise 7.7:** Rewrite the transaction-processing program you wrote for the exercises in § 3 (p. 198) to use these new functions.

**Exercise 7.8:** Why does `read` define its `Sales_data` parameter as a plain reference and `print` define its parameter as a reference to `const`?

**Exercise 7.9:** Add operations to read and print `Person` objects to the code you wrote for the exercises in § 4 (p. 198).

**Exercise 7.10:** What does the condition in the following `if` statement do?

```
if (read(read(cin, data1), data2))
```

## 7.1.4 Constructors

Each class defines how objects of its type can be initialized. Classes control object initialization by defining one or more special member functions known as **constructors**. The job of a constructor is to initialize the data

members of a class object. A constructor is run whenever an object of a class type is created.

In this section, we'll introduce the basics of how to define a constructor. Constructors are a surprisingly complex topic. Indeed, we'll have more to say about constructors in § 7.5 (p. 218), § 15.7 (p. 311), and § 18.1.3 (p. 330), and in Chapter 13.

Constructors have the same name as the class. Unlike other functions, constructors have no return type. Like other functions, constructors have a (possibly empty) parameter list and a (possibly empty) function body. A class can have multiple constructors. Like any other overloaded function (§ 6.4, p. 175), the constructors must differ from each other in the number or types of their parameters.

Unlike other member functions, constructors may not be declared as `const` (§ 7.1.2, p. 197). When we create a `const` object of a class type, the object does not assume its “constness” until after the constructor completes the object's initialization. Thus, constructors can write to `const` objects during their construction.

## The Synthesized Default Constructor

Our `Sales_data` class does not define any constructors, yet the programs we've written that use `Sales_data` objects compile and run correctly. As an example, the program on page 195 defined two objects:

```
Sales_data total; // variable to hold the running sum
Sales_data trans; // variable to hold data for the next transaction
```

The question naturally arises: How are `total` and `trans` initialized?

We did not supply an initializer for these objects, so we know that they are default initialized (§ 2.2.1, p. 34). Classes control default initialization by defining a special constructor, known as the **default constructor**. The default constructor is one that takes no arguments.

As we'll see, the default constructor is special in various ways, one of which is that if our class does not explicitly define any constructors, the compiler will implicitly define the default constructor for us.

The compiler-generated constructor is known as the **synthesized default constructor**. For most classes, this synthesized constructor initializes each data member of the class as follows:

- If there is an in-class initializer (§ 2.6.1, p. 57), use it to initialize the member.
- Otherwise, default-initialize (§ 2.2.1, p. 34) the member.

Because `Sales_data` provides initializers for `units_sold` and `revenue`, the synthesized default constructor uses those values to initialize those members. It default initializes `bookNo` to the empty string.

## Some Classes Cannot Rely on the Synthesized Default Constructor

Only fairly simple classes—such as the current definition of `Sales_data`—can rely on the synthesized default constructor. The most common reason that a class must define its own default constructor is that the compiler generates the default for us only if we do not define any other constructors for the class. If we define any constructors, the class will not have a default constructor unless we define that constructor ourselves. The basis for this rule is that if a class requires control to initialize an object in one case, then the class is likely to require control in all cases.



The compiler generates a default constructor automatically only if a class declares no constructors.

A second reason to define the default constructor is that for some classes, the synthesized default constructor does the wrong thing. Remember that objects of builtin or compound type (such as arrays and pointers) that are defined inside a block have undefined value when they are default initialized (§ 2.2.1, p. 34). The same rule applies to members of builtin type that are default initialized. Therefore, classes that have members of builtin or compound type should ordinarily either initialize those members inside the class or define their own version of the default constructor. Otherwise, users could create objects with members that have undefined value.



Classes that have members of builtin or compound type usually should rely on the synthesized default constructor only if all such members have in-class initializers.

A third reason that some classes must define their own default constructor is that sometimes the compiler is unable to synthesize one. For example, if a class has a member that has a class type, and that class doesn't

have a default constructor, then the compiler can't initialize that member. For such classes, we must define our own version of the default constructor. Otherwise, the class will not have a usable default constructor. We'll see in § 13.1.6 (p. 283) additional circumstances that prevent the compiler from generating an appropriate default constructor.

### Defining the Sales\_data Constructors

For our `Sales_data` class we'll define four constructors with the following parameters:

- An `istream&` from which to read a transaction
- A `const string&` representing an ISBN, an `unsigned` representing the count of how many books were sold, and a `double` representing the price at which the books sold.
- A `const string&` representing an ISBN. This constructor will use default values for the other members.
- An empty parameter list (i.e., the default constructor) which as we've just seen we must define because we have defined other constructors.

Adding these members to our class, we now have

```
struct Sales_data {
    // constructors added
    Sales_data() = default;
    Sales_data(const std::string &s): bookNo(s) { }
    Sales_data(const std::string &s, unsigned n, double p):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(n), revenue(p*n) { }
    Sales_data(std::istream &);
    // other members as before
    std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
    Sales_data& combine(const Sales_data&);
    double avg_price() const;
    std::string bookNo;
    unsigned units_sold = 0;
    double revenue = 0.0;
};
```

### What = default Means

We'll start by explaining the default constructor:

```
Sales_data() = default;
```

First, note that this constructor defines the default constructor because it takes no arguments. We are defining this constructor only because we want to provide other constructors as well as the default constructor. We want this constructor to do exactly the same work as the synthesized version we had been using.

Under the new standard, if we want the default behavior, we can ask the compiler to generate the constructor for us by writing `= default` after the parameter list. The `= default` can appear with the declaration inside the class body or on the definition outside the class body. Like any other function, if the `= default` appears inside the class body, the default constructor will be inlined; if it appears on the definition outside the class, the member will not be inlined by default.



The default constructor works for `Sales_data` only because we provide initializers for the data members with built-in type. If your compiler does not support in-class initializers, your default constructor should use the constructor initializer list (described immediately following) to initialize every member of the class.

### Constructor Initializer List

Next we'll look at the other two constructors that were defined inside the class:

```
Sales_data(const std::string &s): bookNo(s) { }
Sales_data(const std::string &s, unsigned n, double p):
    bookNo(s), units_sold(n), revenue(p*n) { }
```

The new parts in these definitions are the colon and the code between it and the curly braces that define the (empty) function bodies. This new part is a **constructor initializer list**, which specifies initial values for one or more data members of the object being created. The constructor initializer is a list of member names, each of which is followed by that member's initial value in parentheses (or inside curly braces). Multiple member initializations are separated by commas.

The constructor that has three parameters uses its first two parameters to initialize the `bookNo` and `units_sold` members. The initializer for `revenue` is calculated by multiplying the number of books sold by the price per book.

The constructor that has a single `string` parameter uses that `string` to initialize `bookNo` but does not explicitly initialize the `units_sold` and `revenue` members. When a member is omitted from the constructor initializer list, it is implicitly initialized using the same process as is used by the synthesized default constructor. In this case, those members are initialized by the in-class initializers. Thus, the constructor that takes a `string` is equivalent to

```
// has the same behavior as the original constructor defined above
Sales_data(const std::string &s):
    bookNo(s), units_sold(0), revenue(0){ }
```

It is usually best for a constructor to use an in-class initializer if one exists and gives the member the correct value. On the other hand, if your compiler does not yet support in-class initializers, then every constructor should explicitly initialize every member of built-in type.



Constructors should not override in-class initializers except to use a different initial value. If you can't use in-class initializers, each constructor should explicitly initialize every member of built-in type.

It is worth noting that both constructors have empty function bodies. The only work these constructors need to do is give the data members their values. If there is no further work, then the function body is empty.

## Defining a Constructor outside the Class Body

Unlike our other constructors, the constructor that takes an `istream` does have work to do. Inside its function body, this constructor calls `read` to give the data members new values:

```
Sales_data::Sales_data(std::istream &is)
{
    read(is, *this); // read will read a transaction from is into this object
}
```

Constructors have no return type, so this definition starts with the name of the function we are defining. As with any other member function, when we define a constructor outside of the class body, we must specify the class of which the constructor is a member. Thus, `Sales_data::Sales_data` says that we're defining the `Sales_data` member named `Sales_data`. This member is a constructor because it has the same name as its class.

In this constructor there is no constructor initializer list, although technically speaking, it would be more correct to say that the constructor initializer list is empty. Even though the constructor initializer list is empty, the members of this object are still initialized before the constructor body is executed.

Members that do not appear in the constructor initializer list are initialized by the corresponding in-class initializer (if there is one) or are default initialized. For `Sales_data` that means that when the function body starts executing, `bookNo` will be the empty `string`, and `units_sold` and `revenue` will both be 0.

To understand the call to `read`, remember that `read`'s second parameter is a reference to a `Sales_data` object. In § 7.1.2 (p. 198), we noted that we use `this` to access the object as a whole, rather than a member of the object. In this case, we use `*this` to pass “this” object as an argument to the `read` function.

### Exercises Section 7.1.4

**Exercise 7.11:** Add constructors to your `Sales_data` class and write a program to use each of the constructors.

**Exercise 7.12:** Move the definition of the `Sales_data` constructor that takes an `istream` into the body of the `Sales_data` class.

**Exercise 7.13:** Rewrite the program from page 195 to use the `istream` constructor.

**Exercise 7.14:** Write a version of the default constructor that explicitly initializes the members to the values we have provided as in-class initializers.

**Exercise 7.15:** Add appropriate constructors to your `Person` class.

### 7.1.5 Copy, Assignment, and Destruction

In addition to defining how objects of the class type are initialized, classes also control what happens when we copy, assign, or destroy objects of the class type. Objects are copied in several contexts, such as when we initialize a variable or when we pass or return an object by value (§ 6.2.1, p. 160, and § 6.3.2, p. 171). Objects are assigned when we use the assignment operator (§ 4.4, p. 110). Objects are destroyed when they cease to exist, such as when a local object is destroyed on exit from the block in which it was created (§ 6.1.1, p. 157). Objects stored in a `vector` (or an array) are destroyed when that `vector` (or array) is destroyed.

If we do not define these operations, the compiler will synthesize them for us. Ordinarily, the versions that the compiler generates for us execute by copying, assigning, or destroying each member of the object. For example, in our bookstore program in § 7.1.1 (p. 195), when the compiler executes this assignment

```
total = trans; // process the next book
```

it executes as if we had written

```
// default assignment for Sales_data is equivalent to:
total.bookNo = trans.bookNo;
total.units_sold = trans.units_sold;
total.revenue = trans.revenue;
```

We'll show how we can define our own versions of these operations in Chapter 13.

### Some Classes Cannot Rely on the Synthesized Versions

Although the compiler will synthesize the copy, assignment, and destruction operations for us, it is important to understand that for some classes the default versions do not behave appropriately. In particular, the synthesized versions are unlikely to work correctly for classes that allocate resources that reside outside the class objects themselves. As one example, in Chapter 12 we'll see how C++ programs allocate and manage dynamic memory. As we'll see in § 13.1.4 (p. 279), classes that manage dynamic memory, generally cannot rely on the synthesized versions of these operations.

However, it is worth noting that many classes that need dynamic memory can (and generally should) use a `vector` or a `string` to manage the necessary storage. Classes that use `vectors` and `strings` avoid the complexities involved in allocating and deallocating memory.

Moreover, the synthesized versions for copy, assignment, and destruction work correctly for classes that have `vector` or `string` members. When we copy or assign an object that has a `vector` member, the `vector` class takes care of copying or assigning the elements in that member. When the object is destroyed, the `vector` member is destroyed, which in turn destroys the elements in the `vector`. Similarly for `strings`.



Until you know how to define the operations covered in Chapter 13, the resources your classes allocate should be stored directly as data members of the class.

## 7.2 Access Control and Encapsulation

At this point, we have defined an interface for our class; but nothing forces users to use that interface. Our class is not yet encapsulated—users can reach inside a `Sales_data` object and meddle with its implementation. In C++ we use **access specifiers** to enforce encapsulation:

- Members defined after a **public specifier** are accessible to all parts of the program. The **public** members define the interface to the class.
- Members defined after a **private specifier** are accessible to the member functions of the class but are not accessible to code that uses the class. The **private** sections encapsulate (i.e., hide) the implementation.

Redefining `Sales_data` once again, we now have

```
class Sales_data {
public: // access specifier added
    Sales_data() = default;
    Sales_data(const std::string &s, unsigned n, double p):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(n), revenue(p*n) { }
    Sales_data(const std::string &s): bookNo(s) { }
    Sales_data(std::istream&);
    std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
    Sales_data &combine(const Sales_data&);
private: // access specifier added
    double avg_price() const
        { return units_sold ? revenue/units_sold : 0; }
    std::string bookNo;
    unsigned units_sold = 0;
    double revenue = 0.0;
};
```

The constructors and member functions that are part of the interface (e.g., `isbn` and `combine`) follow the **public** specifier; the data members and the functions that are part of the implementation follow the **private** specifier. A class may contain zero or more access specifiers, and there are no restrictions on how often an access specifier may appear. Each access specifier specifies the access level of the succeeding members. The specified access level remains in effect until the next access specifier or the end of the class body.

### Using the `class` or `struct` Keyword

We also made another, more subtle, change: We used the **class keyword** rather than **struct** to open the class definition. This change is strictly stylistic; we can define a class type using either keyword. The only differences between **struct** and **class** are the default access specifier for members and the default derivation access specifier (§ 15.5, p. 306).

A class may define members before the first access specifier. Access to such members depends on how the class is defined. If we use the **struct** keyword, the members defined before the first access specifier are **public**; if we use **class**, then the members are **private**.

As a matter of programming style, when we define a class intending for all of its members to be **public**, we use **struct**. If we intend to have **private** members, then we use **class**.



The only differences between using **class** and using **struct** to define a class are the default access specifier for members and the default derivation access specifier.

### Exercises Section 7.2.0

**Exercise 7.16:** What, if any, are the constraints on where and how often an access specifier may appear inside a class definition? What kinds of members should be defined after a public specifier? What kinds should be private?

**Exercise 7.17:** What, if any, are the differences between using **class** or **struct**?

**Exercise 7.18:** What is encapsulation? Why is it useful?

**Exercise 7.19:** Indicate which members of your `Person` class you would declare as **public** and which you would declare as **private**. Explain your choice.

### 7.2.1 Friends

Now that the data members of `Sales_data` are **private**, our `read`, `print`, and `add` functions will no longer compile. The problem is that although these functions are part of the `Sales_data` interface, they are not members of the class.



A class can allow another class or function to access its nonpublic members by making that class or function a **friend**. A class makes a function its friend by including a declaration for that function preceded by the keyword **friend**:

```
class Sales_data {
    // friend declarations for nonmember Sales_data operations added
    friend Sales_data add(const Sales_data&, const Sales_data&);
    friend std::istream &read(std::istream&, Sales_data&);
    friend std::ostream &print(std::ostream&, const Sales_data&);
    // other members and access specifiers as before
public:
    Sales_data() = default;
    Sales_data(const std::string &s, unsigned n, double p):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(n), revenue(p*n) { }
    Sales_data(const std::string &s): bookNo(s) { }
    Sales_data(std::istream&);
    std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
    Sales_data &combine(const Sales_data&);
private:
    std::string bookNo;
    unsigned units_sold = 0;
    double revenue = 0.0;
};
// declarations for nonmember parts of the Sales_data interface
Sales_data add(const Sales_data&, const Sales_data&);
std::istream &read(std::istream&, Sales_data&);
std::ostream &print(std::ostream&, const Sales_data&);
```

Friend declarations may appear only inside a class definition; they may appear anywhere in the class. Friends are not members of the class and are not affected by the access control of the section in which they are declared. We'll have more to say about friendship in § 7.3.4 (p. 212).



Ordinarily it is a good idea to group friend declarations together at the beginning or end of the class definition.

### Key Concept: Benefits of Encapsulation

Encapsulation provides two important advantages:

- User code cannot inadvertently corrupt the state of an encapsulated object.
- The implementation of an encapsulated class can change over time without requiring changes in user-level code.

By defining data members as **private**, the class author is free to make changes in the data. If the implementation changes, only the class code needs to be examined to see what effect the change may have. User code needs to change only when the interface changes. If the data are **public**, then any code that used the old data members might be broken. It would be necessary to locate and rewrite any code that relied on the old representation before the program could be used again.

Another advantage of making data members **private** is that the data are protected from mistakes that users might introduce. If there is a bug that corrupts an object's state, the places to look for the bug are localized: Only code that is part of the implementation could be responsible for the error. The search for the mistake is limited, greatly easing the problems of maintenance and program correctness.



Although user code need not change when a class definition changes, the source files that use a class must be recompiled any time the class changes.

### Declarations for Friends

A **friend** declaration only specifies access. It is not a general declaration of the function. If we want users of the class to be able to call a friend function, then we must also declare the function separately from the **friend**



declaration.

To make a friend visible to users of the class, we usually declare each friend (outside the class) in the same header as the class itself. Thus, our `Sales_data` header should provide separate declarations (aside from the friend declarations inside the class body) for `read`, `print`, and `add`.



Many compilers do not enforce the rule that friend functions must be declared outside the class before they can be used.

Some compilers allow calls to a friend function when there is no ordinary declaration for that function. Even if your compiler allows such calls, it is a good idea to provide separate declarations for friends. That way you won't have to change your code if you use a compiler that enforces this rule.

### Exercises Section 7.2.1

**Exercise 7.20:** When are friends useful? Discuss the pros and cons of using friends.

**Exercise 7.21:** Update your `Sales_data` class to hide its implementation. The programs you've written to use `Sales_data` operations should still continue to work. Recompile those programs with your new class definition to verify that they still work.

**Exercise 7.22:** Update your `Person` class to hide its implementation.

## 7.3 Additional Class Features

The `Sales_data` class is pretty simple, yet it allowed us to explore quite a bit of the language support for classes. In this section, we'll cover some additional class-related features that `Sales_data` doesn't need to use. These features include type members, in-class initializers for members of class type, `mutable` data members, `inline` member functions, returning `*this` from a member function, more about how we define and use class types, and class friendship.

### 7.3.1 Class Members Revisited

To explore several of these additional features, we'll define a pair of cooperating classes named `Screen` and `Window_mgr`.

#### Defining a Type Member

A `Screen` represents a window on a display. Each `Screen` has a `string` member that holds the `Screen`'s contents, and three `string::size_type` members that represent the position of the cursor, and the height and width of the screen.

In addition to defining data and function members, a class can define its own local names for types. Type names defined by a class are subject to the same access controls as any other member and may be either `public` or `private`:

```
class Screen {
public:
    typedef std::string::size_type pos;
private:
    pos cursor = 0;
    pos height = 0, width = 0;
    std::string contents;
};
```

We defined `pos` in the `public` part of `Screen` because we want users to use that name. Users of `Screen` shouldn't know that `Screen` uses a `string` to hold its data. By defining `pos` as a `public` member, we can hide this detail of how `Screen` is implemented.

There are two points to note about the declaration of `pos`. First, although we used a `typedef` (§ 2.5.1, p. 53), we can equivalently use a `alias` declaration (§ 2.5.1, p. 53):

```
class Screen {
public:
    // alternative way to declare a type member using a alias declaration
```

```

    using pos = std::string::size_type;
    // other members as before
};

```

The second point is that, for reasons we'll explain in § 7.4.1 (p. 216), unlike ordinary members, members that define types must appear before they are used. As a result, type members usually appear at the beginning of the class.

### Member Functions of class Screen

To make our class more useful, we'll add a constructor that will let users define the size and contents of the screen, along with members to move the cursor and to get the character at a given location:

```

class Screen {
public:
    typedef std::string::size_type pos;
    Screen() = default; // needed because Screen has another constructor
    // cursor initialized to 0 by its in-class initializer
    Screen(pos ht, pos wd, char c): height(ht), width(wd), contents(ht * wd, c) { }
    char get() const // get the character at the cursor
        { return contents[cursor]; } // implicitly inline
    inline char get(pos ht, pos wd) const; // explicitly inline
    Screen &move(pos r, pos c); // can be made inline later
private:
    pos cursor = 0;
    pos height = 0, width = 0;
    std::string contents;
};

```

Because we have provided a constructor, the compiler will not automatically generate a default constructor for us. If our class is to have a default constructor, we must say so explicitly. In this case, we use `= default` to ask the compiler to synthesize the default constructor's definition for us (§ 7.1.4, p. 200).

It's also worth noting that our second constructor (that takes three arguments) implicitly uses the in-class initializer for the `cursor` member (§ 7.1.4, p. 202). If our class did not have an in-class initializer for `cursor`, we would have explicitly initialized `cursor` along with the other members.

### Making Members inline

Classes often have small functions that can benefit from being inlined. As we've seen, member functions defined inside the class are automatically `inline` (§ 6.5.2, p. 181). Thus, `Screen`'s constructors and the version of `get` that returns the character denoted by the cursor are `inline` by default.

We can explicitly declare a member function as `inline` as part of its declaration inside the class body. Alternatively, we can specify `inline` on the function definition that appears outside the class body:

```

inline // we can specify inline on the definition
Screen &Screen::move(pos r, pos c)
{
    pos row = r * width; // compute the row location
    cursor = row + c ; // move cursor to the column within that row
    return *this; // return this object as an lvalue
}
char Screen::get(pos r, pos c) const // declared as inline in the class
{
    pos row = r * width; // compute row location
    return contents[row + c]; // return character at the given column
}

```

Although we are not required to do so, it is legal to specify `inline` on both the declaration and the definition. However, specifying `inline` only on the definition outside the class can make the class easier to read.



For the same reasons that we define `inline` functions in headers (§ 6.5.2, p. 182), `inline` member functions should be defined in the same header as the corresponding class definition.

## Overloading Member Functions

As with nonmember functions, member functions may be overloaded (§ 6.4, p. 175) so long as the functions differ by the number and/or types of parameters. The same function-matching (§ 6.6, p. 184) process is used for calls to member functions as for nonmember functions.

For example, our `Screen` class defined two versions of `get`. One version returns the character currently denoted by the cursor; the other returns the character at a given position specified by its row and column. The compiler uses the number of arguments to determine which version to run:

```
Screen myscreen;
char ch = myscreen.get(); // calls Screen::get()
ch = myscreen.get(0,0); // calls Screen::get(pos, pos)
```

## mutable Data Members

It sometimes (but not very often) happens that a class has a data member that we want to be able to modify, even inside a `const` member function. We indicate such members by including the `mutable` keyword in their declaration.

A **mutable data member** is never `const`, even when it is a member of a `const` object. Accordingly, a `const` member function may change a `mutable` member. As an example, we'll give `Screen` a `mutable` member named `access_ctr`, which we'll use to track how often each `Screen` member function is called:

```
class Screen {
public:
    void some_member() const;
private:
    mutable size_t access_ctr; // may change even in a const object
    // other members as before
};
void Screen::some_member() const
{
    ++access_ctr; // keep a count of the calls to any member function
    // whatever other work this member needs to do
}
```

Despite the fact that `some_member` is a `const` member function, it can change the value of `access_ctr`. That member is a `mutable` member, so any member function, including `const` functions, can change its value.

## Initializers for Data Members of Class Type

In addition to defining the `Screen` class, we'll define a window manager class that represents a collection of `Screens` on a given display. This class will have a `vector` of `Screens` in which each element represents a particular `Screen`. By default, we'd like our `Window_mgr` class to start up with a single, default-initialized `Screen`. Under the new standard, the best way to specify this default value is as an in-class initializer (§ 2.6.1, p. 57):

```
class Window_mgr {
private:
    // Screens this Window_mgr is tracking
    // by default, a Window_mgr has one standard sized blank Screen
    std::vector<Screen> screens{Screen(24, 80, ' ')};
};
```

When we initialize a member of class type, we are supplying arguments to a constructor of that member's type. In this case, we list initialize our `vector` member (§ 3.3.1, p. 76) with a single element initializer. That initializer contains a `Screen` value that is passed to the `vector<Screen>` constructor to create a one-element `vector`. That value is created by the `Screen` constructor that takes two size parameters and a character to create a blank screen of the given size.

As we've seen, in-class initializers must use either the `=` form of initialization (which we used when we initialized the the data members of `Screen`) or the direct form of initialization using curly braces (as we do for `screens`).



When we provide an in-class initializer, we must do so following an = sign or inside curly braces.

### Exercises Section 7.3.1

**Exercise 7.23:** Write your own version of the `Screen` class.

**Exercise 7.24:** Give your `Screen` class three constructors: a default constructor; a constructor that takes values for height and width and initializes the contents to hold the given number of blanks; and a constructor that takes values for height, width, and a character to use as the contents of the screen.

**Exercise 7.25:** Can `Screen` safely rely on the default versions of copy and assignment? If so, why? If not, why not?

**Exercise 7.26:** Define `Sales_data::avg_price` as an inline function.

## 7.3.2 Functions That Return `*this`

Next we'll add functions to set the character at the cursor or at a given location:

```
class Screen {
public:
    Screen &set(char);
    Screen &set(pos, pos, char);
    // other members as before
};
inline Screen &Screen::set(char c)
{
    contents[cursor] = c; // set the new value at the current cursor location
    return *this; // return this object as an lvalue
}
inline Screen &Screen::set(pos r, pos col, char ch)
{
    contents[r*width + col] = ch; // set specified location to given value
    return *this; // return this object as an lvalue
}
```

Like the `move` operation, our `set` members return a reference to the object on which they are called (§ 7.1.2, p. 198). Functions that return a reference are lvalues (§ 6.3.2, p. 172), which means that they return the object itself, not a copy of the object. If we concatenate a sequence of these actions into a single expression:

```
// move the cursor to a given position, and set that character
myScreen.move(4,0).set('#');
```

these operations will execute on the same object. In this expression, we first move the `cursor` inside `myScreen` and then set a character in `myScreen`'s `contents` member. That is, this statement is equivalent to

```
myScreen.move(4,0);
myScreen.set('#');
```

Had we defined `move` and `set` to return `Screen`, rather than `Screen&`, this statement would execute quite differently. In this case it would be equivalent to:

```
// if move returns Screen not Screen&
Screen temp = myScreen.move(4,0); // the return value would be copied
temp.set('#'); // the contents inside myScreen would be unchanged
```

If `move` had a nonreference return type, then the return value of `move` would be a copy of `*this` (§ 6.3.2, p. 171). The call to `set` would change the temporary copy, not `myScreen`.

### Returning `*this` from a const Member Function

Next, we'll add an operation, which we'll name `display`, to print the contents of the `Screen`. We'd like to be able to include this operation in a sequence of `set` and `move` operations. Therefore, like `set` and `move`, our `display` function will return a reference to the object on which it executes.

Logically, displaying a `Screen` doesn't change the object, so we should make `display` a `const` member. If `display` is a `const` member, then `this` is a pointer to `const` and `*this` is a `const` object. Hence, the return type of `display` must be `const Sales_data&`. However, if `display` returns a reference to `const`, we won't be able to embed `display` into a series of actions:

```
Screen myScreen;
// if display returns a const reference, the call to set is an error
myScreen.display(cout).set('*');
```

Even though `myScreen` is a `nonconst` object, the call to `set` won't compile. The problem is that the `const` version of `display` returns a reference to `const` and we cannot call `set` on a `const` object.



A `const` member function that returns `*this` as a reference should have a return type that is a reference to `const`.

## Overloading Based on `const`

We can overload a member function based on whether it is `const` for the same reasons that we can overload a function based on whether a pointer parameter points to `const` (§ 6.4, p. 176). The `nonconst` version will not be viable for `const` objects; we can only call `const` member functions on a `const` object. We can call either version on a `nonconst` object, but the `nonconst` version will be a better match.

In this example, we'll define a private member named `do_display` to do the actual work of printing the `Screen`. Each of the `display` operations will call this function and then return the object on which it is executing:

```
class Screen {
public:
    // display overloaded on whether the object is const or not
    Screen &display(std::ostream &os) { do_display(os); return *this; }
    const Screen &display(std::ostream &os) const { do_display(os); return *this; }
private:
    // function to do the work of displaying a Screen
    void do_display(std::ostream &os) const {os << contents;}
    // other members as before
};
```

As in any other context, when one member calls another the `this` pointer is passed implicitly. Thus, when `display` calls `do_display`, its own `this` pointer is implicitly passed to `do_display`. When the `nonconst` version of `display` calls `do_display`, its `this` pointer is implicitly converted from a pointer to `nonconst` to a pointer to `const` (§ 4.11.2, p. 123).

When `do_display` completes, the `display` functions each return the object on which they execute by dereferencing `this`. In the `nonconst` version, `this` points to a `nonconst` object, so that version of `display` returns an ordinary (`nonconst`) reference; the `const` member returns a reference to `const`.

When we call `display` on an object, whether that object is `const` determines which version of `display` is called:

```
Screen myScreen(5,3);
const Screen blank(5, 3);
myScreen.set('#').display(cout); // calls non const version
blank.display(cout); // calls const version
```

**Advice: Use Private Utility Functions for Common Code**

Some readers might be surprised that we bothered to define a separate `do_display` operation. After all, the calls to `do_display` aren't much simpler than the action done inside `do_display`. Why bother? We do so for several reasons:

- A general desire to avoid writing the same code in more than one place.
- We expect that the `display` operation will become more complicated as our class evolves. As the actions involved become more complicated, it makes more obvious sense to write those actions in one place, not two.
- It is likely that we might want to add debugging information to `do_display` during development that would be eliminated in the final product version of the code. It will be easier to do so if only one definition of `do_display` needs to be changed to add or remove the debugging code.
- There needn't be any overhead involved in this extra function call. We defined `do_display` inside the class body, so it is implicitly `inline`. Thus, there likely be no run-time overhead associating with calling `do_display`.

In practice, well-designed C++ programs tend to have lots of small functions such as `do_display` that are called to do the “real” work of some other set of functions.

**Exercises Section 7.3.2**

**Exercise 7.27:** Add the `move`, `set`, and `display` operations to your version of `Screen`. Test your class by executing the following code:

```
Screen myScreen(5, 5, 'X');
myScreen.move(4,0).set('#').display(cout);
cout << "\n";
myScreen.display(cout);
cout << "\n";
```

**Exercise 7.28:** What would happen in the previous exercise if the return type of `move`, `set`, and `display` was `Screen` rather than `Screen&`?

**Exercise 7.29:** Revise your `Screen` class so that `move`, `set`, and `display` functions return `Screen` and check your prediction from the previous exercise.

**Exercise 7.30:** It is legal but redundant to refer to members through the `this` pointer. Discuss the pros and cons of explicitly using the `this` pointer to access members.

**7.3.3 Class Types**

Every class defines a unique type. Two different classes define two different types even if they define the same members. For example:

```
struct First {
    int mem1;
    int getMem();
};
struct Second {
    int mem1;
    int getMem();
};
First obj1;
Second obj2 = obj1; // error: obj1 and obj2 have different types
```



Even if two classes have exactly the same member list, they are different types. The members of each class are distinct from the members of any other class (or any other scope).

We can refer to a class type directly, by using the class name as a type name. Alternatively, we can use the class name following the keyword `class` or `struct`:

```
Sales_data item1; // default-initialized object of type Sales_data
class Sales_data item1; // equivalent declaration
```

Both methods of referring to a class type are equivalent. The second method is inherited from C and is also valid in C++.

## Class Declarations

Just as we can declare a function apart from its definition (§ 6.1.2, p. 158), we can also declare a class without defining it:

```
class Screen; // declaration of the Screen class
```

This declaration, sometimes referred to as a **forward declaration**, introduces the name `Screen` into the program and indicates that `Screen` refers to a class type. After a declaration and before a definition is seen, the type `Screen` is an **incomplete type**—it's known that `Screen` is a class type but not known what members that type contains.

We can use an incomplete type in only limited ways: We can define pointers or references to such types, and we can declare (but not define) functions that use an incomplete type as a parameter or return type.

A class must be defined—not just declared—before we can write code that creates objects of that type. Otherwise, the compiler does not know how much storage such objects need. Similarly, the class must be defined before a reference or pointer is used to access a member of the type. After all, if the class has not been defined, the compiler can't know what members the class has.

With one exception that we'll describe in § 7.6 (p. 228), data members can be specified to be of a class type only if the class has been defined. The type must be complete because the compiler needs to know how much storage the data member requires. Because a class is not defined until its class body is complete, a class cannot have data members of its own type. However, a class is considered declared (but not yet defined) as soon as its class name has been seen. Therefore, a class can have data members that are pointers or references to its own type:

```
class Link_screen {
    Screen window;
    Link_screen *next;
    Link_screen *prev;
};
```

### Exercises Section 7.3.3

**Exercise 7.31:** Define a pair of classes `X` and `Y`, in which `X` has a pointer to `Y`, and `Y` has an object of type `X`.

## 7.3.4 Friendship Revisited

Our `Sales_data` class defined three ordinary nonmember functions as friends (§ 7.2.1, p. 204). A class can also make another class its friend or it can declare specific member functions of another (previously defined) class as friends. In addition, a friend function can be defined inside the class body. Such functions are implicitly `inline`.

### Friendship between Classes

As an example of class friendship, our `Window_mgr` class (§ 7.3.1, p. 208) will have members that will need access to the internal data of the `Screen` objects it manages. For example, let's assume that we want to add a member, named `clear` to `Window_mgr` that will reset the contents of a particular `Screen` to all blanks. To do this job, `clear` needs to access the `private` data members of `Screen`. To allow this access, `Screen` can designate `Window_mgr` as its friend:

```
class Screen {
    // Window_mgr members can access the private parts of class Screen
    friend class Window_mgr;
    // ... rest of the Screen class
};
```



The member functions of a friend class can access all the members, including the nonpublic members, of the class granting friendship. Now that `Window_mgr` is a friend of `Screen`, we can write the `clear` member of `Window_mgr` as follows:

```
class Window_mgr {
public:
    // location ID for each screen on the window
    using ScreenIndex = std::vector<Screen>::size_type;
    // reset the Screen at the given position to all blanks
    void clear(ScreenIndex);
private:
    std::vector<Screen> screens{Screen(24, 80, ' ')};
};
void Window_mgr::clear(ScreenIndex i)
{
    // s is a reference to the Screen we want to clear
    Screen &s = screens[i];
    // reset the contents of that Screen to all blanks
    s.contents = string(s.height * s.width, ' ');
}
```

We start by defining `s` as a reference to the `Screen` at position `i` in the `screens` vector. We then use the `height` and `width` members of that `Screen` to compute a new `string` that has the appropriate number of blank characters. We assign that string of blanks to the `contents` member.

If `clear` were not a friend of `Screen`, this code would not compile. The `clear` function would not be allowed to use the `height`, `width`, or `contents` members of `Screen`. Because `Screen` grants friendship to `Window_mgr`, all the members of `Screen` are accessible to the functions in `Window_mgr`.

It is important to understand that friendship is not transitive. That is, if class `Window_mgr` has its own friends, those friends have no special access to `Screen`.

Each `class` controls which classes or functions are its friends.

### Making A Member Function a Friend

Rather than making the entire `Window_mgr` class a friend, `Screen` can instead specify that only the `clear` member is allowed access. When we declare a member function to be a friend, we must specify the class of which that function is a member:

```
class Screen {
    // Window_mgr::clear must have been declared before class Screen
    friend void Window_mgr::clear(ScreenIndex);
    // ... rest of the Screen class
};
```

Making a member function a friend requires careful structuring of our programs to accommodate interdependencies among the declarations and definitions. In this example, we must order our program as follows:

- First, define the `Window_mgr` class, which declares, but cannot define, `clear`. `Screen` must be defined before `clear` can use the members of `Screen`.
- Next, define class `Screen`, including a friend declaration for `clear`.
- Finally, define `clear`, which can now refer to the members in `Screen`.

### Overloaded Functions and Friendship

Although overloaded functions share a common name, they are still different functions. Therefore, a class must declare as a friend each function in a set of overloaded functions that it wishes to make a friend:

```
// overloaded storeOn functions
// there is no need for the extern notation before a function declaration
extern std::ostream& storeOn(std::ostream&, Screen &);
extern BitMap& storeOn(BitMap&, Screen &);

class Screen {
```

```

    // ostream version of storeOn may access the private parts of Screen objects
    friend std::ostream& storeOn(std::ostream &, Screen &);
    // . . .
};

```

Class `Screen` makes the version of `storeOn` that takes an `ostream&` its friend. The version that takes a `BitMap&` has no special access to `Screen`.

### Friend Declarations and Scope

Classes and nonmember functions need not have been declared before they are used in a friend declaration. When a name first appears in a friend declaration, that name is implicitly assumed to be part of the surrounding scope. However, the friend itself is not actually declared in that scope (§ 7.2.1, p. 205).

Even if we define the function inside the class, we must still provide a declaration outside of the class itself to make that function visible. A declaration must exist even if we only call the friend from members of the friendship granting class:

```

struct X {
    friend void f() { /* friend function can be defined in the class body */ }
    X() { f(); } // error: no declaration for f
    void g();
    void h();
};
void X::g() { return f(); } // error: f hasn't been declared
void f(); // declares the function defined inside X
void X::h() { return f(); } // ok: declaration for f is now in scope

```

It is important to understand that a friend declaration affects access but is not a declaration in an ordinary sense.



Remember, some compilers do not enforce the lookup rules for friends (§ 7.2.1, p. 205).

### Exercises Section 7.3.4

**Exercise 7.32:** Define your own versions of `Screen` and `Window_mgr` in which `clear` is a member of `Window_mgr` and a friend of `Screen`.

## 7.4 Class Scope

Every class defines its own new scope. Outside the class scope, ordinary data and function members may be accessed only through an object, a reference, or a pointer using a member access operator (§ 4.6, p. 114). We access type members from the class using the scope operator `.`. In either case, the name that follows the operator must be a member of the associated class.

```

Screen::pos ht = 24, wd = 80; // use the pos type defined by Screen
Screen scr(ht, wd, ' ');
Screen *p = &scr;
char c = scr.get(); // fetches the get member from the object scr
c = p->get(); // fetches the get member from the object to which p points

```

### Scope and Members Defined outside the Class

The fact that a class is a scope explains why we must provide the class name as well as the function name when we define a member function outside its class (§ 7.1.2, p. 196). Outside of the class, the names of the members are hidden.

Once the class name is seen, the remainder of the definition—including the parameter list and the function body—is in the scope of the class. As a result, we can refer to other class members without qualification.

For example, recall the `clear` member of class `Window_mgr` (§ 7.3.4, p. 213). That function's parameter uses a type that is defined by `Window_mgr`:

```
void Window_mgr::clear(ScreenIndex i)
{
    Screen &s = screens[i];
    s.contents = string(s.height * s.width, ' ');
}
```

Because the compiler sees the parameter list after noting that we are in the scope of class `WindowMgr`, there is no need to specify that we want the `ScreenIndex` that is defined by `WindowMgr`. For the same reason, the use of `screens` in the function body refers to name declared inside class `Window_mgr`.

On the other hand, the return type of a function normally appears before the function's name. When a member function is defined outside the class body, any name used in the return type is outside the class scope. As a result, the return type must specify the class of which it is a member. For example, we might give `Window_mgr` a function, named `addScreen`, to add another screen to the display. This member will return a `ScreenIndex` value that the user can subsequently use to locate this `Screen`:

```
class Window_mgr {
public:
    // add a Screen to the window and returns its index
    ScreenIndex addScreen(const Screen&);
    // other members as before
};
// return type is seen before we're in the scope of Window_mgr
Window_mgr::ScreenIndex
Window_mgr::addScreen(const Screen &s)
{
    screens.push_back(s);
    return screens.size() - 1;
}
```

Because the return type appears before the name of the class is seen, it appears outside the scope of class `Window_mgr`. To use `ScreenIndex` for the return type, we must specify the class in which that type is defined.

### Exercises Section 7.4.0

**Exercise 7.33:** What would happen if we gave `Screen` a `size` member defined as follows? Fix any problems you identify.

```
pos Screen::size() const
{
    return height * width;
}
```

## 7.4.1 Name Lookup and Class Scope

In the programs we've written so far, **name lookup** (the process of finding which declarations match the use of a name) has been relatively straightforward:

- First, look for a declaration of the name in the block in which the name was used. Only names declared before the use are considered.
- If the name isn't found, look in the enclosing (i.e. outer) scope(s).
- If no declaration is found, then the program is in error.

The way names are resolved inside member functions defined inside the class may seem to behave differently than these lookup rules. However, in this case, appearances are deceiving. Class definitions are processed in two phases:

- First, the member declarations are compiled.
- Function bodies are compiled only after the entire class has been seen.



Member function definitions are processed after the compiler processes all of the declarations in the class.

Classes are processed in this two-phase way to make it easier to organize class code. Because member function bodies are not processed until the entire class is seen, they can use any name defined inside the class. If function definitions were processed at the same time as the member declarations, then we would have to order the member functions so that they referred only to names already seen.

### Name Lookup for Class Member Declarations

This two-step process applies only to names used in the body of a member function. Names used in declarations, including names used for the return type and types in the parameter list, must be seen before they are used. If a member declaration uses a name that has not yet been seen inside the class, the compiler will look for that name in the scope(s) in which the class is defined. For example:

```
typedef double Money;
string bal;

class Account {
public:
    Money balance() { return bal; }
private:
    Money bal;
    // ...
};
```

When the compiler sees the declaration of the `balance` function, it will look for a declaration of `Money` in the `Account` class. The compiler considers only declarations inside `Account` that appear before the use of `Money`. Because no matching member is found, the compiler then looks for a declaration in the enclosing scope(s). In this example, the compiler will find the `typedef` of `Money`. That type will be used for the return type of the function `balance` and as the type for the data member `bal`. On the other hand, the function body of `balance` is processed only after the entire class is seen. Thus, the `return` inside that function returns the member named `bal`, not the `string` from the outer scope.

### Type Names Are Special

Ordinarily, an inner scope can redefine a name from an outer scope even if that name has already been used in the inner scope. However, in a class, if a member uses a name from an outer scope and that name is a type, then the class may not subsequently redefine that name:

```
typedef double Money;
class Account {
public:
    Money balance() { return bal; } // uses Money from the outer scope
private:
    typedef double Money; // error: cannot redefine Money
    Money bal;
    // ...
};
```

It is worth noting that even though the definition of `Money` inside `Account` uses the same type as the definition in the outer scope, this code is still in error.

Although it is an error to redefine a type name, compilers are not required to diagnose this error. Some compilers will quietly accept such code, even though the program is in error.



Definitions of type names usually should appear at the beginning of a class. That way any member that uses that type will be seen after the type name has already been defined.

### Normal Block-Scope Name Lookup inside Member Definitions

A name used in the body of a member function is resolved as follows:

- First, look for a declaration of the name inside the member function. As usual, only declarations in the function body that precede the use of the name are considered.
- If the declaration is not found inside the member function, look for a declaration inside the class. All the members of the class are considered.
- If a declaration for the name is not found in the class, look for a declaration that is in scope before the member function definition.

Ordinarily, it is a bad idea to use the name of another member as the name for a parameter in a member function. However, in order to show how names are resolved, we'll violate that normal practice in our `dummy_fcn` function:

```
// note: this code is for illustration purposes only and reflects bad practice
// it is generally a bad idea to use the same name for a parameter and a member
int height; // defines a name subsequently used inside Screen
class Screen {
public:
    typedef std::string::size_type pos;
    void dummy_fcn(pos height) {
        cursor = width * height; // which height? the parameter
    }
private:
    pos cursor = 0;
    pos height = 0, width = 0;
};
```

When the compiler processes the multiplication expression inside `dummy_fcn`, it first looks for the names used in that expression in the scope of that function. A function's parameters are in the function's scope. Thus, the name `height`, used in the body of `dummy_fcn`, refers to this parameter declaration.

In this case, the `height` parameter hides the member named `height`. If we wanted to override the normal lookup rules, we can do so:

```
// bad practice: names local to member functions shouldn't hide member names
void Screen::dummy_fcn(pos height) {
    cursor = width * this->height; // member height
    // alternative way to indicate the member
    cursor = width * Screen::height; // member height
}
```



Even though the class member is hidden, it is still possible to use that member by qualifying the member's name with the name of its class or by using the `this` pointer explicitly.

A much better way to ensure that we get the member named `height` would be to give the parameter a different name:

```
// good practice: don't use a member name for a parameter or other local variable
void Screen::dummy_fcn(pos ht) {
    cursor = width * height; // member height
}
```

In this case, when the compiler looks for the name `height`, it won't be found inside `dummy_fcn`. The compiler next looks at all the declarations in `Screen`. Even though the declaration of `height` appears after its use inside `dummy_fcn`, the compiler resolves this use to the data member named `height`.

### After Class Scope, Look in the Surrounding Scope

If the compiler doesn't find the name in function or class scope, it looks for the name in the surrounding scope. In our example, the name `height` is defined in the outer scope before the definition of `Screen` (being defined before the definition of `dummy_fcn` is enough). However, the object in the outer scope is hidden by our member named `height`. If we want the name from the outer scope, we can ask for it explicitly using the scope operator:

```
// bad practice: don't hide names that are needed from surrounding scopes
void Screen::dummy_fcn(pos height) {
    cursor = width * ::height; // which height? the global one
}
```



Even though the outer object is hidden, it is still possible to access that object by using the scope operator.

### Names Are Resolved Where They Appear within a File

When a member is defined outside its class, the third step of name lookup includes names declared in the scope of the member definition as well as those that appear in the scope of the class definition. For example:

```
int height; // defines a name subsequently used inside Screen
class Screen {
public:
    typedef std::string::size_type pos;
    void setHeight(pos);
    pos height = 0; // hides the declaration of height in the outer scope
};
Screen::pos verify(Screen::pos);
void Screen::setHeight(pos var) {
    // var: refers to the parameter
    // height: refers to the class member
    // verify: refers to the global function
    height = verify(var);
}
```

Notice that the declaration of the global function `verify` is not visible before the definition of the class `Screen`. However, the third step of name lookup includes the scope in which the member definition appears. In this example, the declaration for `verify` appears before `setHeight` is defined and may, therefore, be used.

#### Exercises Section 7.4.1

**Exercise 7.34:** What would happen if we put the `typedef` of `pos` in the `Screen` class on page 217 as the last line in the class?

**Exercise 7.35:** Explain the following code, indicating which definition of `Type` or `initVal` is used for each use of those names. Say how you would fix any errors.

```
typedef string Type;
Type initVal();
class Exercise {
public:
    typedef double Type;
    Type setVal(Type);
    Type initVal();
private:
    int val;
};
Type Exercise::setVal(Type parm) {
    val = parm + initVal();
    return val;
}
```

## 7.5 Constructors Revisited

Constructors are a crucial part of any C++ class. We covered the basics of constructors in § 7.1.4 (p. 199). In this section we'll cover some additional capabilities of constructors, and deepen our coverage of the material introduced earlier.

### 7.5.1 Constructor Initializer List

When we define variables, we typically initialize them immediately rather than defining them and then assigning to them:

```
string foo = "Hello World!"; // define and initialize
string bar; // default initialized to the empty string
bar = "Hello World!"; // assign a new value to bar
```

Exactly the same distinction between initialization and assignment applies to the data members of objects. If we do not explicitly initialize a member in the constructor initializer list, that member is default initialized before the constructor body starts executing. For example:

```
// legal but sloppier way to write the Sales_data constructor: no constructor initializers
Sales_data::Sales_data(const string &s,
    unsigned cnt, double price)
{
    bookNo = s;
    units_sold = cnt;
    revenue = cnt * price;
}
```

This version and our original definition on page 201 have the same effect: When the constructor finishes, the data members will hold the same values. The difference is that the original version initializes its data members, whereas this version assigns values to the data members. How significant this distinction is depends on the type of the data member.

#### Constructor Initializers Are Sometimes Required

We can often, but not always, ignore the distinction between whether a member is initialized or assigned. Members that are `const` or references must be initialized. Similarly, members that are of a class type that does not define a default constructor also must be initialized. For example:

```
class ConstRef {
public:
    ConstRef(int ii);
private:
    int i;
    const int ci;
    int &ri;
};
```

Like any other `const` object or reference, the members `ci` and `ri` must be initialized. As a result, omitting a constructor initializer for these members is an error:

```
// error: ci and ri must be initialized
ConstRef::ConstRef(int ii)
{
    // assignments:
    i = ii; // ok
    ci = ii; // error: cannot assign to a const
    ri = i; // error: ri was never initialized
}
```

By the time the body of the constructor begins executing, initialization is complete. Our only chance to initialize `const` or reference data members is in the constructor initializer. The correct way to write this constructor is

```
// ok: explicitly initialize reference and const members
ConstRef::ConstRef(int ii): i(ii), ci(ii), ri(i) { }
```



We must use the constructor initializer list to provide values for members that are `const`, reference, or of a class type that does not have a default constructor.



**Advice: Use Constructor Initializers**

In many classes, the distinction between initialization and assignment is strictly a matter of low-level efficiency: A data member is initialized and then assigned when it could have been initialized directly.

More important than the efficiency issue is the fact that some data members must be initialized. By routinely using constructor initializers, you can avoid being surprised by compile-time errors when you have a class with a member that requires a constructor initializer.

**Order of Member Initialization**

Not surprisingly, each member may be named only once in the constructor initializer. After all, what might it mean to give a member two initial values?

What may be more surprising is that the constructor initializer list specifies only the values used to initialize the members, not the order in which those initializations are performed.

Members are initialized in the order in which they appear in the class definition: The first member is initialized first, then the next, and so on. The order in which initializers appear in the constructor initializer list does not change the order of initialization.

The order of initialization often doesn't matter. However, if one member is initialized in terms of another, then the order in which members are initialized is crucially important.

As an example, consider the following class:

```
class X {
    int i;
    int j;
public:
    // undefined: i is initialized before j
    X(int val): j(val), i(j) { }
};
```

In this case, the constructor initializer makes it appear as if `j` is initialized with `val` and then `j` is used to initialize `i`. However, `i` is initialized first. The effect of this initializer is to initialize `i` with the undefined value of `j`!

Some compilers are kind enough to generate a warning if the data members are listed in the constructor initializer in a different order from the order in which the members are declared.



It is a good idea to write constructor initializers in the same order as the members are declared. Moreover, when possible, avoid using members to initialize other members.

If possible, it is a good idea write member initializers to use the constructor's parameters rather than another data member from the same object. That way we don't even have to think about the order of member initialization. For example, it would be better to write the constructor for `X` as

```
X(int val): i(val), j(val) { }
```

In this version, the order in which `i` and `j` are initialized doesn't matter.

**Default Arguments and Constructors**

The actions of the `Sales_data` default constructor are similar to those of the constructor that takes a single `string` argument. The only difference is that the constructor that takes a `string` argument uses that argument to initialize `bookNo`. The default constructor (implicitly) uses the `string` default constructor to initialize `bookNo`. We can rewrite these constructors as a single constructor with a default argument (§ 6.5.1, p. 179):

```
class Sales_data {
public:
    // defines the default constructor as well as one that takes a string argument
    Sales_data(std::string s = ""): bookNo(s) { }
    // remaining constructors unchanged
    Sales_data(std::string s, unsigned cnt, double rev):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(cnt), revenue(rev*cnt) { }
    Sales_data(std::istream &is) { read(is, *this); }
    // remaining members as before
};
```

This version of our class provides the same interface as our original on page 201. Both versions create the same object when given no arguments or when given a single `string` argument. Because we can call this constructor with no arguments, this constructor defines a default constructor for our class.



A constructor that supplies default arguments for all its parameters also defines the default constructor.

It is worth noting that we probably should not use default arguments with the `Sales_data` constructor that takes three arguments. If a user supplies a nonzero count for the number of books sold, we want to ensure that the user also supplies the price at which those books were sold.

### Exercises Section 7.5.1

**Exercise 7.36:** The following initializer is in error. Identify and fix the problem.

```
struct X {
    X (int i, int j): base(i), rem(base % j) { }
    int rem, base;
};
```

**Exercise 7.37:** Using the version of `Sales_data` from this section (page 220), determine which constructor is used to initialize each of the following variables and list the values of the data members in each object:

```
Sales_data first_item(cin);
int main() {
    Sales_data next;
    Sales_data last("9-999-99999-9");
}
```

**Exercise 7.38:** We might want to supply `cin` as a default argument to the constructor that takes an `istream&`. Write the constructor declaration that uses `cin` as a default argument.

**Exercise 7.39:** Would it be legal for both the constructor that takes a `string` and the one that takes an `istream&` to have default arguments? If not, why not?

**Exercise 7.40:** Choose one of the following abstractions (or an abstraction of your own choosing). Determine what data are needed in the class. Provide an appropriate set of constructors. Explain your decisions.

- (a) Book
- (b) Date
- (c) Employee
- (d) Vehicle
- (e) Object
- (f) Tree

## 7.5.2 Delegating Constructors

The new standard extends the use of constructor initializers to let us define so-called **delegating constructors**. A delegating constructor uses another constructor from its own class to perform its initialization. It is said to “delegate” some (or all) of its work to this other constructor.

Like any other constructor, a delegating constructor has a member initializer list and a function body. In a delegating constructor, the member initializer list has a single entry that is the name of the class itself. Like other member initializers, the name of the class is followed by a parenthesized list of arguments. The argument list must match another constructor in the class.

As an example, we’ll rewrite the `Sales_data` class to use delegating constructors as follows:

```
class Sales_data {
public:
    // nondelegating constructor initializes members from corresponding arguments
    Sales_data(std::string s, unsigned cnt, double price):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(cnt), revenue(cnt*price) {
    }
```

```

    // remaining constructors all delegate to another constructor
    Sales_data(): Sales_data("", 0, 0) {}
    Sales_data(std::string s): Sales_data(s, 0,0) {}
    Sales_data(std::istream &is): Sales_data()
        { read(is, *this); }
    // other members as before
};

```

In this version of `Sales_data`, all but one of the constructors delegate their work. The first constructor takes three arguments, uses those arguments to initialize the data members, and does no further work. In this version of the class, we define the default constructor to use the three-argument constructor to do its initialization. It too has no additional work, as indicated by the empty constructor body. The constructor that takes a string also delegates to the three-argument version.

The constructor that takes an `istream&` also delegates. It delegates to the default constructor, which in turn delegates to the three-argument constructor. Once those constructors complete their work, the body of the `istream&` constructor is run. Its constructor body calls `read` to read the given `istream`.

When a constructor delegates to another constructor, the constructor initializer list and function body of the delegated-to constructor are both executed. In `Sales_data`, the function bodies of the delegated-to constructors happen to be empty. Had the function bodies contained code, that code would be run before control returned to the function body of the delegating constructor.

### Exercises Section 7.5.2

**Exercise 7.41:** Rewrite your own version of the `Sales_data` class to use delegating constructors. Add a statement to the body of each of the constructors that prints a message whenever it is executed. Write declarations to construct a `Sales_data` object in every way possible. Study the output until you are certain you understand the order of execution among delegating constructors.

**Exercise 7.42:** For the class you wrote for exercise 7.40 in § 7.5.1 (p. 220), decide whether any of the constructors might use delegation. If so, write the delegating constructor(s) for your class. If not, look at the list of abstractions and choose one that you think would use a delegating constructor. Write the class definition for that abstraction.

### 7.5.3 The Role of the Default Constructor

The default constructor is used automatically whenever an object is default or value initialized. Default initialization happens

- When we define `nonstatic` variables (§ 6.1.1, p. 157) or arrays (§ 3.5.1, p. 86) at block scope without initializers
- When a class that itself has members of class type uses the synthesized default constructor (§ 7.1.4, p. 200)
- When members of class type are not explicitly initialized in a constructor initializer list (§ 7.1.4, p. 201)

Value initialization happens

- During array initialization when we provide fewer initializers than the size of the array (§ 3.5.1, p. 87)
- When we define a global object (§ 2.2.1, p. 34) or a local `static` object (§ 6.1.1, p. 157) without an initializer
- When we create a nameless temporary object of the form `T()` or `T{}`, or when a named variable is declared of the form `T object{}`
- The `vector` constructor that takes a single argument to specify the `vector`'s size (§ 3.3.1, p. 76) value initializes its element initializer.

Classes must have a default constructor in order to be used in these contexts. Most of these contexts should be fairly obvious.

What may be less obvious is the impact on classes that have data members that do not have a default constructor:

```

class NoDefault {
public:
    NoDefault(const std::string&);
    // additional members follow, but no other constructors
};
struct A {
    // my_mem is public by default
    NoDefault my_mem;
};
A a; // error: cannot synthesize a constructor for A
struct B {
    B() {} // error: no initializer for b_member
    NoDefault b_member;
};

```



In practice, it is almost always right to provide a default constructor if other constructors are being defined.

### Using the Default Constructor

The following declaration of `obj` compiles without complaint. However, when we try to use `obj`

```

Sales_data obj(); // ok: but defines a function, not an object
if (obj.isbn() == Primer_5th_ed.isbn()) // error: obj is a function

```

the compiler complains that we cannot apply member access notation to a function. The problem is that, although we intended to declare a default-initialized object, `obj` actually declares a function taking no parameters and returning an object of type `Sales_data`.

The correct way to define an object that uses the default constructor for initialization is to leave off the trailing, empty parentheses:

```

// ok: obj is a default-initialized object
Sales_data obj;

```



It is a common mistake among programmers new to C++ to try to declare an object initialized with the default constructor as follows:

```

Sales_data obj(); // oops! declares a function, not an object
Sales_data obj2; // ok: obj2 is an object, not a function

```

### Exercises Section 7.5.3

**Exercise 7.43:** Assume we have a class named `NoDefault` that has a constructor that takes an `int`, but has no default constructor. Define a class `C` that has a member of type `NoDefault`. Define the default constructor for `C`.

**Exercise 7.44:** Is the following declaration legal? If not, why not?

```
vector<NoDefault> vec(10);
```

**Exercise 7.45:** What if we defined the `vector` in the previous exercise to hold objects of type `C`?

**Exercise 7.46:** Which, if any, of the following statements are untrue? Why?

- A class must provide at least one constructor.
- A default constructor is a constructor with an empty parameter list.
- If there are no meaningful default values for a class, the class should not provide a default constructor.
- If a class does not define a default constructor, the compiler generates one that initializes each data member to the default value of its associated type.

### 7.5.4 Implicit Class-Type Conversions

As we saw in § 2.1.2 (p. 27), the language defines several automatic conversions among the built-in types. We also noted that classes can define implicit conversions as well. Every constructor that can be called with a single argument defines an implicit conversion to a class type. Such constructors are sometimes referred to as **converting constructors**. We'll see in § 14.9 (p. 286) how to define conversions from a class type to another type.



A constructor that can be called with a single argument defines an implicit conversion from the constructor's parameter type to the class type.

The `Sales_data` constructors that take a `string` and that take an `istream` both define implicit conversions from those types to `Sales_data`. That is, we can use a `string` or an `istream` where an object of type `Sales_data` is expected:

```
string null_book = "9-999-99999-9";
// constructs a temporary Sales_data object
// with units_sold and revenue equal to 0 and bookNo equal to null_book
item.combine(null_book);
```

Here we call the `Sales_data` `combine` member function with a `string` argument. This call is perfectly legal; the compiler automatically creates a `Sales_data` object from the given `string`. That newly generated (temporary) `Sales_data` is passed to `combine`. Because `combine`'s parameter is a reference to `const`, we can pass a temporary to that parameter.

#### Only One Class-Type Conversion Is Allowed

In § 4.11.2 (p. 123) we noted that the compiler will automatically apply only one class-type conversion. For example, the following code is in error because it implicitly uses two conversions:

```
// error: requires two user-defined conversions:
// (1) convert "9-999-99999-9" to string
// (2) convert that (temporary) string to Sales_data
item.combine("9-999-99999-9");
```

If we wanted to make this call, we can do so by explicitly converting the character string to either a `string` or a `Sales_data` object:

```
// ok: explicit conversion to string, implicit conversion to Sales_data
item.combine(string("9-999-99999-9"));
// ok: implicit conversion to string, explicit conversion to Sales_data
item.combine(Sales_data("9-999-99999-9"));
```

#### Class-Type Conversions Are Not Always Useful

Whether the conversion of a `string` to `Sales_data` is desired depends on how we think our users will use the conversion. In this case, it might be okay. The `string` in `null_book` probably represents a nonexistent ISBN.

More problematic is the conversion from `istream` to `Sales_data`:

```
// uses the istream constructor to build an object to pass to combine
item.combine(cin);
```

This code implicitly converts `cin` to `Sales_data`. This conversion executes the `Sales_data` constructor that takes an `istream`. That constructor creates a (temporary) `Sales_data` object by reading the standard input. That object is then passed to `combine`.

This `Sales_data` object is a temporary (§ 2.4.1, p. 47). We have no access to it once `combine` finishes. Effectively, we have constructed an object that is discarded after we add its value into `item`.

#### Suppressing Implicit Conversions Defined by Constructors

We can prevent the use of a constructor in a context that requires an implicit conversion by declaring the constructor as **explicit**:

```
class Sales_data {
public:
    Sales_data() = default;
    Sales_data(const std::string &s, unsigned n, double p):
        bookNo(s), units_sold(n), revenue(p*n) { }
    explicit Sales_data(const std::string &s): bookNo(s) { }
    explicit Sales_data(std::istream&);
    // remaining members as before
};
```

Now, neither constructor can be used to implicitly create a `Sales_data` object. Neither of our previous uses will compile:

```
item.combine(null_book); // error: string constructor is explicit
item.combine(cin); // error: istream constructor is explicit
```

The `explicit` keyword is meaningful only on constructors that can be called with a single argument. Constructors that require more arguments are not used to perform an implicit conversion, so there is no need to designate such constructors as `explicit`. The `explicit` keyword is used only on the constructor declaration inside the class. It is not repeated on a definition made outside the class body:

```
// error: explicit allowed only on a constructor declaration in a class header
explicit Sales_data::Sales_data(istream& is){
    read(is, *this);
}
```

### explicit Constructors Can Be Used Only for Direct Initialization

One context in which implicit conversions happen is when we use the copy form of initialization (with an `=`) (§ 3.2.1, p. 67). We cannot use an `explicit` constructor with this form of initialization; we must use direct initialization:

```
Sales_data item1 (null_book); // ok: direct initialization
// error: cannot use the copy form of initialization with an explicit constructor
Sales_data item2 = null_book;
```



When a constructor is declared `explicit`, it can be used only with the direct form of initialization (§ 3.2.1, p. 67). Moreover, the compiler will not use this constructor in an automatic conversion

### Explicitly Using Constructors for Conversions

Although the compiler will not use an `explicit` constructor for an implicit conversion, we can use such constructors explicitly to force a conversion:

```
// ok: the argument is an explicitly constructed Sales_data object
item.combine(Sales_data(null_book));
// ok: static_cast can use an explicit constructor
item.combine(static_cast<Sales_data>(cin));
```

In the first call, we use the `Sales_data` constructor directly. This call constructs a temporary `Sales_data` object using the `Sales_data` constructor that takes a `string`. In the second call, we use a `static_cast` (§ 4.11.3, p. 124) to perform an explicit, rather than an implicit, conversion. In this call, the `static_cast` uses the `istream` constructor to construct a temporary `Sales_data` object.

### Library Classes with explicit Constructors

Some of the library classes that we've used have single-parameter constructors:

- The `string` constructor that takes a single parameter of type `const char*` (§ 3.2.2, p. 70) is not `explicit`.
- The `vector` constructor that takes a size (§ 3.3.1, p. 76) is `explicit`.

### Exercises Section 7.5.4

**Exercise 7.47:** Explain whether the `Sales_data` constructor that takes a `string` should be `explicit`. What are the benefits of making the constructor `explicit`? What are the drawbacks?

**Exercise 7.48:** Assuming the `Sales_data` constructors are not `explicit`, what operations happen during the following definitions

```
string null_isbn("9-999-99999-9");
Sales_data item1(null_isbn);
Sales_data item2("9-999-99999-9");
```

What happens if the `Sales_data` constructors are `explicit`?

**Exercise 7.49:** For each of the three following declarations of `combine`, explain what happens if we call `i.combine(s)`, where `i` is a `Sales_data` and `s` is a `string`:

- (a) `Sales_data &combine(Sales_data);`
- (b) `Sales_data &combine(Sales_data&);`
- (c) `Sales_data &combine(const Sales_data&) const;`

**Exercise 7.50:** Determine whether any of your `Person` class constructors should be `explicit`.

**Exercise 7.51:** Why do you think `vector` defines its single-argument constructor as `explicit`, but `string` does not?

### 7.5.5 Aggregate Classes

An **aggregate class** gives users direct access to its members and has special initialization syntax. A class is an aggregate if

- All of its data members are `public`
- It does not define any constructors
- It has no in-class initializers (§ 2.6.1, p. 57)
- It has no base classes or virtual functions, which are class-related features that we'll cover in Chapter 15

For example, the following class is an aggregate:

```
struct Data {
    int ival;
    string s;
};
```

We can initialize the data members of an aggregate class by providing a braced list of member initializers:

```
// val1.ival = 0; val1.s = string("Anna")
Data val1 = { 0, "Anna" };
```

The initializers must appear in declaration order of the data members. That is, the initializer for the first member is first, for the second is next, and so on. The following, for example, is an error:

```
// error: can't use "Anna" to initialize ival, or 1024 to initialize s
Data val2 = { "Anna", 1024 };
```

As with initialization of array elements (§ 3.5.1, p. 87), if the list of initializers has fewer elements than the class has members, the trailing members are value initialized. The list of initializers must not contain more elements than the class has members.

It is worth noting that there are three significant drawbacks to explicitly initializing the members of an object of class type:

- It requires that all the data members of the class be `public`.
- It puts the burden on the user of the class (rather than on the class author) to correctly initialize every member of every object. Such initialization is tedious and error-prone because it is easy to forget an initializer or to supply an inappropriate initializer.
- If a member is added or removed, all initializations have to be updated.



### Exercises Section 7.5.5

**Exercise 7.52:** Using our first version of `Sales_data` from § 2.6.1 (p. 56), explain the following initialization. Identify and fix any problems.

```
Sales_data item = {"978-0590353403", 25, 15.99};
```

### 7.5.6 Literal Classes

In § 6.5.2 (p. 182) we noted that the parameters and return type of a `constexpr` function must be literal types. In addition to the arithmetic types, references, and pointers, certain classes are also literal types. Unlike other classes, classes that are literal types may have function members that are `constexpr`. Such members must meet all the requirements of a `constexpr` function. These member functions are implicitly `const` (§ 7.1.2, p. 197).

An aggregate class (§ 7.5.5, p. 226) whose data members are all of literal type is a literal class. A nonaggregate class, that meets the following restrictions, is also a literal class:

- The data members all must have literal type.
- The class must have at least one `constexpr` constructor.
- If a data member has an in-class initializer, the initializer for a member of built-in type must be a constant expression (§ 2.4.4, p. 51), or if the member has class type, the initializer must use the member's own `constexpr` constructor.
- The class must use default definition for its destructor, which is the member that destroys objects of the class type (§ 13.1.3, p. 278).

#### `constexpr` Constructors

Although constructors can't be `const`, constructors in a literal class can be `constexpr` functions. Indeed, a literal class must provide at least one `constexpr` constructor.

A `constexpr` constructor can be declared as `= default` (§ 7.1.4, p. 201) (or as a deleted function, which we cover in § 13.1.6 (p. 283)). Otherwise, a `constexpr` constructor must meet the requirements of a constructor—meaning it can have no return statement—and of a `constexpr` function—meaning the only executable statement it can have is a `return` statement. As a result, the body of a `constexpr` constructor is typically empty. We define a `constexpr` constructor by preceding its declaration with the keyword `constexpr`:

```
class Debug {
public:
    constexpr Debug(bool b = true): hw(b), io(b), other(b) {}
    constexpr Debug(bool h, bool i, bool o): hw(h), io(i), other(o) {}
    constexpr bool any() { return hw || io || other; }
    void set_io(bool b) { io = b; }
    void set_hw(bool b) { hw = b; }
    void set_other(bool b) { other = b; }
private:
    bool hw; // hardware errors other than IO errors
    bool io; // IO errors
    bool other; // other errors
};
```

A `constexpr` constructor must initialize every data member. The initializers must either use a `constexpr` constructor or be a constant expression.

A `constexpr` constructor is used to generate objects that are `constexpr` and for parameters or return types in `constexpr` functions:

```
constexpr Debug io_sub(false, true, false); // debugging IO
if (io_sub.any()) // equivalent to if(true)
    cerr << "print appropriate error messages" << endl;
constexpr Debug prod(false); // no debugging during production
if (prod.any()) // equivalent to if(false)
    cerr << "print an error message" << endl;
```

### Exercises Section 7.5.6

**Exercise 7.53:** Define your own version of `Debug`.

**Exercise 7.54:** Should the members of `Debug` that begin with `set_` be declared as `constexpr`? If not, why not?

**Exercise 7.55:** Is the `Data` class from § 7.5.5 (p. 226) a literal class? If not, why not? If so, explain why it is literal.

## 7.6 static Class Members

Classes sometimes need members that are associated with the class, rather than with individual objects of the class type. For example, a bank account class might need a data member to represent the current prime interest rate. In this case, we'd want to associate the rate with the class, not with each individual object. From an efficiency standpoint, there'd be no reason for each object to store the rate. Much more importantly, if the rate changes, we'd want each object to use the new value.

### Declaring static Members

We say a member is associated with the class by adding the keyword `static` to its declaration. Like any other member, `static` members can be `public` or `private`. The type of a `static` data member can be `const`, reference, array, class type, and so forth.

As an example, we'll define a class to represent an account record at a bank:

```
class Account {
public:
    void calculate() { amount += amount * interestRate; }
    static double rate() { return interestRate; }
    static void rate(double);
private:
    std::string owner;
    double amount;
    static double interestRate;
    static double initRate();
};
```

The `static` members of a class exist outside any object. Objects do not contain data associated with `static` data members. Thus, each `Account` object will contain two data members—`owner` and `amount`. There is only one `interestRate` object that will be shared by all the `Account` objects.

Similarly, `static` member functions are not bound to any object; they do not have a `this` pointer. As a result, `static` member functions may not be declared as `const`, and we may not refer to `this` in the body of a `static` member. This restriction applies both to explicit uses of `this` and to implicit uses of `this` by calling a nonstatic member.

### Using a Class static Member

We can access a `static` member directly through the scope operator:

```
double r;
r = Account::rate(); // access a static member using the scope operator
```

Even though `static` members are not part of the objects of its class, we can use an object, reference, or pointer of the class type to access a `static` member:

```
Account ac1;
Account *ac2 = &ac1;
// equivalent ways to call the static member rate function
r = ac1.rate(); // through an Account object or reference
r = ac2->rate(); // through a pointer to an Account object
```

Member functions can use `static` members directly, without the scope operator:

```
class Account {
public:
    void calculate() { amount += amount * interestRate; }
private:
    static double interestRate;
    // remaining members as before
};
```

## Defining static Members

As with any other member function, we can define a **static** member function inside or outside of the class body. When we define a **static** member outside the class, we do not repeat the **static** keyword. The keyword appears only with the declaration inside the class body:

```
void Account::rate(double newRate)
{
    interestRate = newRate;
}
```



As with any class member, when we refer to a class **static** member outside the class body, we must specify the class in which the member is defined. The **static** keyword, however, is used only on the declaration inside the class body.

Because **static** data members are not part of individual objects of the class type, they are not defined when we create objects of the class. As a result, they are not initialized by the class' constructors. Moreover, in general, we may not initialize a **static** member inside the class. Instead, we must define and initialize each **static** data member outside the class body. Like any other object, a **static** data member may be defined only once.

Like global objects (§ 6.1.1, p. 157), static data members are defined outside any function. Hence, once they are defined, they continue to exist until the program completes.

We define a **static** data member similarly to how we define class member functions outside the class. We name the object's type, followed by the name of the class, the scope operator, and the member's own name:

```
// define and initialize a static class member
double Account::interestRate = initRate();
```

This statement defines the object named **interestRate** that is a **static** member of class **Account** and has type **double**. Once the class name is seen, the remainder of the definition is in the scope of the class. As a result, we can use **initRate** without qualification as the initializer for **rate**. Note also that even though **initRate** is **private**, we can use this function to initialize **interestRate**. The definition of **interestRate**, like any other member definition, has access to the **private** members of the class.



The best way to ensure that the object is defined exactly once is to put the definition of **static** data members in the same file that contains the definitions of the class noninline member functions.

## In-Class Initialization of static Data Members

Ordinarily, class **static** members may not be initialized in the class body. However, we can provide in-class initializers for **static** members that have **const** integral type and must do so for **static** members that are **constexpr** of literal type (§ 7.5.6, p. 227). The initializers must be constant expressions. Such members are themselves constant expressions; they can be used where a constant expression is required. For example, we can use an initialized **static** data member to specify the dimension of an array member:

```
class Account {
public:
    static double rate() { return interestRate; }
    static void rate(double);
private:
    static constexpr int period = 30; // period is a constant expression
    double daily_tbl[period];
};
```

If the member is used only in contexts where the compiler can substitute the member's value, then an initialized `const` or `constexpr static` need not be separately defined. However, if we use the member in a context in which the value cannot be substituted, then there must be a definition for that member.

For example, if the only use we make of `period` is to define the dimension of `daily_tbl`, there is no need to define `period` outside of `Account`. However, if we omit the definition, it is possible that even seemingly trivial changes to the program might cause the program to fail to compile because of the missing definition. For example, if we pass `Account::period` to a function that takes a `const int&`, then `period` must be defined.

If an initializer is provided inside the class, the member's definition must not specify an initial value:

```
// definition of a static member with no initializer
constexpr int Account::period; // initializer provided in the class declaration
```



Even if a `const static` data member is initialized in the class body, that member ordinarily should be defined outside the class definition.

### static Members Can Be Used in Ways Ordinary Members Can't

As we've seen, `static` members exist independently of any other object. As a result, they can be used in ways that would be illegal for `nonstatic` data members. As one example, a `static` data member can have incomplete type (§ 7.3.3, p. 212). In particular, a `static` data member can have the same type as the class type of which it is a member. A `nonstatic` data member is restricted to being declared as a pointer or a reference to an object of its class:

```
class Bar {
public:
    // ...
private:
    static Bar mem1; // ok: static member can have incomplete type
    Bar *mem2; // ok: pointer member can have incomplete type
    Bar mem3; // error: data members must have complete type
};
```

Another difference between `static` and ordinary members is that we can use a `static` member as a default argument (§ 6.5.1, p. 179):

```
class Screen {
public:
    // bkground refers to the static member
    // declared later in the class definition
    Screen& clear(char = bkground);
private:
    static const char bkground;
};
```

A `nonstatic` data member may not be used as a default argument because its value is part of the object of which it is a member. Using a `nonstatic` data member as a default argument provides no object from which to obtain the member's value and so is an error.

### Exercises Section 7.6.0

**Exercise 7.56:** What is a `static` class member? What are the advantages of `static` members? How do they differ from ordinary members?

**Exercise 7.57:** Write your own version of the `Account` class.

**Exercise 7.58:** Which, if any, of the following static data member declarations and definitions are errors? Explain why.

```
// example.h
class Example {
public:
    static double rate = 6.5;
    static const int vecSize = 20;
    static vector<double> vec(vecSize);
};
// example.C
#include "example.h"
double Example::rate;
vector<double> Example::vec;
```

## Chapter Summary

Classes are the most fundamental feature in C++. Classes let us define new types for our applications, making our programs shorter and easier to modify.

Data abstraction—the ability to define both data and function members—and encapsulation—the ability to protect class members from general access—are fundamental to classes. We encapsulate a class by defining its implementation members as **private**. Classes may grant access to their nonpublic member by designating another class or function as a **friend**.

Classes may define constructors, which are special member functions that control how objects are initialized. Constructors may be overloaded. Constructors should use a constructor initializer list to initialize all the data members.

Classes may also define **mutable** or **static** members. A **mutable** member is a data member that is never **const**; its value may be changed inside a **const** member function. A **static** member can be either function or data; **static** members exist independently of the objects of the class type.

## Defined Terms

**abstract data type** Data structure that encapsulates (hides) its implementation.

**access specifier** Keywords **public** and **private**. Used to define whether members are accessible to users of the class or only to friends and members of the class. Specifiers may appear multiple times within a class. Each specifier sets the access of the following members up to the next specifier.

**aggregate class** Class with only **public** data members that has no in-class initializers or constructors. Members of an aggregate can be initialized by a braceenclosed list of initializers.

**class** C++ mechanism for defining our own abstract data types. Classes may have data, function, or type members. A class defines a new type and a new scope.

**class declaration** The keyword **class** (or **struct**) followed by the class name followed by a semicolon. If a class is declared but not defined, it is an incomplete type.

**class keyword** Keyword used to define a class; by default members are **private**.

**class scope** Each class defines a scope. Class scopes are more complicated than other scopes—member functions defined within the class body may use names that appear even after the definition.

**const member function** A member function that may not change an object's ordinary (i.e., neither **static** nor **mutable**) data members. The **this** pointer in a **const** member is a pointer to **const**. A member function may be overloaded based on whether the function is **const**.

**constructor** A special member function used to initialize objects. Each constructor should give each data member a well-defined initial value.

**constructor initializer list** Specifies initial values of the data members of a class. The members are

initialized to the values specified in the initializer list before the body of the constructor executes. Class members that are not initialized in the initializer list are default initialized.

**converting constructor** A **nonexplicit** constructor that can be called with a single argument. Such constructors implicitly convert from the argument's type to the class type.

**data abstraction** Programming technique that focuses on the interface to a type. Data abstraction lets programmers ignore the details of how a type is represented and think instead about the operations that the type can perform. Data abstraction is fundamental to both object-oriented and generic programming.

**default constructor** Constructor that is used if no initializer is supplied.

**delegating constructor** Constructor with a constructor-initializer list that has one entry that designates another constructor of the same class to do the initialization.

**encapsulation** Separation of implementation from interface; encapsulation hides the implementation details of a type. In C++, encapsulation is enforced by putting the implementation in the **private** part of a class.

**explicit constructor** Constructor that can be called with a single argument but cannot be used in an implicit conversion. A constructor is made explicit by prepending the keyword **explicit** to its declaration.

**forward declaration** Declaration of an as yet undefined name. Most often used to refer to the declaration of a class that appears prior to the definition of that class. See incomplete type.

**friend** Mechanism by which a class grants access to its nonpublic members. Friends have the same access rights as members. Both classes and functions may be named as friends.

**implementation** The (usually **private**) members of a class that define the data and any operations that are not intended for use by code that uses the type.

**incomplete type** Type that is declared but not defined. It is not possible to use an incomplete type to define a variable or class member. It is legal to define references or pointers to incomplete types.

**interface** The (**public**) operations supported by a type. Ordinarily, the interface does not include data members.

**member function** Class member that is a function. Ordinary member functions are bound to an object of the class type through the implicit **this** pointer. **static** member functions are not bound to an object and have no **this** pointer. Member functions may be overloaded; when they are, the implicit **this** pointer participates in the function matching.

**mutable data member** Data member that is never **const**, even when it is a member of a **const** object. A **mutable** member can be changed inside a **const** function.

**name lookup** Process by which the use of a name is matched to its declaration

**private members** Members defined after a **private** access specifier; accessible only to the friends and other

class members. Data members and utility functions used by the class that are not part of the type's interface are usually declared **private**.

**public members** Members defined after a **public** access specifier; accessible to any user of the class. Ordinarily, only the functions that define the interface to the class should be defined in the **public** sections.

**struct keyword** Keyword used to define a class; by default members are **public**.

**synthesized default constructor** The default constructor created (synthesized) by the compiler for classes that do not explicitly define any constructors. This constructor initializes the data members from their in-class initializers, if present; otherwise it default initializes the data members.

**this pointer** Implicit value passed as an extra argument to every **nonstatic** member function. The **this** pointer points to the object on which the function is invoked.

**= default** Syntax used after the parameter list of the declaration of the default constructor inside a class to signal to the compiler that it should generate the constructor, even if the class has other constructors.



# Part II

## The C++ Library

### Contents

Chapter 8 The IO Library .....	235
Chapter 9 Sequential Containers .....	249
Chapter 10 Generic Algorithms .....	267
Chapter 11 Associative Containers .....	270
Chapter 12 Dynamic Memory .....	273

With each revision of the C++ language, the library has also grown. Indeed, more than two-thirds of the text of the new standard is devoted to the library. Although we cannot cover every library facility in depth, there are core facilities that the library defines that every C++ programmer should be comfortable using. We cover these core facilities in this part.

We'll start by covering the basic IO library facilities in Chapter 8. Beyond using the library to read and write streams associated with the console window, the library defines types that let us read and write named files and do in-memory IO to **strings**.

Central to the library are a number of container classes and a family of generic algorithms that let us write programs that are succinct and efficient. The library worries about bookkeeping details—in particular, taking care of memory management—so that our programs can worry about the actual problems we need to solve.

In Chapter 3 we introduced the **vector** container type. We'll learn more about **vector** in Chapter 9, which will cover the other sequential container types as well. We'll also cover more operations provided by the **string** type. We can think of a **string** as a special kind of container that contains only characters. The **string** type supports many, but not all, of the container operations.

Chapter 10 introduces the generic algorithms. The algorithms typically operate on a range of elements in a sequential container or other sequence. The algorithms library offers efficient implementations of various classical algorithms, such as sorting and searching, and other common tasks as well. For example, there is a **copy** algorithm, which copies elements from one sequence to another; **find**, which looks for a given element; and so on. The algorithms are generic in two ways: They can be applied to different kinds of sequences, and those sequences may contain elements of most types.

The library also provides several associative containers, which are the topic of Chapter 11. Elements in an associative container are accessed by key. The associative containers share many operations with the sequential containers and also define operations that are specific to the associative containers.

This part concludes with Chapter 12, which looks at language and library facilities for managing dynamic memory. This chapter covers one of the most important new library classes, which are standardized versions of smart pointers. By using smart pointers, we can make code that uses dynamic memory much more robust. This chapter closes with an extended example that uses library facilities introduced throughout Part II.

## Chapter 8

# The IO Library

### Contents

---

8.1 The IO Classes .....	236
8.2 File Input and Output .....	241
8.3 string Streams .....	245
Chapter Summary .....	248
Defined Terms .....	248

---

The C++ language does not deal directly with input and output. Instead, IO is handled by a family of types defined in the standard library. These types support IO to and from devices such as files and console windows. Additional types allow inmemory IO to and from `strings`.

The IO library defines operations to read and write values of the built-in types. In addition, classes, such as `string`, typically define similar IO operations to work on objects of their class type as well.

This chapter introduces the fundamentals of the IO library. Later chapters will cover additional capabilities: Chapter 14 will look at how we can write our own input and output operators, and Chapter 17 will cover how to control formatting and how to perform random access on files.

Our programs have already used many IO library facilities. Indeed, we introduced most of these facilities in § 1.2 (p. 4):

- `istream` (input stream) type, which provides input operations
- `ostream` (output stream) type, which provides output operations
- `cin`, an `istream` object that reads the standard input
- `cout`, an `ostream` object that writes to the standard output
- `cerr`, an `ostream` object, typically used for program error messages, that writes to the standard error
- The `>>` operator, which is used to read input from an `istream` object
- The `<<` operator, which is used to write output to an `ostream` object
- The `getline` function (§ 3.2.2, p. 68), which reads a line of input from a given `istream` into a given `string`

## 8.1 The IO Classes

The IO types and objects that we’ve used so far manipulate `char` data. By default these objects are connected to the user’s console window. Of course, real programs cannot be limited to doing IO solely to or from a console window. Programs often need to read or write named files. Moreover, it can be convenient to use IO operations to process the characters in a `string`. Applications also may have to read and write languages that require wide-character support.

To support these different kinds of IO processing, the library defines a collection of IO types in addition to the `istream` and `ostream` types that we have already used. These types, which are listed in Table ?? are defined in three separate headers: `istream` defines the basic types used to read from and write to a stream, `fstream` defines the types used to read and write named files, and `sstream` defines the types used to read and write in-memory `strings`.

Table 8.1: IO Library Types and Headers

Header	Type
<code>istream</code>	<code>istream</code> , <code>wistream</code> reads from a stream
	<code>ostream</code> , <code>wostream</code> writes to a stream
	<code>istream</code> , <code>wistream</code> reads and writes a stream
<code>fstream</code>	<code>ifstream</code> , <code>wifstream</code> reads from a file
	<code>ofstream</code> , <code>wofstream</code> writes to a file
	<code>fstream</code> , <code>wfstream</code> reads and writes a file
<code>sstream</code>	<code>istringstream</code> , <code>wistringstream</code> reads from a <code>string</code>
	<code>ostringstream</code> , <code>wostringstream</code> writes to a <code>string</code>
	<code>stringstream</code> , <code>wstringstream</code> reads and writes a <code>string</code>

To support languages that use wide characters, the library defines a set of types and objects that manipulate `wchar_t` data (§ 2.1.1, p. 25). The names of the wide-character versions begin with a `w`. For example, `wcin`, `wcout`, and `wcerr` are the wide-character objects that correspond to `cin`, `cout`, and `cerr`, respectively. The wide-character types and objects are defined in the same header as the plain `char` types. For example, the `fstream` header defines both the `ifstream` and `wifstream` types.

### Relationships among the IO Types

Conceptually, neither the kind of device nor the character size affects the IO operations we want to perform. For example, we’d like to use `>>` to read data regardless of whether we’re reading a console window, a disk file, or a `string`. Similarly, we’d like to use that operator regardless of whether the characters we read fit in a `char` or require a `wchar_t`.

The library lets us ignore the differences among these different kinds of streams by using [inheritance](#). As with templates (§ 3.3, p. 74), we can use classes related by inheritance without understanding the details of how inheritance works. We’ll cover how C++ supports inheritance in Chapter 15 and in § 18.3 (p. 330).

Briefly, inheritance lets us say that a particular class inherits from another class. Ordinarily, we can use an object of an inherited class as if it were an object of the same type as the class from which it inherits.

The types `ifstream` and `istringstream` inherit from `istream`. Thus, we can use objects of type `ifstream` or `istringstream` as if they were `istream` objects. We can use objects of these types in the same ways as we have used `cin`. For example, we can call `getline` on an `ifstream` or `istringstream` object, and we can use the `>>` to read data from an `ifstream` or `istringstream`. Similarly, the types `ofstream` and `ostringstream` inherit from `ostream`. Therefore, we can use objects of these types in the same ways that we have used `cout`.



Everything that we cover in the remainder of this section applies equally to plain streams, file streams, and `string` streams and to the `char` or widecharacter stream versions.

### 8.1.1 No Copy or Assign for IO Objects

As we saw in § 7.1.3 (p. 199), we cannot copy or assign objects of the IO types:

```
ofstream out1, out2;
out1 = out2; // error: cannot assign stream objects
ofstream print(outstream); // error: can't initialize the ofstream parameter
out2 = print(out2); // error: cannot copy stream objects
```

Because we can't copy the IO types, we cannot have a parameter or return type that is one of the stream types. Functions that do IO typically pass and return the stream through references. Reading or writing an IO object changes its state, so the reference must not be `const`.

### 8.1.2 Condition States

Inherent in doing IO is the fact that errors can occur. Some errors are recoverable; others occur deep within the system and are beyond the scope of a program to correct. The IO classes define functions and flags, listed in Table 8.2, that let us access and manipulate the **condition state** of a stream.

Table 8.2: IO Library Condition State

<code>strm::iostate</code>	<code>strm</code> is one of the IO types listed in Table 8.1. <code>iostate</code> is a machine-dependent integral type that represents the condition state of a stream.
<code>strm::badbit</code>	<code>strm::iostate</code> value used to indicate that a stream is corrupted.
<code>strm::failbit</code>	<code>strm::iostate</code> value used to indicate that an IO operation failed.
<code>strm::eofbit</code>	<code>strm::iostate</code> value used to indicate that a stream hit end-of-file.
<code>strm::goodbit</code>	<code>strm::iostate</code> value used to indicate that a stream is not in an error state. This value is guaranteed to be zero.
<code>s.eof()</code>	true if <code>eofbit</code> in the stream <code>s</code> is set.
<code>s.fail()</code>	true if <code>failbit</code> or <code>badbit</code> in the stream <code>s</code> is set.
<code>s.bad()</code>	true if <code>badbit</code> in the stream <code>s</code> is set.
<code>s.good()</code>	true if stream <code>s</code> is in a valid state.
<code>s.clear()</code>	Reset all condition values in the stream <code>s</code> to valid state. Return void.
<code>s.clear(flags)</code>	Reset the condition of <code>s</code> to <code>flags</code> . Type of <code>flags</code> is <code>strm::iostate</code> . Return void.
<code>s.setstate(flags)</code>	Adds specified condition(s) to <code>s</code> . Type of <code>flags</code> is <code>strm::iostate</code> . Returns void.
<code>s.rdstate()</code>	Returns current condition of <code>s</code> as a <code>strm::iostate</code> value.

As an example of an IO error, consider the following code:

```
int ival;
cin >> ival;
```

If we enter `Boo` on the standard input, the read will fail. The input operator expected to read an `int` but got the character `B` instead. As a result, `cin` will be put in an error state. Similarly, `cin` will be in an error state if we enter an end-of-file.

Once an error has occurred, subsequent IO operations on that stream will fail. We can read from or write to a stream only when it is in a non-error state. Because a stream might be in an error state, code ordinarily should check whether a stream is okay before attempting to use it. The easiest way to determine the state of a stream object is to use that object as a condition:

```
while (cin >> word)
    // ok: read operation successful . . .
```

The `while` condition checks the state of the stream returned from the `>>` expression. If that input operation succeeds, the state remains valid and the condition will succeed.

## Interrogating the State of a Stream

Using a stream as a condition tells us only whether the stream is valid. It does not tell us what happened. Sometimes we also need to know why the stream is invalid. For example, what we do after hitting end-of-file is likely to differ from what we'd do if we encounter an error on the IO device.

The IO library defines a machine-dependent integral type named `iosstate` that it uses to convey information about the state of a stream. This type is used as a collection of bits, in the same way that we used the `quiz1` variable in § 4.8 (p. 118). The IO classes define four `constexpr` values (§ 2.4.4, p. 51) of type `iosstate` that represent particular bit patterns. These values are used to indicate particular kinds of IO conditions. They can be used with the bitwise operators (§ 4.8, p. 116) to test or set multiple flags in one operation.

The `badbit` indicates a system-level failure, such as an unrecoverable read or write error. It is usually not possible to use a stream once `badbit` has been set. The `failbit` is set after a recoverable error, such as reading a character when numeric data was expected. It is often possible to correct such problems and continue using the stream. Reaching end-of-file sets both `eofbit` and `failbit`. The `goodbit`, which is guaranteed to have the value 0, indicates no failures on the stream. If any of `badbit`, `failbit`, or `eofbit` are set, then a condition that evaluates that stream will fail.



It's possible that `eofbit` is set but the `failbit` is not.

The library also defines a set of functions to interrogate the state of these flags. The `good` operation returns `true` if none of the error bits is set. The `bad`, `fail`, and `eof` operations return `true` when the corresponding bit is on. In addition, `fail` returns `true` if `bad` is set. By implication, the right way to determine the overall state of a stream is to use either `good` or `fail`. Indeed, the code that is executed when we use a stream as a condition is equivalent to calling `!fail()`. The `eof` and `bad` operations reveal only whether those specific errors have occurred.

### All possible combinations of `strm::iosstate` flags and corresponding function value

strm::iosstate flags			accessors					
eofbit	failbit	badbit	good()	fail()	bad()	eof()	operator bool	operator!
false	false	false	true	false	false	false	true	false
false	false	true	false	true	true	false	false	true
false	true	false	false	true	false	false	false	true
false	true	true	false	true	true	false	false	true
true	false	false	false	false	false	true	true	false
true	false	true	false	true	true	true	false	true
true	true	false	false	true	false	true	false	true
true	true	true	false	true	true	true	false	true

Conversions from `strm::iosstate` value to `bool` ignore the value of `eofbit`.

### Shouldn't use `strm::eof` directly in a loop condition

Using `strm::eof` in a loop condition is "almost certainly wrong". Because `strm::eof` will only return `true` after reading the end of the stream. It does not indicate, that the next read will be the end of the stream.

Consider this (and assume then next read will be at the end of the stream):

```
while(!inStream.eof()) {
    int data;
    // yay, not end of stream yet, now read ...
    inStream >> data;
    // oh crap, now we read the end and *only* now the eofbit will be set (as well as the fail bit)
    // do stuff with (now uninitialized) data
}
```

Instead, we should write as following

```
int data;
while(inStream >> data) { // same as !(inStream >> data).eof()
    // when we land here, we can be sure that the read was successful.
    // if it wasn't, the returned stream from operator>> would be converted to false
    // and the loop wouldn't even be entered
    // do stuff with correctly initialized data (hopefully)
}
```

### Managing the Condition State

The `rdstate` member returns an `iostate` value that corresponds to the current state of the stream. The `setstate` operation turns on the given condition bit(s) to indicate that a problem occurred. The `clear` member is overloaded (§ 6.4, p. 175): One version takes no arguments and a second version takes a single argument of type `iostate`.

The version of `clear` that takes no arguments turns off all the failure bits. After `clear()`, a call to `good` returns `true`. We might use these members as follows:

```
// remember the current state of cin
auto old_state = cin.rdstate(); // remember the current state of cin
cin.clear(); // make cin valid
process_input(cin); // use cin
cin.setstate(old_state); // now reset cin to its old state
```

The version of `clear` that takes an argument expects an `iostate` value that represents the new state of the stream. To turn off a single condition, we use the `rdstate` member and the bitwise operators to produce the desired new state. For example, the following turns off `failbit` and `badbit` but leaves `eofbit` untouched:

```
// turns off failbit and badbit but all other bits unchanged
cin.clear(cin.rdstate() & ~cin.failbit & ~cin.badbit);
```



Tips

`badbit`, `failbit`, `eofbit` and `goodbit` are static members of `strm` type. We can access them through the scope operator or through an object, reference, or pointer of the class type (§ 7.6, p. 228).

### Exercises Section 8.1.2

**Exercise 8.1:** Write a function that takes and returns an `istream&`. The function should read the stream until it hits end-of-file. The function should print what it reads to the standard output. Reset the stream so that it is valid before returning the stream.

**Exercise 8.2:** Test your function by calling it, passing `cin` as an argument.

**Exercise 8.3:** What causes the following `while` to terminate?

```
while (cin >> i) /* ... */
```

### 8.1.3 Managing the Output Buffer

Each output stream manages a buffer, which it uses to hold the data that the program reads and writes. For example, when the following code is executed

```
os << "please enter a value: ";
```

the literal string might be printed immediately, or the operating system might store the data in a buffer to be printed later. Using a buffer allows the operating system to combine several output operations from our program into a single system-level write. Because writing to a device can be time-consuming, letting the operating system combine several output operations into a single write can provide an important performance boost.

There are several conditions that cause the buffer to be flushed—that is, to be written—to the actual output device or file:

- The program completes normally. All output buffers are flushed as part of the **return** from **main**.
- At some indeterminate time, the buffer can become full, in which case it will be flushed before writing the next value.
- We can flush the buffer explicitly using a manipulator such as **endl** (§ 1.2, p. 5).
- We can use the **unitbuf** manipulator to set the stream's internal state to empty the buffer after each output operation. By default, **unitbuf** is set for **cerr**, so that writes to **cerr** are flushed immediately.
- An output stream might be **tie()**'d to another stream. In this case, the buffer of the tied output stream is flushed whenever the other stream is read or written.



By default, the standard stream **cout** is **tie()**'d to **cin** and **cerr**. Similarly, its wide counterpart **wcout** is **tie()**'d to **wcin** and **wcerr**.

#### Flushing the Output Buffer

Our programs have already used the **endl** manipulator, which ends the current line and flushes the buffer. There are two other similar manipulators: **flush** and **ends**. **flush** flushes the stream but adds no characters to the output; **ends** inserts a null character into the buffer and then flushes it:

```
cout << "hi!" << endl; // writes hi and a newline, then flushes the buffer
cout << "hi!" << flush; // writes hi, then flushes the buffer; adds no data
cout << "hi!" << ends; // writes hi and a null, then flushes the buffer
```

#### The unitbuf Manipulator

If we want to flush after every output, we can use the **unitbuf** manipulator. This manipulator tells the stream to do a **flush** after every subsequent write. The **nounitbuf** manipulator restores the stream to use normal, system-managed buffer flushing:

```
cout << unitbuf; // all writes will be flushed immediately
// any output is flushed immediately, no buffering
cout << nounitbuf; // returns to normal buffering
```

#### Caution: Buffers Are Not Flushed If the Program Crashes

Output buffers are not flushed if the program terminates abnormally. When a program crashes, it is likely that data the program wrote may be sitting in an output buffer waiting to be printed.

When you debug a program that has crashed, it is essential to make sure that any output you think should have been written was actually flushed. Countless hours of programmer time have been wasted tracking through code that appeared not to have executed when in fact the buffer had not been flushed and the output was pending when the program crashed.

#### Tying Input and Output Streams Together

When an output stream is **tie()**'d to an input stream, any attempt to read the input stream will first flush the buffer associated with the output stream. The library ties **cout** to **cin**, so the statement



```
cin >> ival;
```

causes the buffer associated with `cout` to be flushed.



Interactive systems usually should tie their input stream to their output stream. Doing so means that all output, which might include prompts to the user, will be written before attempting to read the input.

There are two overloaded (§ 6.4, p. 175) versions of `tie()`: One version takes no argument and returns a pointer to the output stream, if any, to which this object is currently tied. The function returns the null pointer if the stream is not tied.

The second version of `tie()` takes a pointer to an `ostream` and ties itself to that `ostream`. That is, `x.tie(&o)` ties the stream `x` to the output stream `o`.

We can tie either an `istream` or an `ostream` object to another `ostream`:

```
cin.tie(&cout); // illustration only: the library ties cin and cout for us
// old_tie points to the stream (if any) currently tied to cin
ostream *old_tie = cin.tie(nullptr); // cin is no longer tied
// ties cin and cerr; not a good idea because cin should be tied to cout
cin.tie(&cerr); // reading cin flushes cerr, not cout
cin.tie(old_tie); // reestablish normal tie between cin and cout
```

To tie a given stream to a new output stream, we pass `tie` a pointer to the new stream. To untie the stream completely, we pass a null pointer. Each stream can be tied to at most one stream at a time. However, multiple streams can tie themselves to the same `ostream`.

The following code shows what will happen when don't tie our input stream to our output stream.

```
#include <iostream>
#include <fstream>
#include <string>

int main()
{
    std::ofstream os("test.txt");
    std::ifstream is("test.txt");
    std::string value("0");

    os << "Hello" << " World";
    is >> value;

    std::cout << "Result before tie(): \"" << value << "\"\n";
    is.clear();
    is.tie(&os);

    is >> value;

    std::cout << "Result after tie(): \"" << value << "\"\n";
}
```

Output:

```
Result before tie(): "0"
Result after tie(): "Hello"
```

## 8.2 File Input and Output

The `fstream` header defines three types to support file IO: `ifstream` to read from a given file, `ofstream` to write to a given file, and `fstream`, which reads and writes a given file. In § 17.5.3 (p. 328) we'll describe how to use the same file for both input and output.

These types provide the same operations as those we have previously used on the objects `cin` and `cout`. In particular, we can use the IO operators (`<<` and `>>`) to read and write files, we can use `getline` (§ 3.2.2, p. 68) to read an `ifstream`, and the material covered in § 8.1 (p. 236) applies to these types.

In addition to the behavior that they inherit from the `istream` types, the types defined in `fstream` add members to manage the file associated with the stream. These operations, listed in Table 8.3, can be called on objects of `fstream`, `ifstream`, or `ofstream` but not on the other IO types.

Table 8.3: `fstream`-Specific Operations

<code>fstream fstrm;</code>	Creates an unbounded file stream. <code>fstream</code> is one of the types defined in the <code>fstream</code> header.
<code>fstream fstrm(s);</code>	Creates an <code>fstream</code> and opens the file named <code>s</code> . <code>s</code> can have type <code>string</code> or can be a pointer to C-style character string (§ 3.5.4, p. 93). These constructors are <code>explicit</code> (§ 7.5.4, p. 224). The default file mode depends on the type of <code>fstream</code> .
<code>fstream fstrm(s, mode);</code>	Like the previous constructor, but opens <code>s</code> in the given <code>mode</code> .
<code>fstrm.open(s)</code>	Open the file named by the <code>s</code> and binds that file to <code>fstrm</code> . <code>s</code>
<code>fstrm.open(s, mode)</code>	can be a <code>string</code> or pointer to a C-style character string. The default file mode depends on the type of <code>fstream</code> . Returns <code>void</code> .
<code>fstrm.close()</code>	Closes the file to which <code>fstrm</code> is bound. Returns <code>void</code> .
<code>fstrm.is_open</code>	Returns a <code>bool</code> indicating whether the file associated with <code>fstrm</code> was successfully opened and has not been closed.

### 8.2.1 Using File Stream Objects

When we want to read or write a file, we define a file stream object and associate that object with the file. Each file stream class defines a member function named `open` that does whatever system-specific operations are required to locate the given file and open it for reading or writing as appropriate.

When we create a file stream, we can (optionally) provide a file name. When we supply a file name, `open` is called automatically:

```
ifstream in(ifile); // construct an ifstream and open the given file
ofstream out; // output file stream that is not associated with any file
```

This code defines `in` as an input stream that is initialized to read from the file named by the `string` argument `ifile`. It defines `out` as an output stream that is not yet associated with a file. With the new standard, file names can be either library `strings` or C-style character arrays (§ 3.5.4, p. 93). Previous versions of the library allowed only C-style character arrays.

#### Using an `fstream` in Place of an `istream&`

As we noted in § 8.1 (p. 236), we can use an object of an inherited type in places where an object of the original type is expected. This fact means that functions that are written to take a reference (or pointer) to one of the `istream` types can be called on behalf of the corresponding `fstream` (or `sstream`) type. That is, if we have a function that takes an `ostream&`, we can call that function passing it an `ofstream` object, and similarly for `istream&` and `ifstream`.

For example, we can use the `read` and `print` functions from § 7.1.3 (p. 199) to read from and write to named files. In this example, we'll assume that the names of the input and output files are passed as arguments to `main` (§ 6.2.5, p. 167):

```
ifstream input(argv[1]); // open the file of sales transactions
ofstream output(argv[2]); // open the output file
Sales_data total; // variable to hold the running sum
if (read(input, total)) { // read the first transaction
    Sales_data trans; // variable to hold data for the next transaction
    while(read(input, trans)) { // read the remaining transactions
        if (total.isbn() == trans.isbn()) // check isbn
            total.combine(trans); // update the running total
        else {
            print(output, total) << endl; // print the results
            total = trans; // process the next book
        }
    }
}
print(output, total) << endl; // print the last transaction
}
```

```
else // there was no input
    cerr << "No data?!" << endl;
```

Aside from using named files, this code is nearly identical to the version of the addition program on page 195. The important part is the calls to `read` and to `print`. We can pass our `fstream` objects to these functions even though the parameters to those functions are defined as `istream&` and `ostream&`, respectively.

### The open and close Members

When we define an empty file stream object, we can subsequently associate that object with a file by calling `open`:

```
ifstream in(ifile); // construct an ifstream and open the given file
ofstream out; // output file stream that is not associated with any file
out.open(ifile + ".copy"); // open the specified file
```

If a call to `open` fails, `failbit` is set (§ 8.1.2, p. 237). Because a call to `open` might fail, it is usually a good idea to verify that the `open` succeeded:

```
if (out) // check that the open succeeded
    // the open succeeded, so we can use the file
```

This condition is similar to those we've used on `cin`. If the `open` fails, this condition will fail and we will not attempt to use `in`.

Once a file stream has been opened, it remains associated with the specified file. Indeed, calling `open` on a file stream that is already open will fail and set `failbit`. Subsequent attempts to use that file stream will fail. To associate a file stream with a different file, we must first close the existing file. Once the file is closed, we can open a new one:

```
in.close(); // close the file
in.open(ifile + "2"); // open another file
```

If the `open` succeeds, then `open` sets the stream's state so that `good()` is `true`.

### Automatic Construction and Destruction

Consider a program whose `main` function takes a list of files it should process (§ 6.2.5, p. 167). Such a program might have a loop like the following:

```
// for each file passed to the program
for (auto p = argv + 1; p != argv + argc; ++p) {
    ifstream input(*p); // create input and open the file
    if (input) { // if the file is ok, 'process' this file
        process(input);
    }
    else
        cerr << "couldn't open: " + string(*p);
} // input goes out of scope and is destroyed on each iteration
```

Each iteration constructs a new `ifstream` object named `input` and opens it to read the given file. As usual, we check that the `open` succeeded. If so, we pass that file to a function that will read and process the input. If not, we print an error message and continue.

Because `input` is local to the `for`, it is created and destroyed on each iteration (§ 5.4.2, p. 141). When an `fstream` object goes out of scope, the file it is bound to is automatically closed. On the next iteration, `input` is created anew.



When an `fstream` object is destroyed, `close` is called automatically.

### Exercises Section 8.2.1

**Exercise 8.4:** Write a function to open a file for input and read its contents into a **vector** of **strings**, storing each line as a separate element in the **vector**.

**Exercise 8.5:** Rewrite the previous program to store each word in a separate element.

**Exercise 8.6:** Rewrite the bookstore program from § 7.1.1 (p. 195) to read its transactions from a file. Pass the name of the file as an argument to **main** (§ 6.2.5, p. 167).

## 8.2.2 File Modes

Each stream has an associated **file mode** that represents how the file may be used. Table 8.4 lists the file modes and their meanings.

Table 8.4: File Modes

<b>in</b>	Open for input
<b>out</b>	Open for output
<b>app</b>	Seek to the end before every write
<b>ate</b>	Seek to the end immediately after the open
<b>trunc</b>	Truncate the file
<b>binary</b>	Do IO operations in binary mode

We can supply a file mode whenever we open a file—either when we call **open** or when we indirectly open the file when we initialize a stream from a file name. The modes that we can specify have the following restrictions:

- **out** may be set only for an **ofstream** or **fstream** object.
- **in** may be set only for an **ifstream** or **fstream** object.
- **trunc** may be set only when **out** is also specified.
- **app** mode may be specified so long as **trunc** is not. If **app** is specified, the file is always opened in output mode, even if **out** was not explicitly specified.
- By default, a file opened in **out** mode is truncated even if we do not specify **trunc**. To preserve the contents of a file opened with **out**, either we must also specify **app**, in which case we can write only at the end of the file, or we must also specify **in**, in which case the file is open for both input and output (§ 17.5.3 (p. 328) will cover using the same file for input and output).
- The **ate** and **binary** modes may be specified on any file stream object type and in combination with any other file modes.

Each file stream type defines a default file mode that is used whenever we do not otherwise specify a mode. Files associated with an **ifstream** are opened in **in** mode; files associated with an **ofstream** are opened in **out** mode; and files associated with an **fstream** are opened with both **in** and **out** modes.

### Opening a File in out Mode Discards Existing Data

By default, when we open an **ofstream**, the contents of the file are discarded. The only way to prevent an **ostream** from emptying the given file is to specify **app**:

```
// file1 is truncated in each of these cases
ofstream out("file1"); // out and trunc are implicit
ofstream out2("file1", ofstream::out); // trunc is implicit
ofstream out3("file1", ofstream::out | ofstream::trunc);
// to preserve the file's contents, we must explicitly specify app mode
ofstream app("file2", ofstream::app); // out is implicit
ofstream app2("file2", ofstream::out | ofstream::app);
```



The only way to preserve the existing data in a file opened by an **ofstream** is to specify **app** mode explicitly.

## File Mode Is Determined Each Time open Is Called

The file mode of a given stream may change each time a file is opened.

```
ofstream out; // no file mode is set
out.open("scratchpad"); // mode implicitly out and trunc
out.close(); // close out so we can use it for a different file
out.open("precious", ofstream::app); // mode is out and app
out.close();
```

The first call to `open` does not specify an output mode explicitly; this file is implicitly opened in `out` mode. As usual, `out` implies `trunc`. Therefore, the file named `scratchpad` in the current directory will be **truncated**. When we open the file named `precious`, we ask for append mode. Any data in the file remains, and all writes are done at the end of the file.



Any time `open` is called, the file mode is set, either explicitly or implicitly. Whenever a mode is not specified, the default value is used.

### Exercises Section 8.2.2

**Exercise 8.7:** Revise the bookstore program from the previous section to write its output to a file. Pass the name of that file as a second argument to `main`.

**Exercise 8.8:** Revise the program from the previous exercise to append its output to its given file. Run the program on the same output file at least twice to ensure that the data are preserved.

## 8.3 string Streams

The `sstream` header defines three types to support in-memory IO; these types read from or write to a `string` as if the `string` were an IO stream.

The `istringstream` type reads a `string`, `ostringstream` writes a `string`, and `stringstream` reads and writes the `string`. Like the `fstream` types, the types defined in `sstream` inherit from the types we have used from the `iostream` header. In addition to the operations they inherit, the types defined in `sstream` add members to manage the `string` associated with the stream. These operations are listed in Table 8.5. They may be called on `stringstream` objects but not on the other IO types.

Table 8.5: `stringstream`-Specific Operations

<code>sstream strm;</code>	<code>strm</code> is an unbounded <code>stringstream</code> . <code>sstream</code> is one of the types defined in the <code>sstream</code> header.
<code>sstream strm(s);</code>	<code>strm</code> is an <code>sstream</code> that holds a copy of the <code>string s</code> . This constructor is explicit (§ 7.5.4, p. 224).
<code>strm.str()</code>	Returns a copy of the <code>string</code> that <code>strm</code> holds.
<code>strm.str(s)</code>	Copies the <code>string s</code> into <code>strm</code> . Returns void.

### 8.3.1 Using an istringstream

An `istringstream` is often used when we have some work to do on an entire line, and other work to do with individual words within a line.

As one example, assume we have a file that lists people and their associated phone numbers. Some people have only one number, but others have several—a home phone, work phone, cell number, and so on. Our input file might look like the following:

```
morgan 2015552368 8625550123
drew 9735550130
lee 6095550132 2015550175 8005550000
```

Each record in this file starts with a name, which is followed by one or more phone numbers. We'll start by defining a simple class to represent our input data:

```
// members are public by default
struct PersonInfo {
```

```

    string name;
    vector<string> phones;
};

```

Objects of type `PersonInfo` will have one member that represents the person's name and a `vector` holding a varying number of associated phone numbers.

Our program will read the data file and build up a `vector` of `PersonInfo`. Each element in the `vector` will correspond to one record in the file. We'll process the input in a loop that reads a record and then extracts the name and phone numbers for each person:

```

string line, word; // will hold a line and word from input, respectively
vector<PersonInfo> people; // will hold all the records from the input
// read the input a line at a time until cin hits end-of-file (or another error)
while (getline(cin, line)) {
    PersonInfo info; // create an object to hold this record's data
    istringstream record(line); // bind record to the line we just read
    record >> info.name; // read the name
    while (record >> word) // read the phone numbers
        info.phones.push_back(word); // and store them
    people.push_back(info); // append this record to people
}

```

Here we use `getline` to read an entire record from the standard input. If the call to `getline` succeeds, then `line` holds a record from the input file. Inside the `while` we define a local `PersonInfo` object to hold data from the current record.

Next we bind an `istringstream` to the line that we just read. We can now use the input operator on that `istringstream` to read each element in the current record. We first read the name followed by a `while` loop that will read the phone numbers for that person.

The inner `while` ends when we've read all the data in `line`. This loop works analogously to others we've written to read `cin`. The difference is that this loop reads data from a `string` rather than from the standard input. When the `string` has been completely read, "end-of-file" is signaled and the next input operation on `record` will fail.

We end the outer `while` loop by appending the `PersonInfo` we just processed to the `vector`. The outer `while` continues until we hit end-of-file on `cin`.

### Exercises Section 8.3.1

**Exercise 8.9:** Use the function you wrote for the first exercise in § 1 (p. 239) to print the contents of an `istringstream` object.

**Exercise 8.10:** Write a program to store each line from a file in a `vector<string>`. Now use an `istringstream` to read each element from the `vector` a word at a time.

**Exercise 8.11:** The program in this section defined its `istringstream` object inside the outer `while` loop. What changes would you need to make if `record` were defined outside that loop? Rewrite the program, moving the definition of `record` outside the `while`, and see whether you thought of all the changes that are needed.

**Exercise 8.12:** Why didn't we use in-class initializers in `PersonInfo`?

### 8.3.2 Using `ostreamstreams`

An `ostreamstream` is useful when we need to build up our output a little at a time but do not want to print the output until later. For example, we might want to validate and reformat the phone numbers we read in the previous example. If all the numbers are valid, we want to print a new file containing the reformatted numbers. If a person has any invalid numbers, we won't put them in the new file. Instead, we'll write an error message containing the person's name and a list of their invalid numbers.

Because we don't want to include any data for a person with an invalid number, we can't produce the output until we've seen and validated all their numbers. We can, however, "write" the output to an in-memory `ostreamstream`:

```

for (const auto &entry : people) { // for each entry in people
    ostreamstream formatted, badNums; // objects created on each loop
    for (const auto &nums : entry.phones) { // for each number
        if (!valid(nums)) {

```

```

        badNums << " " << nums; // string in badNums
    }
    else
        // 'writes' to formatted's string
        formatted << " " << format(nums);
    }
    if (badNums.str().empty()) // there were no bad numbers
        os << entry.name << " " // print the name
        << formatted.str() << endl; // and reformatted numbers
    else // otherwise, print the name and bad numbers
        cerr << "input error: " << entry.name
        << " invalid number(s) " << badNums.str() << endl;
}

```

In this program, we’ve assumed two functions, `valid` and `format`, that validate and reformat phone numbers, respectively. The interesting part of the program is the use of the `string` streams `formatted` and `badNums`. We use the normal output operator (`<<`) to write to these objects. But, these “writes” are really `string` manipulations. They add characters to the `strings` inside `formatted` and `badNums`, respectively.

### Exercises Section 8.3.2

**Exercise 8.13:** Rewrite the phone number program from this section to read from a named file rather than from `cin`.

**Exercise 8.14:** Why did we declare `entry` and `nums` as `const auto &`?



## Chapter Summary

C++ uses library classes to handle stream-oriented input and output:

- The `istream` classes handle IO to console
- The `fstream` classes handle IO to named files
- The `stringstream` classes do IO to in-memory strings

The `fstream` and `stringstream` classes are related by inheritance to the `istream` classes. The input classes inherit from `istream` and the output classes from `ostream`. Thus, operations that can be performed on an `istream` object can also be performed on either an `ifstream` or an `istringstream`. Similarly for the output classes, which inherit from `ostream`.

Each IO object maintains a set of condition states that indicate whether IO can be done through this object. If an error is encountered—such as hitting end-of-file on an input stream—then the object’s state will be such that no further input can be done until the error is rectified. The library provides a set of functions to set and test these states.

## Defined Terms

**condition state** Flags and associated functions usable by any of the stream classes that indicate whether a given stream is usable.

**file mode** Flags defined by the `fstream` classes that are specified when opening a file and control how a file can be used.

**file stream** Stream object that reads or writes a named file. In addition to the normal `istream` operations, file streams also define `open` and `close` members. The `open` member takes a `string` or a C-style character string that names the file to open and an optional open mode argument. The `close` member closes the file to which the stream is attached. It must be called before another file can be opened.

**`fstream`** File stream that reads and writes to the same file. By default `fstreams` are opened with `in` and `out` mode set.

**inheritance** Programming feature that lets a type inherit the interface of another type. The `ifstream`

and `istringstream` classes inherit from `istream` and the `ofstream` and `ostringstream` classes inherit from `ostream`. Chapter 15 covers inheritance.

**`istringstream`** String stream that reads a given `string`.

**`ofstream`** File stream that writes to an output file. By default, `ofstreams` are opened with `out` mode set.

**`ostringstream`** String stream that writes to a given `string`.

**string stream** Stream object that reads or writes a `string`. In addition to the normal `istream` operations, string streams define an overloaded member named `str`. Calling `str` with no arguments returns the `string` to which the `string` stream is attached. Calling it with a `string` attaches the string stream to a copy of that `string`.

**`stringstream`** String stream that reads and writes to a given `string`.

## Chapter 9

# Sequential Containers

### Contents

---

9.1 Overview of the Sequential Containers .....	250
9.2 Container Library Overview .....	252
9.3 Sequential Container Operations .....	261
9.4 How a vector Grows .....	265
9.5 Additional string Operations .....	265
9.6 Container Adaptors .....	265
Chapter Summary .....	266
Defined Terms .....	266

---

This chapter expands on the material from Chapter 3 and completes our discussion of the standard-library sequential containers. The order of the elements in a sequential container corresponds to the positions in which the elements are added to the container. The library also defines several associative containers, which hold elements whose position depends on a key associated with each element. We'll cover operations specific to the associative containers in Chapter 11.

The container classes share a common interface, which each of the containers extends in its own way. This common interface makes the library easier to learn; what we learn about one kind of container applies to another. Each kind of container offers a different set of performance and functionality trade-offs.

A container holds a collection of objects of a specified type. The **sequential containers** let the programmer control the order in which the elements are stored and accessed. That order does not depend on the values of the elements. Instead, the order corresponds to the position at which elements are put into the container. By contrast, the ordered and unordered associative containers, which we cover in Chapter 11, store their elements based on the value of a key.

The library also provides three container adaptors, each of which adapts a container type by defining a different interface to the container's operations. We cover the adaptors at the end of this chapter.



This chapter builds on the material covered in § 3.2, § 3.3, and § 3.4. We assume that the reader is familiar with the material covered there.

## 9.1 Overview of the Sequential Containers

The sequential containers, which are listed in Table 9.1, all provide fast sequential access to their elements. However, these containers offer different performance tradeoffs relative to

- The costs to add or delete elements to the container
- The costs to perform nonsequential access to elements of the container

Table 9.1: Sequential Container Types

<b>vector</b>	Flexible-size array. Supports fast random access. Inserting or deleting elements other than at the back may be slow.
<b>deque</b>	Double-ended queue. Supports fast random access. Fast insert/delete at front or back.
<b>list</b>	Doubly lined list. Supports only bidirectional sequential access. Fast inset/delete at any point in the <b>list</b> .
<b>forward_list</b>	Singly linked list. Supports only sequential access in one direction. Fast insert/delete at any point
<b>array</b>	Fixed-size array. Supports fast random access. Cannot add or remove elements.
<b>string</b>	A specialized container, similiar to <b>vector</b> , that contains characters. Fast random access. Fast insert/delete at the back.

With the exception of **array**, which is a fixed-size container, the containers provide efficient, flexible memory management. We can add and remove elements, growing and shrinking the size of the container. The strategies that the containers use for storing their elements have inherent, and sometimes significant, impact on the efficiency of these operations. In some cases, these strategies also affect whether a particular container supplies a particular operation.

For example, **string** and **vector** hold their elements in contiguous memory. Because elements are contiguous, it is fast to compute the address of an element from its index. However, adding or removing elements in the middle of one of these containers takes time: All the elements after the one inserted or removed have to be moved to maintain contiguity. Moreover, adding an element can sometimes require that additional storage be allocated. In that case, every element must be moved into the new storage.

The **list** and **forward\_list** containers are designed to make it fast to add or remove an element anywhere in the container. In exchange, these types do not support random access to elements: We can access an element only by iterating through the container. Moreover, the memory overhead for these containers is often substantial, when compared to **vector**, **deque**, and **array**.

A **deque** is a more complicated data structure. Like **string** and **vector**, **deque** supports fast random access. As with **string** and **vector**, adding or removing elements in the middle of a **deque** is a (potentially) expensive operation. However, adding or removing elements at either end of the **deque** is a fast operation, comparable to adding an element to a **list** or **forward\_list**.

The **forward\_list** and **array** types were added by the new standard. An **array** is a safer, easier-to-use alternative to built-in arrays. Like built-in arrays, library **arrays** have fixed size. As a result, **array** does not support operations to add and remove elements or to resize the container. A **forward\_list** is intended to be comparable to the best handwritten, singly linked list. Consequently, **forward\_list** does not have the **size** operation because storing or computing its size would entail overhead compared to a handwritten list. For the other containers, **size** is guaranteed to be a fast, constant-time operation.



For reasons we'll explain in § 13.6 (p. 283), the new library containers are dramatically faster than in previous releases. The library containers almost certainly perform as well as (and usually better than) even the most carefully crafted alternatives. Modern C++ programs should use the library containers rather than more primitive structures like arrays.

## Deciding Which Sequential Container to Use



Ordinarily, it is best to use **vector** unless there is a good reason to prefer another container.

There are a few rules of thumb that apply to selecting which container to use:

- Unless you have a reason to use another container, use a **vector**.
- If your program has lots of small elements and space overhead matters, don't use **list** or **forward\_list**.
- If the program requires random access to elements, use a **vector** or a **deque**.
- If the program needs to insert or delete elements in the middle of the container, use a **list** or **forward\_list**.
- If the program needs to insert or delete elements at the front and the back, but not in the middle, use a **deque**.
- If the program needs to insert elements in the middle of the container only while reading input, and subsequently needs random access to the elements:
  - First, decide whether you actually need to add elements in the middle of a container. It is often easier to append to a **vector** and then call the library **sort** function (which we shall cover in § 10.2.3 (p. 268)) to reorder the container when you're done with input.
  - If you must insert into the middle, consider using a **list** for the input phase. Once the input is complete, copy the **list** into a **vector**.

What if the program needs random access and needs to insert and delete elements in the middle of the container? This decision will depend on the relative cost of accessing the elements in a **list** or **forward\_list** versus the cost of inserting or deleting elements in a **vector** or **deque**. In general, the predominant operation of the application (whether it does more access or more insertion or deletion) will determine the choice of container type. In such cases, performance testing the application using both containers will probably be necessary.



If you're not sure which container to use, write your code so that it uses only operations common to both **vectors** and **lists**: Use iterators, not subscripts, and avoid random access to elements. That way it will be easy to use either a **vector** or a **list** as necessary.

### Exercises Section 9.1.0

**Exercise 9.1:** Which is the most appropriate—a **vector**, a **deque**, or a **list**—for the following program tasks? Explain the rationale for your choice. If there is no reason to prefer one or another container, explain why not.

- Read a fixed number of words, inserting them in the container alphabetically as they are entered. We'll see in the next chapter that associative containers are better suited to this problem.
- Read an unknown number of words. Always insert new words at the back. Remove the next value from the front.
- Read an unknown number of integers from a file. Sort the numbers and then print them to standard output.

## 9.2 Container Library Overview

The operations on the container types form a kind of hierarchy:

- Some operations (Table 9.2 (p. 252)) are provided by all container types.
- Other operations are specific to the sequential (Table 9.3 (p. 256)), the associative (Table ?? (p. ??)), or the unordered (Table 11.2 (p. 271)) containers.
- Still others are common to only a smaller subset of the containers.

Table 9.2: Container Operations

<b>Type Aliases</b>	
<code>iterator</code>	Type of the iterator for this container type
<code>const_iterator</code>	Iterator type that can read but not change its elements
<code>size_type</code>	Unsigned integral type big enough to hold the size of the largest possible container of this container type
<code>difference_type</code>	Signed integral type big enough to hold the distance between two iterators
<code>value_type</code>	Element type
<code>reference</code>	Element's lvalue type; synonym for <code>value_type&amp;</code>
<code>const_reference</code>	Element's const lvalue type (i.e., <code>const value_type&amp;</code> )
<b>Construction</b>	
<code>C c;</code>	Default constructor, empty container ( <b>array</b> ; see p. 257)
<code>C c1(c2);</code>	Construct <code>c1</code> as a copy of <code>c2</code>
<code>C c(b, e);</code>	Copy elements from the range denoted by iterators <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> ; ( <b>not valid for array</b> )
<code>C c{a,b,c...}</code>	List initialize <code>c</code>
<b>Assignment and swap</b>	
<code>c1=c2</code>	Replace elements in <code>c1</code> with those in <code>c2</code>
<code>c1={a,b,c...}</code>	Replace elements in <code>c1</code> with those in the list ( <b>not valid for array</b> )
<code>a.swap(b)</code>	Swap elements in <code>a</code> with those in <code>b</code> .
<code>swap(a, b)</code>	Equivalent to <code>a.swap(b)</code>
<b>Size</b>	
<code>c.size()</code>	Number of elements in <code>c</code> ( <b>not valid for forward_list</b> )
<code>c.max_size()</code>	Maximum number of elements <code>c</code> can hold
<code>c.empty()</code>	<code>false</code> if <code>c</code> has any elements, <code>true</code> otherwise
<b>Add/Remove Elements (not valid for array)</b>	
<i>Note: the interface to these operations varies by container type</i>	
<code>c.insert(args)</code>	Copy element(s) as specified by <code>args</code> into <code>c</code>
<code>c.emplace(inits)</code>	Use <code>inits</code> to construct an element in <code>c</code>
<code>c.erase(args)</code>	Remove element(s) specified by <code>args</code>
<code>c.clear()</code>	Remove all elements from <code>c</code> ; returns <code>void</code>
<b>Equality and Relational Operators</b>	
<code>==, !=</code>	Equality valid for all container types
<code>&lt;, &lt;=, &gt;, &gt;=</code>	Relationals ( <b>not valid for unordered associative containers</b> )
<b>Obtain Iterators</b>	
<code>c.begin(), c.end()</code>	Return iterator to the first, one past the last element in <code>c</code>
<code>c.cbegin(), c.cend()</code>	Return <code>const_iterator</code>
<b>Additional Members of Reversible Containers (not valid for forward_list)</b>	
<code>reverse_iterator</code>	Iterator that addresses elements in reverse order
<code>const_reverse_iterator</code>	Reverse iterator that cannot write the elements
<code>c.rbegin(), c.rend()</code>	Return iterator to the last, one past the first element in <code>c</code>
<code>c.crbegin(), c.crend()</code>	Returns <code>const_reverse_iterator</code>

In this section, we'll cover aspects common to all of the containers. The remainder of this chapter will then focus solely on sequential containers; we'll cover operations specific to the associative containers in Chapter 11.

In general, each container is defined in a header file with the same name as the type. That is, `deque` is in the `deque` header, `list` in the `list` header, and so on. The containers are class templates (§ 3.3, p. 74). As with `vectors`, we must supply additional information to generate a particular container type. For most, but not all, of the containers, the information we must supply is the element type:

```
list<Sales_data> // list that holds Sales_data objects
deque<double> // deque that holds doubles
```

### Constraints on Types That a Container Can Hold

Almost any type can be used as the element type of a sequential container. In particular, we can define a container whose element type is itself another container. We define such containers exactly as we do any other container type: We specify the element type (which in this case is a container type) inside angle brackets:

```
vector<vector<string>> lines; // vector of vectors
```

Here `lines` is a `vector` whose elements are `vectors` of `strings`.



Older compilers may require a space between the angle brackets, for example, `vector<vector<string> >`.

Although we can store almost any type in a container, some container operations impose requirements of their own on the element type. We can define a container for a type that does not support an operation-specific requirement, but we can use an operation only if the element type meets that operation's requirements.

As an example, the sequential container constructor that takes a size argument (§ 3.3.1, p. 76) uses the element type's default constructor. Some classes do not have a default constructor. We can define a container that holds objects of such types, but we cannot construct such containers using only an element count:

```
// assume noDefault is a type without a default constructor
vector<noDefault> v1(10, init); // ok: element initializer supplied
vector<noDefault> v2(10); // error: must supply an element initializer
```

As we describe the container operations, we'll note the additional constraints, if any, that each container operation places on the element type.

### Exercises Section 9.2.0

**Exercise 9.2:** Define a `list` that holds elements that are `deques` that hold `ints`.

### 9.2.1 Iterators

As with the containers, iterators have a common interface: If an iterator provides an operation, then the operation is supported in the same way for each iterator that supplies that operation. For example, all the iterators on the standard container types let us access an element from a container, and they all do so by providing the dereference operator. Similarly, the iterators for the library containers all define the increment operator to move from one element to the next.

With one exception, the container iterators support all the operations listed in Table 3.6 (p. 82). The exception is that the `forward_list` iterators do not support the decrement (`--`) operator. The iterator arithmetic operations listed in Table 3.7 (p. 85) apply only to iterators for `string`, `vector`, `deque`, and `array`. We cannot use these operations on iterators for any of the other container types.

### Iterator Ranges



The concept of an iterator range is fundamental to the standard library.

An **iterator range** is denoted by a pair of iterators each of which refers to an element, or to one past the last element, in the same container. These two iterators, often referred to as **begin** and **end**—or (somewhat misleadingly) as **first** and **last**—mark a range of elements from the container.

The name **last**, although commonly used, is a bit misleading, because the second iterator never refers to the last element of the range. Instead, it refers to a point one past the last element. The elements in the range include the element denoted by **first** and every element from **first** up to but not including **last**.

This element range is called a **left-inclusive interval**. The standard mathematical notation for such a range is

```
[ begin, end )
```

indicating that the range begins with **begin** and ends with, but does not include, **end**. The iterators **begin** and **end** must refer to the same container. The iterator **end** may be equal to **begin** but must not refer to an element before the one denoted by **begin**.

### Requirements on Iterators Forming an Iterator Range

Two iterators, **begin** and **end**, form an iterator range, if

- They refer to elements of, or one past the end of, the same container, and
- It is possible to reach **end** by repeatedly incrementing **begin**. In other words, **end** must not precede **begin**.



The compiler cannot enforce these requirements. It is up to us to ensure that our programs follow these conventions.

### Programming Implications of Using Left-Inclusive Ranges

The library uses left-inclusive ranges because such ranges have three convenient properties. Assuming **begin** and **end** denote a valid iterator range, then

- If **begin** equals **end**, the range is empty
- If **begin** is not equal to **end**, there is at least one element in the range, and **begin** refers to the first element in that range
- We can increment **begin** some number of times until **begin == end**

These properties mean that we can safely write loops such as the following to process a range of elements:

```
while (begin != end) {
    *begin = val; // ok: range isn't empty so begin denotes an element
    ++begin; // advance the iterator to get the next element
}
```

Given that **begin** and **end** form a valid iterator range, we know that if **begin == end**, then the range is empty. In this case, we exit the loop. If the range is nonempty, we know that **begin** refers to an element in this nonempty range. Therefore, inside the body of the **while**, we know that it is safe to dereference **begin** because **begin** must refer to an element. Finally, because the loop body increments **begin**, we also know the loop will eventually terminate.

### Exercises Section 9.2.1

**Exercise 9.3:** What are the constraints on the iterators that form iterator ranges?

**Exercise 9.4:** Write a function that takes a pair of iterators to a `vector<int>` and an `int` value. Look for that value in the range and return a `bool` indicating whether it was found.

**Exercise 9.5:** Rewrite the previous program to return an iterator to the requested element. Note that the program must handle the case where the element is not found.

**Exercise 9.6:** What is wrong with the following program? How might you correct it?

```
list<int> lst1;
list<int>::iterator iter1 = lst1.begin(), iter2 = lst1.end();
while (iter1 < iter2)
    /* ... */
```



## 9.2.2 Container Type Members

Each container defines several types, shown in Table 9.2 (p. 252). We have already used three of these container-defined types: `size_type` (§ 3.2.2, p. 68), `iterator`, and `const_iterator` (§ 3.4.1, p. 83).

In addition to the iterator types we've already used, most containers provide reverse iterators. Briefly, a reverse iterator is an iterator that goes backward through a container and inverts the meaning of the iterator operations. For example, saying `++` on a reverse iterator yields the previous element. We'll have more to say about reverse iterators in § 10.4.3 (p. 268).

The remaining type aliases let us use the type of the elements stored in a container without knowing what that type is. If we need the element type, we refer to the container's `value_type`. If we need a reference to that type, we use `reference` or `const_reference`. These element-related type aliases are most useful in generic programs, which we'll cover in Chapter 16.

To use one of these types, we must name the class of which they are a member:

```
// iter is the iterator type defined by list<string>
list<string>::iterator iter;
// count is the difference_type type defined by vector<int>
vector<int>::difference_type count;
```

These declarations use the scope operator (§ 1.2, p. 6) to say that we want the iterator member of the `list<string>` class and the `difference_type` defined by `vector<int>`, respectively.

### Exercises Section 9.2.2

**Exercise 9.7:** What type should be used as the index into a `vector` of `ints`?

**Exercise 9.8:** What type should be used to read elements in a `list` of `strings`? To write them?

## 9.2.3 begin and end Members

The `begin` and `end` operations (§ 3.4.1, p. 81) yield iterators that refer to the first and one past the last element in the container. These iterators are most often used to form an iterator range that encompasses all the elements in the container.

As shown in Table 9.2 (p. 252), there are several versions of `begin` and `end`: The versions with an `r` return reverse iterators (which we cover in § 10.4.3 (p. 268)). Those that start with a `c` return the `const` version of the related iterator:

```
list<string> a = {"Milton", "Shakespeare", "Austen"};
auto it1 = a.begin(); // list<string>::iterator
auto it2 = a.rbegin(); // list<string>::reverse_iterator
auto it3 = a.cbegin(); // list<string>::const_iterator
auto it4 = a.crbegin(); // list<string>::const_reverse_iterator
```

The functions that do not begin with a `c` are overloaded. That is, there are actually two members named `begin`. One is a `const` member (§ 7.1.2, p. 197) that returns the container's `const_iterator` type. The other is `nonconst` and returns the container's `iterator` type. Similarly for `rbegin`, `end`, and `rend`. When we call one of these members on a `nonconst` object, we get the version that returns `iterator`. We get a `const` version of the iterators only when we call these functions on a `const` object. As with pointers and references to `const`, we can convert a plain `iterator` to the corresponding `const_iterator`, but not vice versa.

The `c` versions were introduced by the new standard to support using `auto` (§ 2.5.2, p. 53) with `begin` and `end` functions. In the past, we had no choice but to say which type of iterator we want:

```
// type is explicitly specified
list<string>::iterator it5 = a.begin();
list<string>::const_iterator it6 = a.begin();
// iterator or const_iterator depending on a's type
auto it7 = a.begin(); // const_iterator only if a is const
auto it8 = a.cbegin(); // it8 is const_iterator
```

When we use `auto` with `begin` or `end`, the iterator type we get depends on the container type. How we intend to use the iterator is irrelevant. The `c` versions let us get a `const_iterator` regardless of the type of the container.



When write access is not needed, use `cbegin` and `cend`.

### Exercises Section 9.2.3

**Exercise 9.9:** What is the difference between the `begin` and `cbegin` functions?

**Exercise 9.10:** What are the types of the following four objects?

```
vector<int> v1;
const vector<int> v2;
auto it1 = v1.begin(), it2 = v2.begin();
auto it3 = v1.cbegin(), it4 = v2.cbegin();
```

### 9.2.4 Defining and Initializing a Container

Every container type defines a default constructor (§ 7.1.4, p. 200). With the exception of `array`, the default constructor creates an empty container of the specified type. Again excepting `array`, the other constructors take arguments that specify the size of the container and initial values for the elements.

Table 9.3: Defining and Initializing Containers

<code>C c;</code>	Default constructor. If <code>C</code> is <code>array</code> , then the elements in <code>c</code> are default-initialized; otherwise <code>c</code> is empty.
<code>C c(c2)</code>	<code>c1</code> is a copy of <code>c2</code> . <code>c1</code> and <code>c2</code> must have the same type (i.e., they must be the same container type and hold the same element type; for <code>array</code> must also have same size).
<code>C c{a,b,c...}</code> <code>C c={a,b,c...}</code>	<code>c</code> is a copy of the elements in the initializer list. Type of elements in the list must be compatible with the element type of <code>C</code> . For <code>array</code> , the list must have same number or fewer elements than the size of the <code>array</code> , any missing elements are value-initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 76).
<code>C c(b, e)</code>	<code>c</code> is a copy of the elements in the range denoted by iterators <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> . Type of the elements must be compatible with the element type of <code>C</code> . (Not valid for <code>array</code> .)
<b>Constructors that take <code>s</code> size are valid for sequential containers (not including <code>array</code>) only</b>	
<code>C seq(n)</code>	<code>seq</code> has <code>n</code> value-initialized elements; this constructor is explicit (§ 7.5.4, p. 224). (Not valid for <code>string</code> .)
<code>C seq(n, t)</code>	<code>seq</code> has <code>n</code> elements with value <code>t</code> .

### Initializing a Container as a Copy of Another Container

There are two ways to create a new container as a copy of another one: We can directly copy the container, or (excepting `array`) we can copy a range of elements denoted by a pair of iterators.

To create a container as a copy of another container, the container and element types must match. When we pass iterators, there is no requirement that the container types be identical. Moreover, the element types in the new and original containers can differ as long as it is possible to convert (§ 2.1.2, p. 27) the elements we're copying to the element type of the container we are initializing:

```
// each container has three elements, initialized from the given initializers
list<string> authors = {"Milton", "Shakespeare", "Austen"};
vector<const char*> articles = {"a", "an", "the"};
list<string> list2(authors); // ok: types match
deque<string> authList(authors); // error: container types don't match
vector<string> words(articles); // error: element types must match
// ok: converts const char* elements to string
forward_list<string> words(articles.begin(), articles.end());
```



When we initialize a container as a copy of another container, the container type and element type of both containers must be identical.

The constructor that takes two iterators uses them to denote a range of elements that we want to copy. As usual, the iterators mark the first and one past the last element to be copied. The new container has the same

size as the number of elements in the range. Each element in the new container is initialized by the value of the corresponding element in the range.

Because the iterators denote a range, we can use this constructor to copy a subsequence of a container. For example, assuming it is an iterator denoting an element in `authors`, we can write

```
// copies up to but not including the element denoted by it
deque<string> authList(authors.begin(), it);
```

## List Initialization

Under the new standard, we can list initialize (§ 3.3.1, p. 75) a container:

```
// each container has three elements, initialized from the given initializers
list<string> authors = {"Milton", "Shakespeare", "Austen"};
vector<const char*> articles = {"a", "an", "the"};
```

When we do so, we explicitly specify values for each element in the container. For types other than `array`, the initializer list also implicitly specifies the size of the container: The container will have as many elements as there are initializers.

## Sequential Container Size-Related Constructors

In addition to the constructors that sequential containers have in common with associative containers (Table 9.2 (p. 252)), we can also initialize the sequential containers (other than `array`) from a size and an (optional) element initializer. If we do not supply an element initializer, the library creates a value-initialized one for us § 3.3.1 (p. 76):

```
vector<int> ivec(10, -1); // ten int elements, each initialized to -1
list<string> svec(10, "hi!"); // ten strings; each element is "hi!"
forward_list<int> fvec(10); // ten elements, each initialized to 0
deque<string> dvec(10); // ten elements, each an empty string
```

We can use the constructor that takes a size argument if the element type is a built-in type or a class type that has a default constructor (§ 7.1.4, p. 200). If the element type does not have a default constructor, then we must specify an explicit element initializer along with the size.



The constructors that take a size are valid only for sequential containers; they are not supported for the associative containers.

## Library arrays Have Fixed Size

Just as the size of a built-in array is part of its type, the size of a library `array` is part of its type. When we define an `array`, in addition to specifying the element type, we also specify the container size:

```
array<int, 42> // type is: array that holds 42 ints
array<string, 10> // type is: array that holds 10 strings
```

To use an `array` type we must specify both the element type and the size:

```
array<int, 10>::size_type i; // array type includes element type and size
array<int>::size_type j; // error: array<int> is not a type
```

Because the size is part of the `array`'s type, `array` does not support the normal container constructors. Those constructors, implicitly or explicitly, determine the size of the container. It would be redundant (at best) and error-prone to allow users to pass a size argument to an `array` constructor.

The fixed-size nature of arrays also affects the behavior of the constructors that `array` does define. Unlike the other containers, a default-constructed `array` is not empty: It has as many elements as its size. These elements are default initialized (§ 2.2.1, p. 34) just as are elements in a built-in array (§ 3.5.1, p. 86). If we list initialize the `array`, the number of the initializers must be equal to or less than the size of the `array`. If there are fewer initializers than the size of the `array`, the initializers are used for the first elements and any remaining elements are value initialized (§ 3.3.1, p. 76). In both cases, if the element type is a class type, the class must have a default constructor in order to permit value initialization:

```
array<int, 10> ia1; // ten default-initialized ints
array<int, 10> ia2 = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9}; // list initialization
array<int, 10> ia3 = {42}; // ia3[0] is 42, remaining elements are 0
```

It is worth noting that although we cannot copy or assign objects of built-in array types (§ 3.5.1, p. 87), there is no such restriction on `array`:

```
int digs[10] = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
int cpy[10] = digs; // error: no copy or assignment for built-in arrays
array<int, 10> digits = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
array<int, 10> copy = digits; // ok: so long as array types match
```

As with any container, the initializer must have the same type as the container we are creating. For arrays, the element type and the size must be the same, because the size of an `array` is part of its type.

### Exercises Section 9.2.4

**Exercise 9.11:** Show an example of each of the six ways to create and initialize a `vector`. Explain what values each `vector` contains.

**Exercise 9.12:** Explain the differences between the constructor that takes a container to copy and the constructor that takes two iterators.

**Exercise 9.13:** How would you initialize a `vector<double>` from a `list<int>`? From a `vector<int>`? Write code to check your answers.

## 9.2.5 Assignment and swap

The assignment-related operators, listed in Table 9.4 on the entire container. The assignment operator replaces the entire range of elements in the left-hand container with copies of the elements from the right-hand operand:

```
c1 = c2; // replace the contents of c1 with a copy of the elements in c2
c1 = {a,b,c}; // after the assignment c1 has size 3
```

Table 9.4: Container Assignment Operations

<code>c1=c2</code>	Replace the elements in <code>c1</code> with copies of the elements in <code>c2</code> . <code>c1</code> and <code>c2</code> must be the same type.
<code>c1={a,b,c...}</code>	Replace the elements in <code>c1</code> with copies of the elements in the initializer list. ( <b>Not valid for array.</b> )
<code>swap(c1, c2)</code>	Exchanges elements in <code>c1</code> with those in <code>c2</code> . <code>c1</code> and <code>c2</code> must be the same type. <code>swap</code> is usually faster than copying elements from <code>c2</code> to <code>c1</code> .
<b>assign operations not valid for associative containers or array</b>	
<code>seq.assign(b, e)</code>	Replaces elements in <code>seq</code> with those in the range denoted by iterators <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> . The iterators <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> must not refer to elements in <code>seq</code> .
<code>seq.assign(il)</code>	Replaces the elements in <code>seq</code> with those in the initializer list <code>il</code> .
<code>seq.assign(n,t)</code>	Replaces the elements in <code>seq</code> with <code>n</code> elements with value <code>t</code> .



Assignment related operations invalidate iterators, references, and pointers into the left-hand container. Aside from `string` they remain valid after a `swap`, and (excepting arrays) the containers to which they refer are swapped.

After the first assignment, the left- and right-hand containers are equal. If the containers had been of unequal size, after the assignment both containers would have the size of the right-hand operand. After the second assignment, the size of `c1` is 3, which is the number of values provided in the braced list.

Unlike built-in arrays, the library `array` type does allow assignment. The left-and right-hand operands must have the same type:

```
array<int, 10> a1 = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9};
array<int, 10> a2 = {0}; // elements all have value 0
a1 = a2; // replaces elements in a1
a2 = {0}; // error: cannot assign to an array from a braced list
```

Because the size of the right-hand operand might differ from the size of the left-hand operand, the `array` type does not support `assign` and it does not allow assignment from a braced list of values.

### Using `assign` (Sequential Containers Only)

The assignment operator requires that the left-hand and right-hand operands have the same type. It copies all the elements from the right-hand operand into the left-hand operand. The sequential containers (except `array`) also define a member named `assign` that lets us assign from a different but compatible type, or assign from a subsequence of a container. The `assign` operation replaces all the elements in the left-hand container with (copies of) the elements specified by its arguments. For example, we can use `assign` to assign a range of `char*` values from a vector into a list of `string`:

```
list<string> names;
vector<const char*> oldstyle;
names = oldstyle; // error: container types don't match
// ok: can convert from const char* to string
names.assign(oldstyle.cbegin(), oldstyle.cend());
```

The call to `assign` replaces the elements in `names` with copies of the elements in the range denoted by the iterators. The arguments to `assign` determine how many elements and what values the container will have.



Because the existing elements are replaced, the iterators passed to `assign` must not refer to the container on which `assign` is called.

A second version of `assign` takes an integral value and an element value. It replaces the elements in the container with the specified number of elements, each of which has the specified element value:

```
// equivalent to slist1.clear();
// followed by slist1.insert(slist1.begin(), 10, "Hiya!");
list<string> slist1(1); // one element, which is the empty string
slist1.assign(10, "Hiya!"); // ten elements; each one is Hiya !
```

### Using `swap`

The `swap` operation exchanges the contents of two containers of the same type. After the call to `swap`, the elements in the two containers are interchanged:

```
vector<string> svec1(10); // vector with ten elements
vector<string> svec2(24); // vector with 24 elements
swap(svec1, svec2);
```

After the `swap`, `svec1` contains 24 `string` elements and `svec2` contains ten. With the exception of `arrays`, swapping two containers is guaranteed to be fast—the elements themselves are not swapped; internal data structures are swapped.



Excepting `array`, `swap` does not copy, delete, or insert any elements and is guaranteed to run in constant time.

The fact that elements are not moved means that, with the exception of `string`, iterators, references, and pointers into the containers are not invalidated. They refer to the same elements as they did before the `swap`. However, after the `swap`, those elements are in a different container. For example, had `iter` denoted the `string` at position `svec1[3]` before the `swap`, it will denote the element at position `svec2[3]` after the `swap`. Differently from the containers, a call to `swap` on a `string` may invalidate iterators, references and pointers.

Unlike how `swap` behaves for the other containers, swapping two `arrays` does exchange the elements. As a result, swapping two `arrays` requires time proportional to the number of elements in the `array`.

After the `swap`, pointers, references, and iterators remain bound to the same element they denoted before the `swap`. Of course, the value of that element has been swapped with the corresponding element in the other `array`.

In the new library, the containers offer both a member and nonmember version of `swap`. Earlier versions of the library defined only the member version of `swap`. The nonmember `swap` is of most importance in generic programs. As a matter of habit, it is best to use the nonmember version of `swap`.

### Exercises Section 9.2.5

**Exercise 9.14:** Write a program to assign the elements from a list of `char*` pointers to C-style character strings to a vector of strings.

## 9.2.6 Container Size Operations

With one exception, the container types have three size-related operations. The `size` member (§ 3.2.2, p. 68) returns the number of elements in the container; `empty` returns a `bool` that is `true` if `size` is zero and `false` otherwise; and `max_size` returns a number that is greater than or equal to the number of elements a container of that type can contain. For reasons we'll explain in the next section, `forward_list` provides `max_size` and `empty`, but not `size`.

## 9.2.7 Relational Operators

Every container type supports the equality operators (`==` and `!=`); all the containers except the unordered associative containers also support the relational operators (`>`, `>=`, `<`, `<=`). The right- and left-hand operands must be the same kind of container and must hold elements of the same type. That is, we can compare a `vector<int>` only with another `vector<int>`. We cannot compare a `vector<int>` with a `list<int>` or a `vector<double>`.

Comparing two containers performs a pairwise comparison of the elements. These operators work similarly to the `string` relationals (§ 3.2.2, p. 69):

- If both containers are the same size and all the elements are equal, then the two containers are equal; otherwise, they are unequal.
- If both containers are the same size and all the elements are equal, then the two containers are equal; otherwise, they are unequal.
- If neither container is an initial subsequence of the other, then the comparison depends on comparing the first unequal elements.

The following examples illustrate how these operators work:

```
vector<int> v1 = { 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 12 };
vector<int> v2 = { 1, 3, 9 };
vector<int> v3 = { 1, 3, 5, 7 };
vector<int> v4 = { 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 12 };
v1 < v2; // true; v1 and v2 differ at element [2]: v1[2] is less than v2[2]
v1 < v3; // false; all elements are equal, but v3 has fewer of them;
v1 == v4; // true; each element is equal and v1 and v4 have the same size()
v1 == v2; // false; v2 has fewer elements than v1
```

### Relational Operators Use Their Element's Relational Operator



We can use a relational operator to compare two containers only if the appropriate comparison operator is defined for the element type.

The container equality operators use the element's `==` operator, and the relational operators use the element's `<` operator. If the element type doesn't support the required operator, then we cannot use the corresponding operations on containers holding that type. For example, the `Sales_data` type that we defined in Chapter 7 does not define either the `==` or the `<` operation. Therefore, we cannot compare two containers that hold `Sales_data` elements:

```
vector<Sales_data> storeA, storeB;
if (storeA < storeB) // error: Sales_data has no less-than operator
```



**Exercises Section 9.2.7**

**Exercise 9.15:** Write a program to determine whether two `vector<int>`s are equal.

**Exercise 9.16:** Repeat the previous program, but compare elements in a `list<int>` to a `vector<int>`.

**Exercise 9.17:** Assuming `c1` and `c2` are containers, what (if any) constraints does the following usage place on the types of `c1` and `c2`?

```
if (c1 < c2)
```

## 9.3 Sequential Container Operations

The sequential and associative containers differ in how they organize their elements. These differences affect how elements are stored, accessed, added, and removed. The previous section covered operations common to all containers (those listed in Table 9.2 (p. 252)). We'll cover the operations specific to the sequential containers in the remainder of this chapter.

### 9.3.1 Adding Elements to a Sequential Container

Excepting `array`, all of the library containers provide flexible memory management. We can add or remove elements dynamically changing the size of the container at run time. Table 9.5 (p. 261) lists the operations that add elements to a (nonarray) sequential container.

Table 9.5: Operations That Add Elements to a Sequential Container

These operations change the size of the container; they are not supported by <code>array</code> . <b><code>forward_list</code> has special versions of <code>insert</code> and <code>emplace</code>; see § 9.3.4 (p. 265).  <code>push_back</code> and <code>emplace_back</code> not valid for <code>forward_list</code>.  <code>push_front</code> and <code>emplace_front</code> not valid for <code>vector</code> or <code>string</code>.</b>	
<code>c.push_back(t)</code>	Creates an element with value <code>t</code> or constructed from <code>args</code> at the end of <code>c</code> . Returns <code>void</code> .
<code>c.emplace_back(args)</code>	
<code>c.push_front(t)</code>	Creates an element with value <code>t</code> or constructed from <code>args</code> on the front of <code>c</code> . Returns <code>void</code> .
<code>c.emplace_front(args)</code>	
<code>c.insert(p,t)</code>	Creates an element with value <code>t</code> or constructed from <code>args</code> before the element denoted by iterator <code>p</code> . Returns an iterator referring to the element that was added.
<code>c.emplace(p,args)</code>	
<code>c.insert(p,n,t)</code>	Inserts <code>n</code> elements with value <code>t</code> before the element denoted by iterator <code>p</code> . Returns an iterator to the first element inserted; if <code>n</code> is zero, returns <code>p</code> .
<code>c.insert(p,b,e)</code>	Inserts the elements from the range denoted by iterators <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> before the element denoted by iterator <code>p</code> . <code>b</code> and <code>e</code> may not refer to elements in <code>c</code> . Returns an iterator to the first element inserted; if the range is empty, return <code>p</code> .
<code>c.insert(p,il)</code>	<code>il</code> is a braced list of element values. Inserts the given values before the element denoted by the iterator <code>p</code> . Returns an iterator to the first inserted element; if the list is empty returns <code>p</code> .



Adding elements to a `vector`, `string`, or `deque` potentially invalidates all existing iterators, references, and pointers into the container.

When we use these operations, we must remember that the containers use different strategies for allocating elements and that these strategies affect performance. Adding elements anywhere but at the end of a `vector` or `string`, or anywhere but the beginning or end of a `deque`, requires elements to be moved. Moreover, adding elements to a `vector` or a `string` may cause the entire object to be reallocated. Reallocating an object requires allocating new memory and moving elements from the old space to the new.



## Using `push_back`

In § 3.3.2 (p. 77) we saw that `push_back` appends an element to the back of a `vector`. Aside from `array` and `forward_list`, every sequential container (including the `string` type) supports `push_back`.

As an example, the following loop reads one `string` at a time into `word`:

```
// read from standard input, putting each word onto the end of container
string word;
while (cin >> word)
    container.push_back(word);
```

The call to `push_back` creates a new element at the end of `container`, increasing the `size` of `container` by

1. The value of that element is a copy of `word`. The type of `container` can be any of `list`, `vector`, or `deque`.

Because `string` is just a container of characters, we can use `push_back` to add characters to the end of the `string`:

```
void pluralize(size_t cnt, string &word) {
    if (cnt > 1)
        word.push_back('s'); // same as word += 's'
}
```

### Key Concept: Container Elements Are Copies

When we use an object to initialize a container, or insert an object into a container, a copy of that object's value is placed in the container, not the object itself. Just as when we pass an object to a nonreference parameter (§ 6.2.1, p. 160), there is no relationship between the element in the container and the object from which that value originated. Subsequent changes to the element in the container have no effect on the original object, and vice versa.

## Using `push_front`

In addition to `push_back`, the `list`, `forward_list`, and `deque` containers support an analogous operation named `push_front`. This operation inserts a new element at the front of the container:

```
list<int> ilist;
// add elements to the start of ilist
for (size_t ix = 0; ix != 4; ++ix)
    ilist.push_front(ix);
```

This loop adds the elements 0, 1, 2, 3 to the beginning of `ilist`. Each element is inserted at the new beginning of the `list`. That is, when we insert 1, it goes in front of 0, and 2 in front of 1, and so forth. Thus, the elements added in a loop such as this one wind up in reverse order. After executing this loop, `ilist` holds the sequence 3,2,1,0.

Note that `deque`, which like `vector` offers fast random access to its elements, provides the `push_front` member even though `vector` does not. A `deque` guarantees constant-time `insert` and `delete` of elements at the beginning and end of the container. As with `vector`, inserting elements other than at the front or back of a `deque` is a potentially expensive operation.

## Adding Elements at a Specified Point in the Container

The `push_back` and `push_front` operations provide convenient ways to insert a single element at the end or beginning of a sequential container. More generally, the `insert` members let us insert zero or more elements at any point in the container. The `insert` members are supported for `vector`, `deque`, `list`, and `string`. `forward_list` provides specialized versions of these members that we'll cover in § 9.3.4 (p. 265).

Each of the `insert` functions takes an iterator as its first argument. The iterator indicates where in the container to put the element(s). It can refer to any position in the container, including one past the end of the container. Because the iterator might refer to a nonexistent element off the end of the container, and because it is useful to have a way to insert elements at the beginning of a container, element(s) are inserted before the position denoted by the iterator. For example, this statement

```
slist.insert(iter, "Hello!"); // insert "Hello!" just before iter
```

inserts a `string` with value "Hello" just before the element denoted by `iter`.

Even though some containers do not have a `push_front` operation, there is no similar constraint on `insert`. We can `insert` elements at the beginning of a container without worrying about whether the container has `push_front`:

```
vector<string> svec;
list<string> slist;
// equivalent to calling slist.push_front("Hello!");
slist.insert(slist.begin(), "Hello!");
// no push_front on vector but we can insert before begin()
// warning: inserting anywhere but at the end of a vector might be slow
svec.insert(svec.begin(), "Hello!");
```



It is legal to insert anywhere in a `vector`, `deque`, or `string`. However, doing so can be an expensive operation.

### Inserting a Range of Elements

The arguments to `insert` that appear after the initial iterator argument are analogous to the container constructors that take the same parameters. The version that takes an element count and a value adds the specified number of identical elements before the given position:

```
svec.insert(svec.end(), 10, "Anna");
```

This code inserts ten elements at the end of `svec` and initializes each of those elements to the `string` "Anna".

The versions of `insert` that take a pair of iterators or an initializer list insert the elements from the given range before the given position:

```
vector<string> v = {"quasi", "simba", "frollo", "scar"};
// insert the last two elements of v at the beginning of slist
slist.insert(slist.begin(), v.end() - 2, v.end());
slist.insert(slist.end(), {"these", "words", "will",
"go", "at", "the", "end"});
// run-time error: iterators denoting the range to copy from
// must not refer to the same container as the one we are changing
slist.insert(slist.begin(), slist.begin(), slist.end());
```

When we pass a pair of iterators, those iterators may not refer to the same container as the one to which we are adding elements.

Under the new standard, the versions of `insert` that take a count or a range return an iterator to the first element that was inserted. (In prior versions of the library, these operations returned `void`.) If the range is empty, no elements are inserted, and the operation returns its first parameter.

### Using the Return from `insert`

We can use the value returned by `insert` to repeatedly insert elements at a specified position in the container:

```
list<string> 1st;
auto iter = 1st.begin();
while (cin >> word)
    iter = 1st.insert(iter, word); // same as calling push_front
```



It is important to understand how this loop operates—in particular, to understand why the loop is equivalent to calling `push_front`.

Before the loop, we initialize `iter` to `1st.begin()`. The first call to `insert` takes the `string` we just read and puts it in front of the element denoted by `iter`. The value returned by `insert` is an iterator referring to this new element. We assign that iterator to `iter` and repeat the `while`, reading another word. As long as there are words to `insert`, each trip through the `while` inserts a new element ahead of `iter` and reassigns to `iter` the location of the newly inserted element. That element is the (new) first element. Thus, each iteration inserts an element ahead of the first element in the `list`.

## Using the Emplace Operations

The new standard introduced three new members—`emplace_front`, `emplace`, and `emplace_back`—that construct rather than copy elements. These operations correspond to the `push_front`, `insert`, and `push_back` operations in that they let us put an element at the front of the container, in front of a given position, or at the back of the container, respectively.

When we call a `push` or `insert` member, we pass objects of the element type and those objects are copied into the container. When we call an `emplace` member, we pass arguments to a constructor for the element type. The `emplace` members use those arguments to construct an element directly in space managed by the container. For example, assuming `c` holds `Sales_data` (§ 7.1.4, p. 201) elements:

```
// construct a Sales_data object at the end of c
// uses the three-argument Sales_data constructor
c.emplace_back("978-0590353403", 25, 15.99);
// error: there is no version of push_back that takes three arguments
c.push_back("978-0590353403", 25, 15.99);
// ok: we create a temporary Sales_data object to pass to push_back
c.push_back(Sales_data("978-0590353403", 25, 15.99));
```

The call to `emplace_back` and the second call to `push_back` both create new `Sales_data` objects. In the call to `emplace_back`, that object is created directly in space managed by the container. The call to `push_back` creates a local temporary object that is pushed onto the container.

The arguments to an `emplace` function vary depending on the element type. The arguments must match a constructor for the element type:

```
// iter refers to an element in c, which holds Sales_data elements
c.emplace_back(); // uses the Sales_data default constructor
c.emplace(iter, "999-999999999"); // uses Sales_data(string)
// uses the Sales_data constructor that takes an ISBN, a count, and a price
c.emplace_front("978-0590353403", 25, 15.99);
```



The `emplace` functions construct elements in the container. The arguments to these functions must match a constructor for the element type.

### Exercises Section 9.3.1

**Exercise 9.18:** Write a program to read a sequence of `strings` from the standard input into a `deque`. Use iterators to write a loop to print the elements in the `deque`.

**Exercise 9.19:** Rewrite the program from the previous exercise to use a `list`. List the changes you needed to make.

**Exercise 9.20:** Write a program to copy elements from a `list<int>` into two `deques`. The even-valued elements should go into one `deque` and the odd ones into the other.

**Exercise 9.21:** Explain how the loop from page ?? that used the return from `insert` to add elements to a `list` would work if we inserted into a `vector` instead.

**Exercise 9.22:** Assuming `iv` is a `vector` of `ints`, what is wrong with the following program? How might you correct the problem(s)?

```
vector<int>::iterator iter = iv.begin(), mid = iv.begin() + iv.size()/2;
while (iter != mid)
    if (*iter == some_val)
        iv.insert(iter, 2 * some_val);
```

### 9.3.2 Accessing Elements

### 9.3.3 Erasing Elements

### 9.3.4 Specialized `forward_list` Operations

### 9.3.5 Resizing a Container

### 9.3.6 Container Operations May Invalidate Iterators

## 9.4 How a vector Grows

## 9.5 Additional string Operations

### 9.5.1 Other Ways to Construct strings

### 9.5.2 Other Ways to Change a string

### 9.5.3 string Search Operations

### 9.5.4 The compare Functions

### 9.5.5 Numeric Conversions

## 9.6 Container Adaptors

## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

# Chapter 10

## Generic Algorithms

### Contents

---

10.1 Overview .....	268
10.2 A First Look at the Algorithms .....	268
10.3 Customizing Operations .....	268
10.4 Revisiting Iterators .....	268
10.5 Structure of Generic Algorithms .....	268
10.6 Container-Specific Algorithms .....	268
Chapter Summary .....	269
Defined Terms .....	269

---

## 10.1 Overview

## 10.2 A First Look at the Algorithms

### 10.2.1 Read-Only Algorithms

### 10.2.2 Algorithms That Write Container Elements

### 10.2.3 Algorithms That Reorder Container Elements

## 10.3 Customizing Operations

### 10.3.1 Passing a Function to an Algorithm

### 10.3.2 Lambda Expressions

### 10.3.3 Lambda Captures and Returns

### 10.3.4 Binding Arguments

## 10.4 Revisiting Iterators

### 10.4.1 Insert Iterators

### 10.4.2 iostream Iterators

### 10.4.3 Reverse Iterators

## 10.5 Structure of Generic Algorithms

### 10.5.1 The Five Iterator Categories

### 10.5.2 Algorithm Parameter Patterns

### 10.5.3 Algorithm Naming Conventions

## 10.6 Container-Specific Algorithms



## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

# Chapter 11

## Associative Containers

### Contents

11.1 Using an Associative Container .....	270
11.2 Overview of the Associative Containers .....	270
11.3 Operations on Associative Containers .....	270
11.4 The Unordered Containers .....	271
Chapter Summary .....	272
Defined Terms .....	272

### 11.1 Using an Associative Container

### 11.2 Overview of the Associative Containers

#### 11.2.1 Defining an Associative Container

Initializing a multimap or multiset

#### 11.2.2 Requirements on Key Type

Key Types for Ordered Containers

Using a Comparison Function for the Key Type

#### 11.2.3 The pair Type

### 11.3 Operations on Associative Containers

#### 11.3.1 Associative Container Iterators

#### 11.3.2 Adding Elements

#### 11.3.3 Erasing Elements

#### 11.3.4 Subscripting a map

#### 11.3.5 Accessing Elements

Table 11.1: Unordered Container Management Operations

### 11.3.6 A Word Transformation Map

## 11.4 The Unordered Containers

### Using an Unordered Container

### Managing the Buckets

Table 11.2: Unordered Container Management Operations

### Requirements on Key Type for Unordered Containers

## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

## Chapter 12

# Dynamic Memory

### Contents

---

12.1 Dynamic Memory and Smart Pointers .....	274
12.2 Dynamic Arrays .....	274
12.3 Using the Library: A Text-Query Program .....	274
Chapter Summary .....	275
Defined Terms .....	275

---

## 12.1 Dynamic Memory and Smart Pointers

### 12.1.1 The `shared_ptr` Class

### 12.1.2 Managing Memory Directly

Using `new` to Dynamically Allocate and Initialize Objects

Dynamically Allocated `const` Objects

Memory Exhaustion

Freeing Dynamic Memory

Pointer Values and `delete`

Dynamically Allocated Objects Exist until They Are Freed

Resetting the Value of a Pointer after a `delete` ...

...Provides Only Limited Protection

### 12.1.3 Using `shared_ptr` with `new`

### 12.1.4 Smart Pointers and Exceptions

### 12.1.5 `unique_ptr`

### 12.1.6 `weak_ptr`

## 12.2 Dynamic Arrays

### 12.2.1 `new` and Arrays

### 12.2.2 The `allocator` Class

## 12.3 Using the Library: A Text-Query Program

### 12.3.1 Design of the Query Program

### 12.3.2 Defining the Query Program Classes

**Chapter Summary**

**Defined Terms**



# Part III

## Tools for Class Authors

### Contents

Chapter 13 Copy Control .....	277
Chapter 14 Overloaded Operations and Conversions .....	285
Chapter 15 Object-Oriented Programming .....	288
Chapter 16 Templates and Generic Programming .....	323

Classes are the central concept in C++. Chapter 7 began our detailed coverage of how classes are defined. That chapter covered topics fundamental to any use of classes: class scope, data hiding, and constructors. It also introduced various important class features: member functions, the implicit `this` pointer, `friends`, and `const`, `static`, and `mutable` members. In this part, we'll extend our coverage of classes by looking at copy control, overloaded operators, inheritance, and templates.

As we've seen, in C++ classes define constructors to control what happens when objects of the class type are initialized. Classes also control what happens when objects are copied, assigned, moved, and destroyed. In this respect, C++ differs from other languages, many of which do not give class designers the ability to control these operations. Chapter 13 covers these topics. This chapter also covers two important concepts introduced by the new standard: rvalue references and move operations.

Chapter 14 looks at operator overloading, which allows operands of class types to be used with the built-in operators. Operator overloading is one of the ways whereby C++ lets us create new types that are as intuitive to use as are the built-in types.

Among the operators that a class can overload is the function call operator. We can "call" objects of such classes just as if they were functions. We'll also look at new library facilities that make it easy to use different types of callable objects in a uniform way.

This chapter concludes by looking at another special kind of class member function —conversion operators. These operators define implicit conversions from objects of class type. The compiler applies these conversions in the same contexts—and for the same reasons—as it does with conversions among the built-in types.

The last two chapters in this part cover how C++ supports object-oriented and generic programming.

Chapter 15 covers inheritance and dynamic binding. Along with data abstraction, inheritance and dynamic binding are fundamental to object-oriented programming. Inheritance makes it easier for us to define related types and dynamic binding lets us write type-independent code that can ignore the differences among types that are related by inheritance.

Chapter 16 covers function and class templates. Templates let us write generic classes and functions that are type-independent. A number of new template-related features were introduced by the new standard: variadic templates, template type aliases, and new ways to control instantiation.

Writing our own object-oriented or generic types requires a fairly good understanding of C++. Fortunately, we can use object-oriented and generic types without understanding the details of how to build them. For example, the standard library uses the facilities we'll study in Chapter 15 and 16 extensively, and we've used the library types and algorithms without needing to know how they are implemented.

Readers, therefore, should understand that Part III covers fairly advanced topics. Writing templates or object-oriented classes requires a good understanding of the basics of C++ and a good grasp of how to define more basic classes.

# Chapter 13

## Copy Control

### Contents

13.1 Copy, Assign, and Destroy .....	278
13.2 Copy Control and Resource Management .....	283
13.3 Swap .....	283
13.4 A Copy-Control Example .....	283
13.5 Classes That Manage Dynamic Memory .....	283
13.6 Moving Objects .....	283
Chapter Summary .....	284
Defined Terms .....	284

As we saw in Chapter 7, each class defines a new type and defines the operations that objects of that type can perform. In that chapter, we also learned that classes can define constructors, which control what happens when objects of the class type are created.

In this chapter we'll learn how classes can control what happens when objects of the class type are copied, assigned, moved, or destroyed. Classes control these actions through special member functions: the copy constructor, move constructor, copyassignment operator, move-assignment operator, and destructor.

When we define a class, we specify—explicitly or implicitly—what happens when objects of that class type are copied, moved, assigned, and destroyed. A class controls these operations by defining five special member functions: **copy constructor**, **copy-assignment operator**, **move constructor**, **move-assignment operator**, and **destructor**. The copy and move constructors define what happens when an object is initialized from another object of the same type. The copy- and move-assignment operators define what happens when we assign an object of a class type to another object of that same class type. The destructor defines what happens when an object of the type ceases to exist. Collectively, we'll refer to these operations as **copy control**.

If a class does not define all of the copy-control members, the compiler automatically defines the missing operations (§ 7.1.5, p. 203). As a result, many classes can ignore copy control. However, for some classes, relying on the default definitions leads to disaster. Frequently, the hardest part of implementing copy-control operations is recognizing when we need to define them in the first place.



Copy control is an essential part of defining any C++ class. Programmers new to C++ are often confused by having to define what happens when objects are copied, moved, assigned, or destroyed. This confusion is compounded because if we do not explicitly define these operations, the compiler defines them for us—although the compiler-defined versions might not behave as we intend.

## 13.1 Copy, Assign, and Destroy

### 13.1.1 The Copy Constructor

#### Exercises Section 13.1.1

**Exercise 13.1:** Given the following sketch of a class, write a copy constructor that copies all the members. Your constructor should dynamically allocate (§ 12.1.2, p. 274) a new `string` and copy the object to which `ps` points, rather than copying `ps` itself.

```
class HasPtr {
public:
    HasPtr(const std::string &s = std::string()): ps(new std::string(s)), i(0) { }
private:
    std::string *ps;
    int i;
};
```

#### The Synthesized Copy Constructor

### 13.1.2 The Copy-Assignment Operator

#### Introducing Overloaded Assignment

#### The Synthesized Copy-Assignment Operator

### 13.1.3 The Destructor

#### What a Destructor Does


#### When a Destructor Is Called

The destructor is used automatically whenever an object of its type is destroyed:

- Variables are destroyed when they go out of scope.
- Members of an object are destroyed when the object of which they are a part is destroyed.
- Elements in a container—whether a library container or an array—are destroyed when the container is destroyed.
- Dynamically allocated objects are destroyed when the `delete` operator is applied to a pointer to the object (§ 12.1.2, p. 274).

- Temporary objects are destroyed at the end of the full expression in which the temporary was created (except that rvalue references or lvalue references to const are bounded to them).

Rvalue references can be used to **extend the lifetimes** of temporary objects (note, lvalue references to const can extend the lifetimes of temporary objects too, but they are not modifiable through them):



```
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
int main()
{
    std::string s1 = "Test";
    // std::string&& r1 = s1; // error: can't bind to lvalue

    const std::string& r2 = s1 + s1; // okay: lvalue reference to const extends lifetime
    // r2 += "Test"; // error: can't modify through reference to const

    std::string&& r3 = s1 + s1; // okay: rvalue reference extends lifetime
    r3 += "Test"; // okay: can modify through reference to non-const
    std::cout << r3 << '\n';
}
```

## The Synthesized Destructor

### 13.1.4 The Rule of Three/Five/Zero

As we've seen, there are three basic operations to control copies of class objects: the copy constructor, copy-assignment operator, and destructor. Moreover, as we'll see in § 13.6.2 (p. 283), under the new standard, a class can also define a move constructor and move-assignment operator.

There is no requirement that we define all of these operations: We can define one or two of them without having to define all of them. However, ordinarily these operations should be thought of as a unit. In general, it is unusual to need one without needing to define them all.

#### Rule of three

If a class requires a user-defined destructor, a user-defined copy constructor, or a user-defined copy assignment operator, it almost certainly requires all three.

Because C++ copies and copy-assigns objects of user-defined types in various situations (passing/returning by value, manipulating a container, etc), these special member functions will be called, if accessible, and if they are not user-defined, they are implicitly-defined by the compiler.

The implicitly-defined special member functions are typically incorrect if the class is managing a resource whose handle is an object of non-class type (raw pointer, POSIX file descriptor, etc), whose destructor does nothing and copy constructor/assignment operator performs a "shallow copy" (copy the value of the handle, without duplicating the underlying resource).

```
class rule_of_three {
    char* cstring; // raw pointer used as a handle to a dynamically-allocated memory block
public:
    rule_of_three(const char* arg): cstring(new char[std::strlen(arg)+1]) { // allocate
        std::strcpy(cstring, arg); // populate
    }
    ~rule_of_three() {
        delete[] cstring; // deallocate
    }
    rule_of_three(const rule_of_three& other) { // copy constructor
        cstring = new char[std::strlen(other.cstring) + 1];
        std::strcpy(cstring, other.cstring);
    }
    rule_of_three& operator=(const rule_of_three& other) { // copy assignment
        char* tmp_cstring = new char[std::strlen(other.cstring) + 1];
        std::strcpy(tmp_cstring, other.cstring);
        delete[] cstring;
```

```

        cstring = tmp_cstring;
        return *this;
    }
    // alternatively, reuse destructor and copy ctor
    // rule_of_three& operator=(rule_of_three other) {
    //     std::swap(cstring, other.cstring);
    //     return *this;
    // }
};

```

### Rule of five

Because the presence of a user-defined destructor, copy-constructor, or copy-assignment operator prevents implicit definition of the move constructor and the move assignment operator, any class for which move semantics are desirable, has to declare all five special member functions:

```

class rule_of_five {
    char* cstring; // raw pointer used as a handle to a dynamically-allocated memory block
public:
    rule_of_five(const char* arg): cstring(new char[std::strlen(arg)+1]) { // allocate
        std::strcpy(cstring, arg); // populate
    }
    ~rule_of_five() {
        delete[] cstring; // deallocate
    }
    rule_of_five(const rule_of_five& other) { // copy constructor
        cstring = new char[std::strlen(other.cstring) + 1];
        std::strcpy(cstring, other.cstring);
    }
    rule_of_five(rule_of_five&& other) : cstring(other.cstring) { // move constructor
        other.cstring = nullptr;
    }
    rule_of_five& operator=(const rule_of_five& other) { // copy assignment
        char* tmp_cstring = new char[std::strlen(other.cstring) + 1];
        std::strcpy(tmp_cstring, other.cstring);
        delete[] cstring;
        cstring = tmp_cstring;
        return *this;
    }
    rule_of_five& operator=(rule_of_five&& other) { // move assignment
        if(this!=&other) { // prevent self-move
            delete[] cstring;
            cstring = other.cstring;
            other.cstring = nullptr;
        }
        return *this;
    }
    // alternatively, replace both assignment operators with
    // rule_of_five& operator=(rule_of_five other) {
    //     std::swap(cstring, other.cstring);
    //     return *this;
    // }
};

```

Unlike Rule of Three, failing to provide move constructor and move assignment is usually not an error, but a missed optimization opportunity.

### Rule of zero

Classes that don't manage resources should be designed so that the compiler-generated functions for copying, moving, and destruction do the right things. You can express the idea by not declaring them,

```
class rule_of_zero {
    std::string cppstring;
public:
    rule_of_zero(const std::string& arg) : cppstring(arg) {}
};
```

or declaring them explicitly and equally explicitly opting in to the compiler-generated implementations (§ 13.1.5, p. 283).

```
class rule_of_zero {
    std::string cppstring;
public:
    rule_of_zero(const std::string& arg) : cppstring(arg) {}
    ~rule_of_zero() = default;
    rule_of_five(const rule_of_five& other) = default;
    rule_of_five(rule_of_five&& other) = default;
    rule_of_five& operator=(const rule_of_five& other) = default;
    rule_of_five& operator=(rule_of_five&& other) = default;
};
```

When a base class is intended for polymorphic use, its destructor may have to be declared `public` and `virtual`. This blocks implicit moves (15.7.1, p. 312), and so the special member functions have to be declared as defaulted.

```
class base_of_five_defaults {
public:
    base_of_five_defaults(const base_of_five_defaults&) = default;
    base_of_five_defaults(base_of_five_defaults&&) = default;
    base_of_five_defaults& operator=(const base_of_five_defaults&) = default;
    base_of_five_defaults& operator=(base_of_five_defaults&&) = default;
    virtual ~base_of_five_defaults() = default;
};
```

## Classes That Need Destructors Need Copy and Assignment

One rule of thumb to use when you decide whether a class needs to define its own versions of the copy-control members is to decide first whether the class needs a destructor. Often, the need for a destructor is more obvious than the need for the copy constructor or assignment operator. If the class needs a destructor, it almost surely needs a copy constructor and copy-assignment operator as well.

The `HasPtr` class that we have used in the exercise 13.1(p. 278) is a good example. That class allocates dynamic memory in its constructor. The synthesized destructor will not `delete` a data member that is a pointer. Therefore, this class needs to define a destructor to free the memory allocated by its constructor.

What may be less clear—but what our rule of thumb tells us—is that `HasPtr` also needs to define a copy constructor and copy-assignment operator.

Consider what would happen if we gave `HasPtr` a destructor but used the synthesized versions of the copy constructor and copy-assignment operator:

```
class HasPtr {
public:
    HasPtr(const std::string &s = std::string()): ps(new std::string(s)), i(0) { }
    ~HasPtr() { delete ps; }
    // WRONG: HasPtr needs a copy constructor and copy-assignment operator
    // other members as before
};
```

In this version of the class, the memory allocated in the constructor will be freed when a `HasPtr` object is destroyed. Unfortunately, we have introduced a serious bug! This version of the class uses the synthesized versions of copy and assignment. Those functions copy the pointer member, meaning that multiple `HasPtr` objects may be pointing to the same memory:

```
HasPtr f(HasPtr hp) { // HasPtr passed by value, so it is copied
    HasPtr ret = hp; // copies the given HasPtr
    // process ret
    return ret; // ret and hp are destroyed
}
```

When `f` returns, both `hp` and `ret` are destroyed and the `HasPtr` destructor is run on each of these objects. That destructor will `delete` the pointer member in `ret` and in `hp`. But these objects contain the same pointer value. This code will `delete` that pointer twice, which is an error (§ 12.1.2, p. 274). What happens is undefined.

In addition, the caller of `f` may still be using the object that was passed to `f`:

```
HasPtr p("some values");
f(p); // when f completes, the memory to which p.ps points is freed
HasPtr q(p); // now both p.ps and q.ps point to invalid memory!
```

The memory to which `p.ps` (and `q.ps`) points is no longer valid. It was returned to the system when `hp` (or `ret`) was destroyed.



If a class needs to define a destructor, it almost surely also needs to define the copy-assignment operator and a copy constructor.

## Classes That Need Copy Need Assignment, and Vice Versa

Although many classes need to define all of (or none of) the copy-control members, some classes have work that needs to be done to copy or assign objects but has no need for the destructor.

As an example, consider a class that gives each object its own, unique serial number. Such a class would need a copy constructor to generate a new, distinct serial number for the object being created. That constructor would copy all the other data members from the given object. This class would also need its own copy-assignment operator to avoid assigning to the serial number of the left-hand object. However, this class would have no need for a destructor.

This example gives rise to a second rule of thumb: If a class needs a copy constructor, it almost surely needs a copy-assignment operator. And vice versa—if the class needs an assignment operator, it almost surely needs a copy constructor as well. Nevertheless, needing either the copy constructor or the copy-assignment operator does not (necessarily) indicate the need for a destructor.

### Exercises Section 13.1.4

**Exercise 13.2:** Assume that `numbered` is a class with a default constructor that generates a unique serial number for each object, which is stored in a data member named `mysn`. Assuming `numbered` uses the synthesized copy-control members and given the following function:

```
void f (numbered s) { cout << s.mysn << endl; }
numbered a, b = a, c = b;
f(a); f(b); f(c);
```

**Exercise 13.3:** Assume `numbered` has a copy constructor that generates a new serial number. Does that change the output of the calls in the previous exercise? If so, why? What output gets generated?

**Exercise 13.4:** What if the parameter in `f` were `const numbered&`? Does that change the output? If so, why? What output gets generated?

**Exercise 13.5:** Write versions of `numbered` and `f` corresponding to the previous three exercises and check whether you correctly predicted the output.



### 13.1.5 Using = default

### 13.1.6 Preventing Copies

Defining a Function as Deleted

The Destructor Should Not be a Deleted Member

The Copy-Control Members May Be Synthesized as Deleted

private Copy Control

## 13.2 Copy Control and Resource Management

### 13.2.1 Classes That Act Like Values

### 13.2.2 Defining Classes That Act Like Pointers

## 13.3 Swap

## 13.4 A Copy-Control Example

## 13.5 Classes That Manage Dynamic Memory

## 13.6 Moving Objects

### 13.6.1 Rvalue References

Lvalues Persist; Rvalues Are Ephemeral

Variables Are Lvalues

The Library move Function

### 13.6.2 Move Constructor and Move Assignment

Move Operations, Library Containers, and Exceptions

Move-Assignment Operator

A Moved-from Object Must Be Destructible

The Synthesized Move Operations

Rvalues Are Moved, Lvalues Are Copied ...

...But Rvalues Are Copied If There Is No Move Constructor

Copy-and-Swap Assignment Operators and Move

Move Operations for the Message Class

Move Iterators

### 13.6.3 Rvalue References and Member Functions

Rvalue and Lvalue Reference Member Functions

## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

## Chapter 14

# Overloaded Operations and Conversions

### Contents

---

14.1 Basic Concepts .....	286
14.2 Input and Output Operators .....	286
14.3 Arithmetic and Relational Operators .....	286
14.4 Assignment Operators .....	286
14.5 Subscript Operator .....	286
14.6 Increment and Decrement Operators .....	286
14.7 Member Access Operators .....	286
14.8 Function-Call Operator .....	286
14.9 Overloading, Conversions, and Operators .....	286
Chapter Summary .....	287
Defined Terms .....	287

---

## 14.1 Basic Concepts

Choosing Member or Nonmember Implementation

## 14.2 Input and Output Operators

14.2.1 Overloading the Output Operator «

14.2.2 Overloading the Input Operator »

## 14.3 Arithmetic and Relational Operators

14.3.1 Equality Operators

14.3.2 Relational Operators

## 14.4 Assignment Operators

## 14.5 Subscript Operator

## 14.6 Increment and Decrement Operators

## 14.7 Member Access Operators

## 14.8 Function-Call Operator

14.8.1 Lambdas Are Function Objects

14.8.2 Library-Defined Function Objects

14.8.3 Callable Objects and function

## 14.9 Overloading, Conversions, and Operators

14.9.1 Conversion Operators

14.9.2 Avoiding Ambiguous Conversions

14.9.3 Function Matching and Overloaded Operators

**Chapter Summary**

**Defined Terms**

## Chapter 15

# Object-Oriented Programming

### Contents

---

15.1 OOP: An Overview .....	289
15.2 Defining Base and Derived Classes .....	290
15.3 Virtual Functions .....	297
15.4 Abstract Base Classes .....	301
15.5 Access Control and Inheritance .....	302
15.6 Class Scope under Inheritance .....	307
15.7 Constructors and Copy Control .....	311
15.8 Containers and Inheritance .....	316
15.9 Text Queries Revisited .....	320
Chapter Summary .....	322
Defined Terms .....	322

---

Object-oriented programming is based on three fundamental concepts: data abstraction, which we covered in Chapter 7, and inheritance and dynamic binding, which we'll cover in this chapter.

Inheritance and dynamic binding affect how we write our programs in two ways: They make it easier to define new classes that are similar, but not identical, to other classes, and they make it easier for us to write programs that can ignore the details of how those similar types differ.

Many applications include concepts that are related to but slightly different from one another. For example, our bookstore might offer different pricing strategies for different books. Some books might be sold only at a given price. Others might be sold subject to a discount. We might give a discount to purchasers who buy a specified number of copies of the book. Or we might give a discount for only the first few copies purchased but charge full price for any bought beyond a given limit, and so on. Object-oriented programming (OOP) is a good match to this kind of application.

## 15.1 OOP: An Overview

The key ideas in **object-oriented programming** are data abstraction, inheritance, and dynamic binding. Using data abstraction, we can define classes that separate interface from implementation (Chapter 7). Through inheritance, we can define classes that model the relationships among similar types. Through dynamic binding, we can use objects of these types while ignoring the details of how they differ.

### Inheritance

Classes related by **inheritance** form a hierarchy. Typically there is a **base class** at the root of the hierarchy, from which the other classes inherit, directly or indirectly. These inheriting classes are known as **derived classes**. The base class defines those members that are common to the types in the hierarchy. Each derived class defines those members that are specific to the derived class itself.

To model our different kinds of pricing strategies, we'll define a class named `Quote`, which will be the base class of our hierarchy. A `Quote` object will represent undiscounted books. From `Quote` we will inherit a second class, named `Bulk_quote`, to represent books that can be sold with a quantity discount.

These classes will have the following two member functions:

- `isbn()`, which will return the ISBN. This operation does not depend on the specifics of the inherited class(es); it will be defined only in class `Quote`.
- `net_price(size_t)`, which will return the price for purchasing a specified number of copies of a book. This operation is type specific; both `Quote` and `Bulk_quote` will define their own version of this function.

In C++, a base class distinguishes functions that are type dependent from those that it expects its derived classes to inherit without change. The base class defines as **virtual** those functions it expects its derived classes to define for themselves. Using this knowledge, we can start to write our `Quote` class:

```
class Quote {
public:
    std::string isbn() const;
    virtual double net_price(std::size_t n) const;
};
```

A derived class must specify the class(es) from which it intends to inherit. It does so in a **class derivation list**, which is a colon followed by a comma-separated list of base classes each of which may have an optional access specifier:

```
class Bulk_quote : public Quote { // Bulk_quote inherits from Quote
public:
    double net_price(std::size_t) const override;
};
```

Because `Bulk_quote` uses `public` in its derivation list, we can use objects of type `Bulk_quote` as if they were `Quote` objects.

A derived class must include in its own class body a declaration of all the virtual functions it intends to define for itself. A derived class may include the `virtual` keyword on these functions but is not required to do so. For reasons we'll explain in § 15.3 (p. 298), the new standard lets a derived class explicitly note that it intends a member function to **override** a virtual that it inherits. It does so by specifying `override` after its parameter list.

### Dynamic Binding

Through **dynamic binding**, we can use the same code to process objects of either type `Quote` or `Bulk_quote` interchangeably. For example, the following function prints the total price for purchasing the given number of copies of a given book:



```

// calculate and print the price for the given number of copies, applying any discounts
double print_total(ostream &os, const Quote &item, size_t n)
{
    // depending on the type of the object bound to the item parameter
    // calls either Quote::net_price or Bulk_quote::net_price
    double ret = item.net_price(n);
    os << "ISBN: " << item.isbn() // calls Quote::isbn
        << " # sold: " << n << " total due: " << ret << endl;
    return ret;
}

```

This function is pretty simple—it prints the results of calling `isbn` and `net_price` on its parameter and returns the value calculated by the call to `net_price`.

Nevertheless, there are two interesting things about this function: For reasons we'll explain in § 15.2.3 (p. 295), because the `item` parameter is a reference to `Quote`, we can call this function on either a `Quote` object or a `Bulk_quote` object. And, for reasons we'll explain in § 15.2.1 (p. 291), because `net_price` is a virtual function, and because `print_total` calls `net_price` through a reference, the version of `net_price` that is run will depend on the type of the object that we pass to `print_total`:

```

// basic has type Quote; bulk has type Bulk_quote
print_total(cout, basic, 20); // calls Quote version of net_price
print_total(cout, bulk, 20); // calls Bulk_quote version of net_price

```

The first call passes a `Quote` object to `print_total`. When `print_total` calls `net_price`, the `Quote` version will be run. In the next call, the argument is a `Bulk_quote`, so the `Bulk_quote` version of `net_price` (which applies a discount) will be run. Because the decision as to which version to run depends on the type of the argument, that decision can't be made until run time. Therefore, dynamic binding is sometimes known as **run-time binding**.



In C++, dynamic binding happens when a virtual function is called through a reference (or a pointer) to a base class.

## 15.2 Defining Base and Derived Classes

In many, but not all, ways base and derived classes are defined like other classes we have already seen. In this section, we'll cover the basic features used to define classes related by inheritance.

### 15.2.1 Defining a Base Class

We'll start by completing the definition of our `Quote` class:

```

class Quote {
public:
    Quote() = default;
    Quote(const std::string &book, double sales_price): bookNo(book), price(sales_price) { }
    std::string isbn() const { return bookNo; }
    // returns the total sales price for the specified number of items
    // derived classes will override and apply different discount algorithms
    virtual double net_price(std::size_t n) const { return n * price; }
    virtual ~Quote() = default; // dynamic binding for the destructor
private:
    std::string bookNo; // ISBN number of this item
protected:
    double price = 0.0; // normal, undiscounted price
};

```

The new parts in this class are the use of `virtual` on the `net_price` function and the destructor, and the `protected` access specifier. We'll explain virtual destructors in § 15.7.1 (p. 311), but for now it is worth noting that classes used as the root of an inheritance hierarchy almost always define a virtual destructor.



Base classes ordinarily should define a virtual destructor. Virtual destructors are needed even if they do no work.

## Member Functions and Inheritance

Derived classes inherit the members of their base class. However, a derived class needs to be able to provide its own definition for operations, such as `net_price`, that are type dependent. In such cases, the derived class needs to **override** the definition it inherits from the base class, by providing its own definition.

In C++, a base class must distinguish the functions it expects its derived classes to override from those that it expects its derived classes to inherit without change. The base class defines as **virtual** those functions it expects its derived classes to override. When we call a virtual function through a pointer or reference, the call will be dynamically bound. Depending on the type of the object to which the reference or pointer is bound, the version in the base class or in one of its derived classes will be executed.

A base class specifies that a member function should be dynamically bound by preceding its declaration with the keyword `virtual`. Any `nonstatic` member function (§ 7.6, p. 228), other than a constructor, may be `virtual`. The `virtual` keyword appears only on the declaration inside the class and may not be used on a function definition that appears outside the class body. A function that is declared as `virtual` in the base class is implicitly `virtual` in the derived classes as well. We'll have more to say about `virtual` functions in § 15.3 (p. 297).

Member functions that are not declared as `virtual` are resolved at compile time, not run time. For the `isbn` member, this is exactly the behavior we want. The `isbn` function does not depend on the details of a derived type. It behaves identically when run on a `Quote` or `Bulk_quote` object. There will be only one version of the `isbn` function in our inheritance hierarchy. Thus, there is no question as to which function to run when we call `isbn()`.

## Access Control and Inheritance

A derived class inherits the members defined in its base class. However, the member functions in a derived class may not necessarily access the members that are inherited from the base class. Like any other code that uses the base class, a derived class may access the `public` members of its `base` class but may not access the `private` members. However, sometimes a `base` class has members that it wants to let its derived classes use while still prohibiting access to those same members by other users. We specify such members after a **protected** access specifier.

Our `Quote` class expects its derived classes to define their own `net_price` function. To do so, those classes need access to the `price` member. As a result, `Quote` defines that member as `protected`. Derived classes are expected to access `bookNo` in the same way as ordinary users—by calling the `isbn` function. Hence, the `bookNo` member is `private` and is inaccessible to classes that inherit from `Quote`. We'll have more to say about `protected` members in § 15.5 (p. 302).

### Exercises Section 15.2.1

**Exercise 15.1:** What is a virtual member?

**Exercise 15.2:** How does the `protected` access specifier differ from `private`?

**Exercise 15.3:** Define your own versions of the `Quote` class and the `print_total` function.

## 15.2.2 Defining a Derived Class

A derived class must specify from which class(es) it inherits. It does so in its **class derivation list**, which is a colon followed by a comma-separated list of names of previously defined classes. Each base class name may be preceded by an optional access specifier, which is one of `public`, `protected`, or `private`.

A derived class must declare each inherited member function it intends to override. Therefore, our `Bulk_quote` class must include a `net_price` member:

```
class Bulk_quote : public Quote { // Bulk_quote inherits from Quote
public:
    Bulk_quote() = default;
    Bulk_quote(const std::string&, double, std::size_t, double);
    // overrides the base version in order to implement the bulk purchase discount policy
    double net_price(std::size_t) const override;
private:
    std::size_t min_qty = 0; // minimum purchase for the discount to apply
    double discount = 0.0; // fractional discount to apply
};
```

Our `Bulk_quote` class inherits the `isbn` function and the `bookNo` and `price` data members of its `Quote` base class. It defines its own version of `net_price` and has two additional data members, `min_qty` and `discount`. These members specify the minimum quantity and the discount to apply once that number of copies are purchased.

We'll have more to say about the access specifier used in a derivation list in § 15.5(p. 303). For now, what's useful to know is that the access specifier determines whether users of a derived class are allowed to know that the derived class inherits from its base class.

When the derivation is `public`, the `public` members of the base class become part of the interface of the derived class as well. In addition, we can bind an object of a publicly derived type to a pointer or reference to the base type. Because we used `public` in the derivation list, the interface to `Bulk_quote` implicitly contains the `isbn` function, and we may use a `Bulk_quote` object where a pointer or reference to `Quote` is expected.

Most classes inherit directly from only one base class. This form of inheritance, known as “[single inheritance](#),” forms the topic of this chapter. § 18.3 (p. 330) will cover classes that have derivation lists with more than one base class.

## Virtual Functions in the Derived Class

Derived classes frequently, but not always, override the `virtual` functions that they inherit. If a derived class does not override a `virtual` from its base, then, like any other member, the derived class inherits the version defined in its base class.

A derived class may include the `virtual` keyword on the functions it overrides, but it is not required to do so. For reasons we'll explain in § 15.3 (p. 298), the new standard lets a derived class explicitly note that it intends a member function to override a `virtual` that it inherits. It does so by specifying `override` after the parameter list, or after the `const` or reference qualifier(s) if the member is a `const` (§ 7.1.2, p. 197) or reference (§ 13.6.3, p. 283) function.

## Derived-Class Objects and the Derived-to-Base Conversion

A derived object contains multiple parts: a subobject containing the (nonstatic) members defined in the derived class itself, plus subobjects corresponding to each base class from which the derived class inherits. Thus, a `Bulk_quote` object will contain four data elements: the `bookNo` and `price` data members that it inherits from `Quote`, and the `min_qty` and `discount` members, which are defined by `Bulk_quote`.

Although the standard does not specify how derived objects are laid out in memory, we can think of a `Bulk_quote` object as consisting of two parts as represented in Figure 15.1.

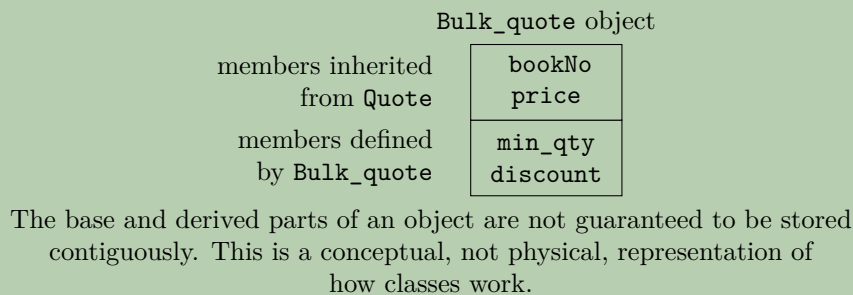


Figure 15.1: Conceptual Structure of a `Bulk_quote` Object

Because a derived object contains subparts corresponding to its base class(es), we can use an object of a derived type as if it were an object of its base type(s). In particular, we can bind a base-class reference or pointer to the base-class part of a derived object.

```
Quote item; // object of base type
Bulk_quote bulk; // object of derived type
Quote *p = &item; // p points to a Quote object
p = &bulk; // p points to the Quote part of bulk
Quote &r = bulk; // r bound to the Quote part of bulk
```

This conversion is often referred to as the [derived-to-base](#) conversion. As with any other conversion (§ 4.11, p. 121), the compiler will apply the derived-to-base conversion implicitly.

The fact that the derived-to-base conversion is implicit means that we can use an object of derived type or a reference to a derived type when a reference to the base type is required. Similarly, we can use a pointer to a derived type where a pointer to the base type is required.



The fact that a derived object contains subobjects for its base classes is key to how inheritance works.

## Derived-Class Constructors

Although a derived object contains members that it inherits from its base, it cannot directly initialize those members. Like any other code that creates an object of the base-class type, a derived class must use a base-class constructor to initialize its base-class part.



Each class controls how its members are initialized.

The base-class part of an object is initialized, along with the data members of the derived class, during the initialization phase of the constructor. Analogously to how we initialize a member, a derived-class constructor uses its constructor initializer list (§ 7.5.1, p. 219) to pass arguments to a base-class constructor. For example, the `Bulk_quote` constructor with four parameters:

```
Bulk_quote(const std::string& book, double p, std::size_t qty, double disc) :
    Quote(book, p), min_qty(qty), discount(disc) { }
```

passes its first two parameters (representing the ISBN and price) to the `Quote` constructor. That `Quote` constructor initializes the `Bulk_quote`'s base-class part (i.e., the `bookNo` and `price` members). When the (empty) `Quote` constructor body completes, the base-class part of the object being constructed will have been initialized. Next the direct members, `min_qty` and `discount`, are initialized. Finally, the (empty) function body of the `Bulk_quote` constructor is run.

As with a data member, unless we say otherwise, the base part of a derived object is default initialized. To use a different base-class constructor, we provide a constructor initializer using the name of the base class, followed (as usual) by a parenthesized list of arguments. Those arguments are used to select which base-class constructor to use to initialize the base-class part of the derived object.



The base class is initialized first, and then the members of the derived class are initialized in the order in which they are declared in the class.

## Using Members of the Base Class from the Derived Class

A derived class may access the `public` and `protected` members of its base class:

```
// if the specified number of items are purchased, use the discounted price
double Bulk_quote::net_price(size_t cnt) const {
    if (cnt >= min_qty)
        return cnt * (1 - discount) * price;
    else
        return cnt * price;
}
```

This function generates a discounted price: If the given quantity is more than `min_qty`, we apply the `discount` (which was stored as a fraction) to the `price`.

We'll have more to say about scope in § 15.6 (p. 307), but for now it's worth knowing that the scope of a derived class is nested inside the scope of its base class. As a result, there is no distinction between how a member of the derived class uses members defined in its own class (e.g., `min_qty` and `discount`) and how it uses members defined in its base (e.g., `price`).

### Key Concept: Respecting the Base-Class Interface

It is essential to understand that each class defines its own interface. Interactions with an object of a class-type should use the interface of that class, even if that object is the base-class part of a derived object.

As a result, derived-class constructors may not directly initialize the members of its base class. The constructor body of a derived constructor can assign values to its `public` or `protected` base-class members. Although it can assign to those members, it generally should not do so. Like any other user of the base class, a derived class should respect the interface of its base class by using a constructor to initialize its inherited members.

## Inheritance and static Members

If a base class defines a **static** member (§ 7.6, p. 228), there is only one such member defined for the entire hierarchy. Regardless of the number of classes derived from a base class, there exists a single instance of each **static** member.

```
class Base {
public:
    static void statmem();
};

class Derived : public Base {
    void f(const Derived&);
};
```

**static** members obey normal access control. If the member is **private** in the base class, then derived classes have no access to it. Assuming the member is accessible, we can use a **static** member through either the base or derived:

```
void Derived::f(const Derived &derived_obj) {
    Base::statmem(); // ok: Base defines statmem
    Derived::statmem(); // ok: Derived inherits statmem
    // ok: derived objects can be used to access static from base
    derived_obj.statmem(); // accessed through a Derived object
    statmem(); // accessed through this object
}
```

## Declarations of Derived Classes

A derived class is declared like any other class (§ 7.3.3, p. 212). The declaration contains the class name but does not include its derivation list:

```
class Bulk_quote : public Quote; // error: derivation list can't appear here
class Bulk_quote; // ok: right way to declare a derived class
```

The purpose of a declaration is to make known that a name exists and what kind of entity it denotes, for example, a class, function, or variable. The derivation list, and all other details of the definition, must appear together in the class body.

## Classes Used as a Base Class

A class must be defined, not just declared, before we can use it as a base class:

```
class Quote; // declared but not defined
// error: Quote must be defined
class Bulk_quote : public Quote { ... };
```

The reason for this restriction should be easy to see: Each derived class contains, and may use, the members it inherits from its base class. To use those members, the derived class must know what they are. One implication of this rule is that it is impossible to derive a class from itself.

A base class can itself be a derived class:

```
class Base { /* ... */ };
class D1: public Base { /* ... */ };
class D2: public D1 { /* ... */ };
```

In this hierarchy, **Base** is a **direct base** to **D1** and an **indirect base** to **D2**. A direct base class is named in the derivation list. An indirect base is one that a derived class inherits through its direct base class.

Each class inherits all the members of its direct base class. The most derived class inherits the members of its direct base. The members in the direct base include those it inherits from its base class, and so on up the inheritance chain. Effectively, the most derived object contains a subobject for its direct base and for each of its indirect bases.

## Preventing Inheritance

Sometimes we define a class that we don't want others to inherit from. Or we might define a class for which we don't want to think about whether it is appropriate as a base class. Under the new standard, we can prevent a class from being used as a base by following the class name with `final`:

```
class NoDerived final { /* */ }; // NoDerived can't be a base class
class Base { /* */ };
// Last is final; we cannot inherit from Last
class Last final : Base { /* */ }; // Last can't be a base class
class Bad : NoDerived { /* */ }; // error: NoDerived is final
class Bad2 : Last { /* */ }; // error: Last is final
```

### Exercises Section 15.2.2

**Exercise 15.4:** Which of the following declarations, if any, are incorrect? Explain why.

```
class Base { /* */ };
```

- (a) `class Derived : public Derived { /* */ };`
- (b) `class Derived : private Base { /* */ };`
- (c) `class Derived : public Base;`

**Exercise 15.5:** Define your own version of the `Bulk_quote` class.

**Exercise 15.6:** Test your `print_total` function from the exercises in § 3 (p. 291) by passing both `Quote` and `Bulk_quote` objects to that function.

**Exercise 15.7:** Define a class that implements a limited discount strategy, which applies a discount to books purchased up to a given limit. If the number of copies exceeds that limit, the normal price applies to those purchased beyond the limit.

## 15.2.3 Conversions and Inheritance



Understanding conversions between base and derived classes is essential to understanding how object-oriented programming works in C++.

Ordinarily, we can bind a reference or a pointer only to an object that has the same type as the corresponding reference or pointer (§ 2.3.1, p. 39, and § 2.3.2, p. 40) or to a type that involves an acceptable `const` conversion (§ 4.11.2, p. 123). Classes related by inheritance are an important exception: We can bind a pointer or reference to a base-class type to an object of a type derived from that base class. For example, we can use a `Quote&` to refer to a `Bulk_quote` object, and we can assign the address of a `Bulk_quote` object to a `Quote*`.

The fact that we can bind a reference (or pointer) to a base-class type to a derived object has a crucially important implication: When we use a reference (or pointer) to a base-class type, we don't know the actual type of the object to which the pointer or reference is bound. That object can be an object of the base class or it can be an object of a derived class.



Like built-in pointers, the smart pointer classes (§ 12.1, p. 274) support the derived-to-base conversion—we can store a pointer to a derived object in a smart pointer to the base type.

## Static Type and Dynamic Type

When we use types related by inheritance, we often need to distinguish between the **static type** of a variable or other expression and the **dynamic type** of the object that expression represents. The static type of an expression is always known at compile time—it is the type with which a variable is declared or that an expression yields. The dynamic type is the type of the object in memory that the variable or expression represents. The dynamic type may not be known until run time.

For example, when `print_total` calls `net_price` (§ 15.1, p. 290):



```
double ret = item.net_price(n);
```

we know that the static type of `item` is `Quote&`. The dynamic type depends on the type of the argument to which `item` is bound. That type cannot be known until a call is executed at run time. If we pass a `Bulk_quote` object to `print_total`, then the static type of `item` will differ from its dynamic type. As we've seen, the static type of `item` is `Quote&`, but in this case the dynamic type is `Bulk_quote`.

The dynamic type of an expression that is neither a reference nor a pointer is always the same as that expression's static type. For example, a variable of type `Quote` is always a `Quote` object; there is nothing we can do that will change the type of the object to which that variable corresponds.



It is crucial to understand that the static type of a pointer or reference to a base class may differ from its dynamic type

### There Is No Implicit Conversion from Base to Derived ...

The conversion from derived to base exists because every derived object contains a base-class part to which a pointer or reference of the base-class type can be bound. There is no similar guarantee for base-class objects. A base-class object can exist either as an independent object or as part of a derived object. A base object that is not part of a derived object has only the members defined by the base class; it doesn't have the members defined by the derived class.

Because a base object might or might not be part of a derived object, there is no automatic conversion from the base class to its derived class(s):

```
Quote base;
Bulk_quote* bulkP = &base; // error: can't convert base to derived
Bulk_quote& bulkRef = base; // error: can't convert base to derived
```

If these assignments were legal, we might attempt to use `bulkP` or `bulkRef` to use members that do not exist in `base`.

What is sometimes a bit surprising is that we cannot convert from base to derived even when a base pointer or reference is bound to a derived object:

```
Bulk_quote bulk;
Quote *itemP = &bulk; // ok: dynamic type is Bulk_quote
Bulk_quote *bulkP = itemP; // error: can't convert base to derived
```

The compiler has no way to know (at compile time) that a specific conversion will be safe at run time. The compiler looks only at the static types of the pointer or reference to determine whether a conversion is legal. If the base class has one or more virtual functions, we can use a `dynamic_cast` (which we'll cover in § 19.2.1 (p. 333)) to request a conversion that is checked at run time. Alternatively, in those cases when we know that the conversion from base to derived is safe, we can use a `static_cast` (§ 4.11.3, p. 124) to override the compiler.

### ...and No Conversion between Objects

The automatic derived-to-base conversion applies only for conversions to a reference or pointer type. There is no such conversion from a derived-class type to the baseclass type. Nevertheless, it is often possible to convert an object of a derived class to its base-class type. However, such conversions may not behave as we might want.

Remember that when we initialize or assign an object of a class type, we are actually calling a function. When we initialize, we're calling a constructor (§ 13.1.1, p. 278, and § 13.6.2, p. 283); when we assign, we're calling an assignment operator (§ 13.1.2, p. 278, and § 13.6.2, p. 283). These members normally have a parameter that is a reference to the `const` version of the class type.

Because these members take references, the derived-to-base conversion lets us pass a derived object to a base-class copy/move operation. These operations are not virtual. When we pass a derived object to a base-class constructor, the constructor that is run is defined in the base class. That constructor knows only about the members of the base class itself. Similarly, if we assign a derived object to a base object, the assignment operator that is run is the one defined in the base class. That operator also knows only about the members of the base class itself.

For example, our bookstore classes use the synthesized versions of copy and assignment (§ 13.1.1, p. 278, and § 13.1.2, p. 278). We'll have more to say about copy control and inheritance in § 15.7.2 (p. 312), but for now what's useful to know is that the synthesized versions memberwise copy or assign the data members of the class the same way as for any other class:



```
Bulk_quote bulk; // object of derived type
Quote item(bulk); // uses the Quote::Quote(const Quote&) constructor
item = bulk; // calls Quote::operator=(const Quote&)
```

When `item` is constructed, the `Quote` copy constructor is run. That constructor knows only about the `bookNo` and `price` members. It copies those members from the `Quote` part of `bulk` and ignores the members that are part of the `Bulk_quote` portion of `bulk`. Similarly for the assignment of `bulk` to `item`; only the `Quote` part of `bulk` is assigned to `item`.

Because the `Bulk_quote` part is ignored, we say that the `Bulk_quote` portion of `bulk` is **sliced down**.



When we initialize or assign an object of a base type from an object of a derived type, only the base-class part of the derived object is copied, moved, or assigned. The derived part of the object is ignored.

### Key Concept: Conversions among Types Related by Inheritance

There are three things that are important to understand about conversions among classes related by inheritance:

- The conversion from derived to base applies only to pointer or reference types.
- There is no implicit conversion from the base-class type to the derived type.
- Like any member, the derived-to-base conversion may be inaccessible due to access controls. We'll cover accessibility in § 15.5 (p. 304).

Although the automatic conversion applies only to pointers and references, most classes in an inheritance hierarchy (implicitly or explicitly) define the copy-control members (Chapter 13). As a result, we can often copy, move, or assign an object of derived type to a base-type object. However, copying, moving, or assigning a derived-type object to a base-type object copies, moves, or assigns only the members in the base-class part of the object.

### Exercises Section 15.2.3

**Exercise 15.8:** Define static type and dynamic type.

**Exercise 15.9:** When is it possible for an expression's static type to differ from its dynamic type? Give three examples in which the static and dynamic type differ.

**Exercise 15.10:** Recalling the discussion from § 8.1 (p. 236), explain how the program on page 242 that passed an `ifstream` to the `read` function works.

## 15.3 Virtual Functions

As we've seen, in C++ dynamic binding happens when a virtual member function is called through a reference or a pointer to a base-class type (§ 15.1, p. 289). Because we don't know which version of a function is called until run time, virtual functions must always be defined. Ordinarily, if we do not use a function, we don't need to supply a definition for that function (§ 6.1.2, p. 158). However, we must define every virtual function, regardless of whether it is used, because the compiler has no way to determine whether a virtual function is used.

### Calls to Virtual Functions May Be Resolved at Run Time

When a virtual function is called through a reference or pointer, the compiler generates code to decide at run time which function to call. The function that is called is the one that corresponds to the dynamic type of the object bound to that pointer or reference.

As an example, consider our `print_total` function from § 15.1 (p. 290). That function calls `net_price` on its parameter named `item`, which has type `Quote&`. Because `item` is a reference, and because `net_price` is virtual, the version of `net_price` that is called depends at run time on the actual (dynamic) type of the argument bound to `item`:

```
Quote base("0-201-82470-1", 50);
print_total(cout, base, 10); // calls Quote::net_price
```

```
Bulk_quote derived("0-201-82470-1", 50, 5, .19);
print_total(cout, derived, 10); // calls Bulk_quote::net_price
```

In the first call, `item` is bound to an object of type `Quote`. As a result, when `print_total` calls `net_price`, the version defined by `Quote` is run. In the second call, `item` is bound to a `Bulk_quote` object. In this call, `print_total` calls the `Bulk_quote` version of `net_price`.

It is crucial to understand that dynamic binding happens only when a virtual function is called through a pointer or a reference.

```
base = derived; // copies the Quote part of derived into base
base.net_price(20); // calls Quote::net_price
```

When we call a virtual function on an expression that has a plain—nonreference and nonpointer—type, that call is bound at compile time. For example, when we call `net_price` on `base`, there is no question as to which version of `net_price` to run. We can change the value (i.e., the contents) of the object that `base` represents, but there is no way to change the type of that object. Hence, this call is resolved, at compile time, to the `Quote` version of `net_price`.

### Key Concept: Polymorphism in C++

The key idea behind OOP is polymorphism. Polymorphism is derived from a Greek word meaning “many forms.” We speak of types related by inheritance as polymorphic types, because we can use the “many forms” of these types while ignoring the differences among them. The fact that the static and dynamic types of references and pointers can differ is the cornerstone of how C++ supports polymorphism.

When we call a function defined in a base class through a reference or pointer to the base class, we do not know the type of the object on which that member is executed. The object can be a base-class object or an object of a derived class. If the function is virtual, then the decision as to which function to run is delayed until run time. The version of the virtual function that is run is the one defined by the type of the object to which the reference is bound or to which the pointer points.

On the other hand, calls to nonvirtual functions are bound at compile time. Similarly, calls to any function (virtual or not) on an object are also bound at compile time. The type of an object is fixed and unvarying—there is nothing we can do to make the dynamic type of an object differ from its static type. Therefore, calls made on an object are bound at compile time to the version defined by the type of the object.



Virtuals are resolved at run time only if the call is made through a reference or pointer. Only in these cases is it possible for an object’s dynamic type to differ from its static type.

### Virtual Functions in a Derived Class

When a derived class overrides a `virtual` function, it may, but is not required to, repeat the `virtual` keyword. Once a function is declared as `virtual`, it remains `virtual` in all the derived classes.

A derived-class function that overrides an inherited `virtual` function must have exactly the same parameter type(s) as the base-class function that it overrides.

With one exception, the return type of a `virtual` in the derived class also must match the return type of the function from the base class. The exception applies to `virtuals` that return a reference (or pointer) to types that are themselves related by inheritance. That is, if `D` is derived from `B`, then a base class `virtual` can return a `B*` and the version in the derived can return a `D*`. However, such return types require that the derived-to-base conversion from `D` to `B` is accessible. § 15.5 (p. 304) covers how to determine whether the derived-to-base conversion is accessible. We’ll see an example of this kind of `virtual` function in § 15.8.1 (p. 319).



A function that is `virtual` in a base class is implicitly `virtual` in its derived classes. When a derived class overrides a `virtual`, the parameters in the base and derived classes must match exactly.

### The final and override Specifiers

As we’ll see in § 15.6 (p. 309), it is legal for a derived class to define a function with the same name as a `virtual` in its base class but with a different parameter list. The compiler considers such a function to be independent from the base-class function. In such cases, the derived version does not override the version in the base class. In practice, such declarations often are a mistake—the class author intended to override a `virtual` from the base class but made a mistake in specifying the parameter list.

Finding such bugs can be surprisingly hard. Under the new standard we can specify **override** on a **virtual** function in a derived class. Doing so makes our intention clear and (more importantly) enlists the compiler in finding such problems for us. The compiler will reject a program if a function marked **override** does not override an existing **virtual** function:

```
struct B {
    virtual void f1(int) const;
    virtual void f2();
    void f3();
};

struct D1 : B {
    void f1(int) const override; // ok: f1 matches f1 in the base
    void f2(int) override; // error: B has no f2(int) function
    void f3() override; // error: f3 not virtual
    void f4() override; // error: B doesn't have a function named f4
};
```

In D1, the **override** specifier on **f1** is fine; both the base and derived versions of **f1** are **const** members that take an **int** and return **void**. The version of **f1** in D1 properly overrides the **virtual** that it inherits from B.

The declaration of **f2** in D1 does not match the declaration of **f2** in B—the version defined in B takes no arguments and the one defined in D1 takes an **int**. Because the declarations don't match, **f2** in D1 doesn't override **f2** from B; it is a new function that happens to have the same name. Because we said we intended this declaration to be an **override** and it isn't, the compiler will generate an error.

Because only a **virtual** function can be overridden, the compiler will also reject **f3** in D1. That function is not **virtual** in B, so there is no function to **override**. Similarly **f4** is in error because B doesn't even have a function named **f4**.

We can also designate a function as **final**. Any attempt to **override** a function that has been defined as **final** will be flagged as an error:

```
struct D2 : B {
    // inherits f2() and f3() from B and overrides f1(int)
    void f1(int) const final; // subsequent classes can't override f1(int)
};

struct D3 : D2 {
    void f2(); // ok: overrides f2 inherited from the indirect base, B
    void f1(int) const; // error: D2 declared f1 as final
};
```

**final** and **override** specifiers appear after the parameter list (including any **const** or reference qualifiers) and after a trailing return (§ 6.3.3, p. 175).

## Virtual Functions and Default Arguments

Like any other function, a **virtual** function can have default arguments (§ 6.5.1, p. 179). If a call uses a default argument, the value that is used is the one defined by the static type through which the function is called.

That is, when a call is made through a reference or pointer to base, the default argument(s) will be those defined in the base class. The base-class arguments will be used even when the derived version of the function is run. In this case, the derived function will be passed the default arguments defined for the base-class version of the function. If the derived function relies on being passed different arguments, the program will not execute as expected.



Virtual functions that have default arguments should use the same argument values in the base and derived classes.

## Circumventing the Virtual Mechanism

In some cases, we want to prevent dynamic binding of a call to a virtual function; we want to force the call to use a particular version of that virtual. We can use the scope operator to do so. For example, this code:

```
// calls the version from the base class regardless of the dynamic type of baseP
double undiscounted = baseP->Quote::net_price(42);
```

calls the `Quote` version of `net_price` regardless of the type of the object to which `baseP` actually points. This call will be resolved at compile time.



Ordinarily, only code inside member functions (or **friends**) should need to use the scope operator to circumvent the **virtual** mechanism.

Why might we wish to circumvent the **virtual** mechanism? The most common reason is when a derived-class **virtual** function calls the version from the base class. In such cases, the base-class version might do work common to all types in the hierarchy. The versions defined in the derived classes would do whatever additional work is particular to their own type.



If a derived **virtual** function that intended to call its base-class version omits the scope operator, the call will be resolved at run time as a call to the derived version itself, resulting in an infinite recursion.

### Exercises Section 15.3.0

**Exercise 15.11:** Add a **virtual** debug function to your `Quote` class hierarchy that displays the data members of the respective classes.

**Exercise 15.12:** Is it ever useful to declare a member function as both **override** and **final**? Why or why not?

**Exercise 15.13:** Given the following classes, explain each **print** function:

```
class base {
public:
    string name() { return basename; }
    virtual void print(ostream &os) { os << basename; }
private:
    string basename;
};

class derived : public base {
public:
    void print(ostream &os) { print(os); os << " " << i; }
private:
    int i;
};
```

If there is a problem in this code, how would you fix it?

**Exercise 15.14:** Given the classes from the previous exercise and the following objects, determine which function is called at run time:

```
base bobj;      base *bp1 = &bobj;   base &br1 = bobj;
derived dobj;   base *bp2 = &dobj;   base &br2 = dobj;
```

- (a) `bobj.print();`
- (b) `dobj.print();`
- (c) `bp1->name();`
- (d) `bp2->name();`
- (e) `br1.print();`
- (f) `br2.print();`

## 15.4 Abstract Base Classes

Imagine that we want to extend our bookstore classes to support several discount strategies. In addition to a bulk discount, we might offer a discount for purchases up to a certain quantity and then charge the full price thereafter. Or we might offer a discount for purchases above a certain limit but not for purchases up to that limit.

Each of these discount strategies is the same in that it requires a quantity and a discount amount. We might support these differing strategies by defining a new class named `Disc_quote` to store the quantity and the discount amount. Classes, such as `Bulk_item`, that represent a specific discount strategy will inherit from `Disc_quote`. Each of the derived classes will implement its discount strategy by defining its own version of `net_price`.

Before we can define our `Disc_Quote` class, we have to decide what to do about `net_price`. Our `Disc_quote` class doesn't correspond to any particular discount strategy; there is no meaning to ascribe to `net_price` for this class.

We could define `Disc_quote` without its own version of `net_price`. In this case, `Disc_quote` would inherit `net_price` from `Quote`.

However, this design would make it possible for our users to write nonsensical code. A user could create an object of type `Disc_quote` by supplying a quantity and a discount rate. Passing that `Disc_quote` object to a function such as `print_total` would use the `Quote` version of `net_price`. The calculated price would not include the discount that was supplied when the object was created. That state of affairs makes no sense.

### Pure Virtual Functions

Thinking about the question in this detail reveals that our problem is not just that we don't know how to define `net_price`. In practice, we'd like to prevent users from creating `Disc_quote` objects at all. This class represents the general concept of a discounted book, not a concrete discount strategy.

We can enforce this design intent—and make it clear that there is no meaning for `net_price`—by defining `net_price` as a **pure virtual function**. Unlike ordinary `virtual`s, a pure `virtual` function does not have to be defined. We specify that a `virtual` function is a pure `virtual` by writing `= 0` in place of a function body (i.e., just before the semicolon that ends the declaration). The `= 0` may appear only on the declaration of a `virtual` function in the class body:

```
// class to hold the discount rate and quantity
// derived classes will implement pricing strategies using these data
class Disc_quote : public Quote {
public:
    Disc_quote() = default;
    Disc_quote(const std::string& book, double price, std::size_t qty, double disc):
        Quote(book, price), quantity(qty), discount(disc) { }
    double net_price(std::size_t) const = 0;
protected:
    std::size_t quantity = 0; // purchase size for the discount to apply
    double discount = 0.0; // fractional discount to apply
};
```

Like our earlier `Bulk_item` class, `Disc_quote` defines a default constructor and a constructor that takes four parameters. Although we cannot define objects of this type directly, constructors in classes derived from `Disc_quote` will use the `Disc_quote` constructors to construct the `Disc_quote` part of their objects. The constructor that has four parameters passes its first two to the `Quote` constructor and directly initializes its own members, `discount` and `quantity`. The default constructor default initializes those members.

It is worth noting that we can provide a definition for a pure `virtual`. However, the function body must be defined outside the class. That is, we cannot provide a function body inside the class for a function that is `= 0`.

### Classes with Pure Virtuals Are Abstract Base Classes

A class containing (or inheriting without overriding) a pure `virtual` function is an **abstract base class**. An abstract base class defines an interface for subsequent classes to override. We cannot (directly) create objects of a type that is an abstract base class. Because `Disc_quote` defines `net_price` as a pure `virtual`, we cannot define objects of type `Disc_quote`. We can define objects of classes that inherit from `Disc_quote`, so long as those classes override `net_price`:

```
// Disc_quote declares pure virtual functions, which Bulk_quote will override
```

```
Disc_quote discounted; // error: can't define a Disc_quote object
Bulk_quote bulk; // ok: Bulk_quote has no pure virtual functions
```

Classes that inherit from `Disc_quote` must define `net_price` or those classes will be abstract as well.



We may not create objects of a type that is an abstract base class.

## A Derived Class Constructor Initializes Its Direct Base Class Only

Now we can reimplement `Bulk_quote` to inherit from `Disc_quote` rather than inheriting directly from `Quote`:

```
// the discount kicks in when a specified number of copies of the same book are sold
// the discount is expressed as a fraction to use to reduce the normal price
class Bulk_quote : public Disc_quote {
public:
    Bulk_quote() = default;
    Bulk_quote(const std::string& book, double price, std::size_t qty, double disc):
        Disc_quote(book, price, qty, disc) { }
    // overrides the base version to implement the bulk purchase discount policy
    double net_price(std::size_t) const override;
};
```

This version of `Bulk_quote` has a direct base class, `Disc_quote`, and an indirect base class, `Quote`. Each `Bulk_quote` object has three subobjects: an (empty) `Bulk_quote` part, a `Disc_quote` subobject, and a `Quote` subobject.

As we've seen, each class controls the initialization of objects of its type. Therefore, even though `Bulk_quote` has no data members of its own, it provides the same four-argument constructor as in our original class. Our new constructor passes its arguments to the `Disc_quote` constructor. That constructor in turn runs the `Quote` constructor. The `Quote` constructor initializes the `bookNo` and `price` members of `bulk`. When the `Quote` constructor ends, the `Disc_quote` constructor runs and initializes the `quantity` and `discount` members. At this point, the `Bulk_quote` constructor resumes. That constructor has no further initializations or any other work to do.

### Key Concept: Refactoring

Adding `Disc_quote` to the `Quote` hierarchy is an example of *refactoring*. Refactoring involves redesigning a class hierarchy to move operations and/or data from one class to another. Refactoring is common in object-oriented applications.

It is noteworthy that even though we changed the inheritance hierarchy, code that uses `Bulk_quote` or `Quote` would not need to change. However, when classes are refactored (or changed in any other way) we must recompile any code that uses those classes.

### Exercises Section 15.4.0

**Exercise 15.15:** Define your own versions of `Disc_quote` and `Bulk_quote`.

**Exercise 15.16:** Rewrite the class representing a limited discount strategy, which you wrote for the exercise 15.7 (p. 295), to inherit from `Disc_quote`.

**Exercise 15.17:** Try to define an object of type `Disc_quote` and see what errors you get from the compiler.

## 15.5 Access Control and Inheritance

Just as each class controls the initialization of its own members (§ 15.2.2, p. 293), each class also controls whether its members are **accessible** to a derived class.

### protected Members

As we've seen, a class uses **protected** for those members that it is willing to share with its derived classes but wants to protect from general access. The **protected** specifier can be thought of as a blend of **private** and **public**:



- Like `private`, `protected` members are inaccessible to users of the class.
- Like `public`, `protected` members are accessible to members and `friends` of classes derived from this class.

In addition, `protected` has another important property:

- A derived class member or `friend` may access the `protected` members of the base class only through a derived object. The derived class has no special access to the `protected` members of base-class objects.

To understand this last rule, consider the following example:

```
class Base {
protected:
    int prot_mem; // protected member
};

class Sneaky : public Base {
    friend void clobber(Sneaky&); // can access Sneaky::prot_mem
    friend void clobber(Base&); // can't access Base::prot_mem
    int j; // j is private by default
};

// ok: clobber can access the private and protected members in Sneaky objects
void clobber(Sneaky &s) { s.j = s.prot_mem = 0; }
// error: clobber can't access the protected members in Base
void clobber(Base &b) { b.prot_mem = 0; }
```

If derived classes (and `friends`) could access `protected` members in a base-class object, then our second version of `clobber` (that takes a `Base&`) would be legal. That function is not a `friend` of `Base`, yet it would be allowed to change an object of type `Base`; we could circumvent the protection provided by `protected` for any class simply by defining a new class along the lines of `Sneaky`.

To prevent such usage, members and `friends` of a derived class can access the `protected` members only in base-class objects that are embedded inside a derived type object; they have no special access to ordinary objects of the base type.

### public, private, and protected Inheritance

Access to a member that a class inherits is controlled by a combination of the access specifier for that member in the base class, and the access specifier in the derivation list of the derived class. As an example, consider the following hierarchy:

```
class Base {
public:
    void pub_mem(); // public member
protected:
    int prot_mem; // protected member
private:
    char priv_mem; // private member
};

struct Pub_Derv : public Base {
    // ok: derived classes can access protected members
    int f() { return prot_mem; }
    // error: private members are inaccessible to derived classes
    char g() { return priv_mem; }
};

struct Priv_Derv : private Base {
    // private derivation doesn't affect access in the derived class
    int f1() const { return prot_mem; }
};
```

The derivation access specifier has no effect on whether members (and `friends`) of a derived class may access the members of its own direct base class. Access to the members of a base class is controlled by the access



specifiers in the base class itself. Both `Pub_Derv` and `Priv_Derv` may access the `protected` member `prot_mem`. Neither may access the `private` member `priv_mem`.

The purpose of the derivation access specifier is to control the access that users of the derived class—including other classes derived from the derived class—have to the members inherited from `Base`:

```
Pub_Derv d1; // members inherited from Base are public
Priv_Derv d2; // members inherited from Base are private
d1.pub_mem(); // ok: pub_mem is public in the derived class
d2.pub_mem(); // error: pub_mem is private in the derived class
```

Both `Pub_Derv` and `Priv_Derv` inherit the `pub_mem` function. When the inheritance is `public`, members retain their access specification. Thus, `d1` can call `pub_mem`. In `Priv_Derv`, the members of `Base` are `private`; users of that class may not call `pub_mem`.

The derivation access specifier used by a derived class also controls access from classes that inherit from that derived class:

```
struct Derived_from_Public : public Pub_Derv {
    // ok: Base::prot_mem remains protected in Pub_Derv
    int use_base() { return prot_mem; }
};

struct Derived_from_Private : public Priv_Derv {
    // error: Base::prot_mem is private in Priv_Derv
    int use_base() { return prot_mem; }
};
```

Classes derived from `Pub_Derv` may access `prot_mem` from `Base` because that member remains a `protected` member in `Pub_Derv`. In contrast, classes derived from `Priv_Derv` have no such access. To them, all the members that `Priv_Derv` inherited from `Base` are `private`.

Had we defined another class, say, `Prot_Derv`, that used `protected` inheritance, the `public` members of `Base` would be `protected` members in that class. Users of `Prot_Derv` would have no access to `pub_mem`, but the members and friends of `Prot_Derv` could access that inherited member.

### Accessibility of Derived-to-Base Conversion

Whether the derived-to-base conversion (§ 15.2.2, p. 292) is accessible depends on which code is trying to use the conversion and may depend on the access specifier used in the derived class' derivation. Assuming `D` inherits from `B`:

- User code may use the derived-to-base conversion only if `D` inherits publicly from `B`. User code may not use the conversion if `D` inherits from `B` using either `protected` or `private`.
- Member functions and friends of `D` can use the conversion to `B` regardless of how `D` inherits from `B`. The derived-to-base conversion to a direct base class is always accessible to members and `friends` of a derived class.
- Member functions and `friends` of classes derived from `D` may use the derived-to-base conversion if `D` inherits from `B` using either `public` or `protected`. Such code may not use the conversion if `D` inherits privately from `B`.



For any given point in your code, if a `public` member of the base class would be accessible, then the derived-to-base conversion is also accessible, and not otherwise.

**Key Concept: Class Design and protected Members**

In the absence of inheritance, we can think of a class as having two different kinds of users: ordinary users and implementors. Ordinary users write code that uses objects of the class type; such code can access only the **public** (interface) members of the class. Implementors write the code contained in the members and **friends** of the class. The members and **friends** of the class can access both the **public** and **private** (implementation) sections.

Under inheritance, there is a third kind of user, namely, derived classes. A base class makes **protected** those parts of its implementation that it is willing to let its derived classes use. The **protected** members remain inaccessible to ordinary user code; **private** members remain inaccessible to **derived** classes and their **friends**.

Like any other class, a class that is used as a base class makes its interface members **public**. A class that is used as a base class may divide its implementation into those members that are accessible to derived classes and those that remain accessible only to the base class and its friends. An implementation member should be **protected** if it provides an operation or data that a derived class will need to use in its own implementation. Otherwise, implementation members should be **private**.

**Friendship and Inheritance**

Just as friendship is not transitive (§ 7.3.4, p. 213), friendship is also not inherited. Friends of the base have no special access to members of its derived classes, and **friends** of a derived class have no special access to the base class:

```
class Base {
    friend class Pal; // Pal has no special access to classes derived from Base
protected:
    int prot_mem; // protected member
};

class Sneaky : public Base {
    friend void clobber(Sneaky&); // can access Sneaky::prot_mem
    friend void clobber(Base&); // can't access Base::prot_mem
    int j; // j is private by default
}

class Pal {
public:
    int f(Base b) { return b.prot_mem; } // ok: Pal is a friend of Base
    int f2(Sneaky s) { return s.j; } // error: Pal not friend of Sneaky
    // access to a base class is controlled by the base class, even inside a derived object
    int f3(Sneaky s) { return s.prot_mem; } // ok: Pal is a friend
};
```

The fact that **f3** is legal may seem surprising, but it follows directly from the notion that each class controls access to its own members. **Pal** is a friend of **Base**, so **Pal** can access the members of **Base** objects. That access includes access to **Base** objects that are embedded in an object of a type derived from **Base**.

When a class makes another class a **friend**, it is only that class to which friendship is granted. The **base** classes of, and classes derived from, the **friend** have no special access to the befriending class:

```
// D2 has no access to protected or private members in Base
class D2 : public Pal {
public:
    int mem(Base b) {
        return b.prot_mem; // error: friendship doesn't inherit
    }
};
```



Friendship is not inherited; each class controls access to its members.

## Exempting Individual Members

Sometimes we need to change the access level of a name that a derived class inherits. We can do so by providing a `using` declaration (§ 3.1, p. 65):

```
class Base {
public:
    std::size_t size() const { return n; }
protected:
    std::size_t n;
};

class Derived : private Base { // note: private inheritance
public:
    // maintain access levels for members related to the size of the object
    using Base::size;
protected:
    using Base::n;
};
```

Because `Derived` uses `private` inheritance, the inherited members, `size` and `n`, are (by default) private members of `Derived`. The `using` declarations adjust the accessibility of these members. Users of `Derived` can access the `size` member, and classes subsequently derived from `Derived` can access `n`.

A `using` declaration inside a class can name any accessible (e.g., not `private`) member of a direct or indirect base class. Access to a name specified in a `using` declaration depends on the access specifier preceding the `using` declaration. That is, if a `using` declaration appears in a `private` part of the class, that name is accessible to members and `friends` only. If the declaration is in a `public` section, the name is available to all users of the class. If the declaration is in a `protected` section, the name is accessible to the members, `friends`, and derived classes.



A derived class may provide a `using` declaration only for names it is permitted to access.

## Default Inheritance Protection Levels

In § 7.2 (p. 204) we saw that classes defined with the `struct` and `class` keywords have different default access specifiers. Similarly, the default derivation specifier depends on which keyword is used to define a derived class. By default, a derived class defined with the `class` keyword has `private` inheritance; a derived class defined with `struct` has `public` inheritance:

```
class Base { /* ... */ };
struct D1 : Base { /* ... */ }; // public inheritance by default
class D2 : Base { /* ... */ }; // private inheritance by default
```

It is a common misconception to think that there are deeper differences between classes defined using the `struct` keyword and those defined using `class`. The only differences are the default access specifier for members and the default derivation access specifier. There are no other distinctions.



A privately derived class should specify `private` explicitly rather than rely on the default. Being explicit makes it clear that `private` inheritance is intended and not an oversight.

### Exercises Section 15.5.0

**Exercise 15.18:** Given the classes from page 303 and page 304, and assuming each object has the type specified in the comments, determine which of these assignments are legal. Explain why those that are illegal aren't allowed:

```
Base *p = &d1; // d1 has type Pub_Derv
p = &d2; // d2 has type Priv_Derv
p = &d3; // d3 has type Prot_Derv
p = &dd1; // dd1 has type Derived_from_Public
p = &dd2; // dd2 has type Derived_from_Private
p = &dd3; // dd3 has type Derived_from_Protected
```

**Exercise 15.19:** Assume that each of the classes from page 303 and page 304 has a member function of the form:

```
void memfcn(Base &b) { b = *this; }
```

For each class, determine whether this function would be legal.

**Exercise 15.20:** Write code to test your answers to the previous two exercises.

**Exercise 15.21:** Choose one of the following general abstractions containing a family of types (or choose one of your own). Organize the types into an inheritance hierarchy:

- (a) Graphical file formats (such as gif, tiff, jpeg, bmp)
- (b) Geometric primitives (such as box, circle, sphere, cone)
- (c) C++ language types (such as class, function, member function)

**Exercise 15.22:** For the class you chose in the previous exercise, identify some of the likely virtual functions as well as `public` and `protected` members.

## 15.6 Class Scope under Inheritance

Each class defines its own scope (§ 7.4, p. 214) within which its members are defined. Under inheritance, the scope of a derived class is nested (§ 2.2.4, p. 37) inside the scope of its base classes. If a name is unresolved within the scope of the derived class, the enclosing base-class scopes are searched for a definition of that name.

The fact that the scope of a derived class nests inside the scope of its base classes can be surprising. After all, the base and derived classes are defined in separate parts of our program's text. However, it is this hierarchical nesting of class scopes that allows the members of a derived class to use members of its base class as if those members were part of the derived class. For example, when we write

```
Bulk_quote bulk;
cout << bulk.isbn();
```

the use of the name `isbn` is resolved as follows:

- Because we called `isbn` on an object of type `Bulk_quote`, the search starts in the `Bulk_quote` class. The name `isbn` is not found in that class.
- Because `Bulk_quote` is derived from `Disc_quote`, the `Disc_quote` class is searched next. The name is still not found.
- Because `Disc_quote` is derived from `Quote`, the `Quote` class is searched next. The name `isbn` is found in that class; the use of `isbn` is resolved to the `isbn` in `Quote`.

### Name Lookup Happens at Compile Time

The static type (§ 15.2.3, p. 295) of an object, reference, or pointer determines which members of that object are visible. Even when the static and dynamic types might differ (as can happen when a reference or pointer to a base class is used), the static type determines what members can be used. As an example, we might add a member to the `Disc_quote` class that returns a `pair` (§ 11.2.3, p. 270) holding the minimum (or maximum) quantity and the discounted price:

```
class Disc_quote : public Quote {
public:
    std::pair<size_t, double> discount_policy() const { return {quantity, discount}; }
    // other members as before
};
```

We can use `discount_policy` only through an object, pointer, or reference of type `Disc_quote` or of a class derived from `Disc_quote`:

```
Bulk_quote bulk;
Bulk_quote *bulkP = &bulk; // static and dynamic types are the same
Quote *itemP = &bulk; // static and dynamic types differ
bulkP->discount_policy(); // ok: bulkP has type Bulk_quote*
itemP->discount_policy(); // error: itemP has type Quote*
```

Even though `bulk` has a member named `discount_policy`, that member is not visible through `itemP`. The type of `itemP` is a pointer to `Quote`, which means that the search for `discount_policy` starts in class `Quote`. The `Quote` class has no member named `discount_policy`, so we cannot call that member on an object, reference, or pointer of type `Quote`.

## Name Collisions and Inheritance

Like any other scope, a derived class can reuse a name defined in one of its direct or indirect base classes. As usual, names defined in an inner scope (e.g., a derived class) hide uses of that name in the outer scope (e.g., a base class) (§ 2.2.4, p. 37):

```
struct Base {
    Base(): mem(1) { }
protected:
    int mem;
};

struct Derived : Base {
    Derived(int i): mem(i) { } // initializes Derived::mem to i
    // Base::mem is initialized by the Base's default constructor
    int get_mem() { return mem; } // returns Derived::mem
protected:
    int mem; // hides mem in the base
};
```

The reference to `mem` inside `get_mem` is resolved to the name inside `Derived`. Were we to write

```
Derived d(42);
cout << d.get_mem() << endl; // prints 42
```

then the output would be 42.



A derived-class member with the same name as a member of the base class hides direct use of the base-class member.

## Using the Scope Operator to Use Hidden Members

We can use a hidden base-class member by using the scope operator:

```
struct Derived : Base {
    int get_base_mem() { return Base::mem; }
    // ...
};
```

The scope operator overrides the normal lookup and directs the compiler to look for `mem` starting in the scope of class `Base`. If we ran the code above with this version of `Derived`, the result of `d.get_mem()` would be 1.



Aside from overriding inherited virtual functions, a derived class usually should not reuse names defined in its base class.

**Key Concept: Name Lookup and Inheritance**

Understanding how function calls are resolved is crucial to understanding inheritance in C++. Given the call `p->mem()` (or `obj.mem()`), the following four steps happen:

- First determine the static type of `p` (or `obj`). Because we're calling a member, that type must be a class type.
- Look for `mem` in the class that corresponds to the static type of `p` (or `obj`). If `mem` is not found, look in the direct base class and continue up the chain of classes until `mem` is found or the last class is searched. If `mem` is not found in the class or its enclosing base classes, then the call will not compile.
- Once `mem` is found, do normal type checking (§ 6.1, p. 156) to see if this call is legal given the definition that was found.
- Assuming the call is legal, the compiler generates code, which varies depending on whether the call is **virtual** or not:
  - If `mem` is **virtual** and the call is made through a reference or pointer, then the compiler generates code to determine at run time which version to run based on the dynamic type of the object.
  - Otherwise, if the function is nonvirtual, or if the call is on an object (not a reference or pointer), the compiler generates a normal function call.

**As Usual, Name Lookup Happens before Type Checking**

As we've seen, functions declared in an inner scope do not overload functions declared in an outer scope (§ 6.4.1, p. 178). As a result, functions defined in a derived class do not overload members defined in its base class(es). As in any other scope, if a member in a derived class (i.e., in an inner scope) has the same name as a base-class member (i.e., a name defined in an outer scope), then the derived member hides the base-class member within the scope of the derived class. The base member is hidden even if the functions have different parameter lists:

```
struct Base {
    int memfcn();
};

struct Derived : Base {
    int memfcn(int); // hides memfcn in the base
};

Derived d; Base b;
b.memfcn(); // calls Base::memfcn
d.memfcn(10); // calls Derived::memfcn
d.memfcn(); // error: memfcn with no arguments is hidden
d.Base::memfcn(); // ok: calls Base::memfcn
```

The declaration of `memfcn` in `Derived` hides the declaration of `memfcn` in `Base`. Not surprisingly, the first call through `b`, which is a `Base` object, calls the version in the base class. Similarly, the second call (through `d`) calls the one from `Derived`. What can be surprising is that the third call, `d.memfcn()`, is illegal.

To resolve this call, the compiler looks for the name `memfcn` in `Derived`. That class defines a member named `memfcn` and the search stops. Once the name is found, the compiler looks no further. The version of `memfcn` in `Derived` expects an `int` argument. This call provides no such argument; it is in error.

**Virtual Functions and Scope**

We can now understand why virtual functions must have the same parameter list in the base and derived classes (§ 15.3, p. 298). If the base and derived members took arguments that differed from one another, there would be no way to call the derived version through a reference or pointer to the base class. For example:

```
class Base {
public:
    virtual int fcn();
};
```

```

class D1 : public Base {
public:
    // hides fcn in the base; this fcn is not virtual
    // D1 inherits the definition of Base::fcn()
    int fcn(int); // parameter list differs from fcn in Base
    virtual void f2(); // new virtual function that does not exist in Base
};

class D2 : public D1 {
public:
    int fcn(int); // nonvirtual function hides D1::fcn(int)
    int fcn(); // overrides virtual fcn from Base
    void f2(); // overrides virtual f2 from D1
};

```

The `fcn` function in `D1` does not override the `virtual fcn` from `Base` because they have different parameter lists. Instead, it hides `fcn` from the base. Effectively, `D1` has two functions named `fcn`: `D1` inherits a `virtual` named `fcn` from `Base` and defines its own, nonvirtual member named `fcn` that takes an `int` argument.

### Calling a Hidden Virtual through the Base Class

Given the classes above, let's look at several different ways to call these functions:

```

Base bobj;
D1 d1obj;
D2 d2obj;
Base *bp1 = &bobj, *bp2 = &d1obj, *bp3 = &d2obj;
bp1->fcn(); // virtual call, will call Base::fcn at run time
bp2->fcn(); // virtual call, will call Base::fcn at run time
bp3->fcn(); // virtual call, will call D2::fcn at run time
D1 *d1p = &d1obj;
D2 *d2p = &d2obj;
bp2->f2(); // error: Base has no member named f2
d1p->f2(); // virtual call, will call D1::f2() at run time
d2p->f2(); // virtual call, will call D2::f2() at run time

```

The first three calls are all made through pointers to the base class. Because `fcn` is `virtual`, the compiler generates code to decide at run time which version to call. That decision will be based on the actual type of the object to which the pointer is bound. In the case of `bp2`, the underlying object is a `D1`. That class did not override the `fcn` function that takes no arguments. Thus, the call through `bp2` is resolved (at run time) to the version defined in `Base`.

The next three calls are made through pointers with differing types. Each pointer points to one of the types in this hierarchy. The first call is illegal because there is no `f2()` in class `Base`. The fact that the pointer happens to point to a derived object is irrelevant.

For completeness, let's look at calls to the nonvirtual function `fcn(int)`:

```

Base *p1 = &d2obj;
D1 *p2 = &d2obj;
D2 *p3 = &d2obj;
p1->fcn(42); // error: Base has no version of fcn that takes an int
p2->fcn(42); // statically bound, calls D1::fcn(int)
p3->fcn(42); // statically bound, calls D2::fcn(int)

```

In each call the pointer happens to point to an object of type `D2`. However, the dynamic type doesn't matter when we call a nonvirtual function. The version that is called depends only on the static type of the pointer.

### Overriding Overloaded Functions

As with any other function, a member function (virtual or otherwise) can be overloaded. A derived class can override zero or more instances of the overloaded functions it inherits. If a derived class wants to make all the overloaded versions available through its type, then it must override all of them or none of them.

Sometimes a class needs to override some, but not all, of the functions in an overloaded set. It would be tedious in such cases to have to override every base-class version in order to override the ones that the class needs to specialize.



Instead of overriding every base-class version that it inherits, a derived class can provide a `using` declaration (§ 15.5, p. 306) for the overloaded member. A `using` declaration specifies only a name; it may not specify a parameter list. Thus, a `using` declaration for a base-class member function adds all the overloaded instances of that function to the scope of the derived class. Having brought all the names into its scope, the derived class needs to define only those functions that truly depend on its type. It can use the inherited definitions for the others.

The normal rules for a `using` declaration inside a class apply to names of overloaded functions (§ 15.5, p. 306); every overloaded instance of the function in the base class must be accessible to the derived class. The access to the overloaded versions that are not otherwise redefined by the derived class will be the access in effect at the point of the `using` declaration.

### Exercises Section 15.6.0

**Exercise 15.23:** Assuming class `D1` on page 309 had intended to override its inherited `fcn` function, how would you fix that class? Assuming you fixed the class so that `fcn` matched the definition in `Base`, how would the calls in that section be resolved?

## 15.7 Constructors and Copy Control

Like any other class, a class in an inheritance hierarchy controls what happens when objects of its type are created, copied, moved, assigned, or destroyed. As for any other class, if a class (base or derived) does not itself define one of the copy-control operations, the compiler will synthesize that operation. Also, as usual, the synthesized version of any of these members might be a deleted function.

### 15.7.1 Virtual Destructors

The primary direct impact that inheritance has on copy control for a base class is that a base class generally should define a `virtual` destructor (§ 15.2.1, p. 290). The destructor needs to be `virtual` to allow objects in the inheritance hierarchy to be dynamically allocated.

Recall that the destructor is run when we delete a pointer to a dynamically allocated object (§ 13.1.3, p. 278). If that pointer points to a type in an inheritance hierarchy, it is possible that the static type of the pointer might differ from the dynamic type (§ 15.2.3, p. 295) of the object being destroyed. For example, if we delete a pointer of type `Quote*`, that pointer might point at a `Bulk_quote` object (§ 15.2.2, p. 292). If the pointer points at a `Bulk_quote`, the compiler has to know that it should run the `Bulk_quote` destructor. As with any other function, we arrange to run the proper destructor by defining the destructor as `virtual` in the base class:

```
class Quote {
public:
    // virtual destructor needed if a base pointer pointing to a derived object is deleted
    virtual ~Quote() = default; // dynamic binding for the destructor
};
```

Like any other `virtual`, the `virtual` nature of the destructor is inherited. Thus, classes derived from `Quote` have `virtual` destructors, whether they use the synthesized destructor or define their own version. So long as the base class destructor is `virtual`, when we `delete` a pointer to base, the correct destructor will be run:

```
Quote *itemP = new Quote; // same static and dynamic type
delete itemP; // destructor for Quote called
itemP = new Bulk_quote; // static and dynamic types differ
delete itemP; // destructor for Bulk_quote called
```



Executing `delete` on a pointer to base that points to a derived object has undefined behavior if the base's destructor is not `virtual`.

Destructors for base classes are an important exception to the rule of thumb that if a class needs a destructor, it also needs copy and assignment (§ 13.1.4, p. 281). A base class almost always needs a destructor, so that it can make the destructor `virtual`. If a base class has an empty destructor in order to make it `virtual`, then the fact that the class has a destructor does not indicate that the assignment operator or copy constructor is also needed.



## Virtual Destructors Turn Off Synthesized Move

The fact that a base class needs a `virtual` destructor has an important indirect impact on the definition of base and derived classes: If a class defines a destructor—even if it uses `= default` to use the synthesized version—the compiler will not synthesize a move operation for that class (§ 13.6.2, p. 283).

### Exercises Section 15.7.1

**Exercise 15.24:** What kinds of classes need a `virtual` destructor? What operations must a `virtual` destructor perform?

## 15.7.2 Synthesized Copy Control and Inheritance

The synthesized copy-control members in a base or a derived class execute like any other synthesized constructor, assignment operator, or destructor: They memberwise initialize, assign, or destroy the members of the class itself. In addition, these synthesized members initialize, assign, or destroy the direct base part of an object by using the corresponding operation from the base class. For example,

- The synthesized `Bulk_quote` default constructor runs the `Disc_quote` default constructor, which in turn runs the `Quote` default constructor.
- The `Quote` default constructor default initializes the `bookNo` member to the empty string and uses the in-class initializer to initialize `price` to zero.
- When the `Quote` constructor finishes, the `Disc_quote` constructor continues, which uses the in-class initializers to initialize `qty` and `discount`.
- When the `Disc_quote` constructor finishes, the `Bulk_quote` constructor continues but has no other work to do.

Similarly, the synthesized `Bulk_quote` copy constructor uses the (synthesized) `Disc_quote` copy constructor, which uses the (synthesized) `Quote` copy constructor. The `Quote` copy constructor copies the `bookNo` and `price` members; and the `Disc_quote` copy constructor copies the `qty` and `discount` members.

It is worth noting that it doesn't matter whether the base-class member is itself synthesized (as is the case in our `Quote` hierarchy) or has a user-provided definition. All that matters is that the corresponding member is accessible (§ 15.5, p. 303) and that it is not a deleted function (§ 13.1.6, p. 283).

Each of our `Quote` classes use the synthesized destructor. The derived classes do so implicitly, whereas the `Quote` class does so explicitly by defining its (`virtual`) destructor as `= default`. The synthesized destructor is (as usual) empty and its implicit destruction part destroys the members of the class (§ 13.1.3, p. 278). In addition to destroying its own members, the destruction phase of a destructor in a derived class also destroys its direct base. That destructor in turn invokes the destructor for its own direct base, if any. And, so on up to the root of the hierarchy

## Base Classes and Deleted Copy Control in the Derived

The synthesized default constructor, or any of the copy-control members of either a base or a derived class, may be defined as deleted for the same reasons as in any other class (§ 13.1.6, p. 283, and § 13.6.2, p. 283). In addition, the way in which a base class is defined can cause a derived-class member to be defined as deleted:

- If the default constructor, copy constructor, copy-assignment operator, or destructor in the base class is deleted or inaccessible (§ 15.5, p. 303), then the corresponding member in the derived class is defined as deleted, because the compiler can't use the base-class member to construct, assign, or destroy the base-class part of the object.
- If the base class has an inaccessible or deleted destructor, then the synthesized default and copy constructors in the derived classes are defined as deleted, because there is no way to destroy the base part of the derived object.
- As usual, the compiler will not synthesize a deleted move operation. If we use `= default` to request a move operation, it will be a deleted function in the derived if the corresponding operation in the base is deleted or inaccessible, because the base class part cannot be moved. The move constructor will also be deleted if the base class destructor is deleted or inaccessible.

As an example, this base class, `B`,

```

class B {
public:
    B();
    B(const B&) = delete;
    // other members, not including a move constructor
};

class D : public B {
    // no constructors
};

D d; // ok: D's synthesized default constructor uses B's default constructor
D d2(d); // error: D's synthesized copy constructor is deleted
D d3(std::move(d)); // error: implicitly uses D's deleted copy constructor

```

has an accessible default constructor and an explicitly deleted copy constructor. Because the copy constructor is defined, the compiler will not synthesize a move constructor for class B (§ 13.6.2, p. 283). As a result, we can neither move nor copy objects of type B. If a class derived from B wanted to allow its objects to be copied or moved, that derived class would have to define its own versions of these constructors. Of course, that class would have to decide how to copy or move the members in its base-class part. In practice, if a base class does not have a default, copy, or move constructor, then its derived classes usually don't either.

### Move Operations and Inheritance

As we've seen, most base classes define a virtual destructor. As a result, by default, base classes generally do not get synthesized move operations. Moreover, by default, classes derived from a base class that doesn't have move operations don't get synthesized move operations either.

Because lack of a move operation in a base class suppresses synthesized move for its derived classes, base classes ordinarily should define the move operations if it is sensible to do so. Our `Quote` class can use the synthesized versions. However, `Quote` must define these members explicitly. Once it defines its move operations, it must also explicitly define the copy versions as well (§ 13.6.2, p. 283):

```

class Quote {
public:
    Quote() = default; // memberwise default initialize
    Quote(const Quote&) = default; // memberwise copy
    Quote(Quote&&) = default; // memberwise copy
    Quote& operator=(const Quote&) = default; // copy assign
    Quote& operator=(Quote&&) = default; // move assign
    virtual ~Quote() = default;
    // other members as before
};

```

Now, `Quote` objects will be memberwise copied, moved, assigned, and destroyed. Moreover, classes derived from `Quote` will automatically obtain synthesized move operations as well, unless they have members that otherwise preclude move.

### Exercises Section 15.7.2

**Exercise 15.25:** Why did we define a default constructor for `Disc_quote`? What effect, if any, would removing that constructor have on the behavior of `Bulk_quote`?

### 15.7.3 Derived-Class Copy-Control Members

As we saw in § 15.2.2 (p. 293), the initialization phase of a derived-class constructor initializes the base-class part(s) of a derived object as well as initializing its own members. As a result, the copy and move constructors for a derived class must copy/move the members of its base part as well as the members in the derived. Similarly, a derived-class assignment operator must assign the members in the base part of the derived object.

Unlike the constructors and assignment operators, the destructor is responsible only for destroying the resources allocated by the derived class. Recall that the members of an object are implicitly destroyed (§ 13.1.3, p. 278). Similarly, the base-class part of a derived object is destroyed automatically.



When a derived class defines a copy or move operation, that operation is responsible for copying or moving the entire object, including base-class members.

## Defining a Derived Copy or Move Constructor

When we define a copy or move constructor for a derived class, we ordinarily use the corresponding base-class constructor to initialize the base part of the object:

```
class Base { /* ... */ } ;
class D: public Base {
public:
    // by default, the base class default constructor initializes the base part of an object
    // to use the copy or move constructor, we must explicitly call that
    // constructor in the constructor initializer list
    D(const D& d): Base(d) /* copy the base members*/ /* initializers for members of D */ {
        //
    }
    D(D&& d): Base(std::move(d)) /* move the base members */ /* initializers for members of D */ {
        //
    }
};
```

The initializer `Base(d)` passes a `D` object to a base-class constructor. Although in principle, `Base` could have a constructor that has a parameter of type `D`, in practice, that is very unlikely. Instead, `Base(d)` will (ordinarily) match the `Base` copy constructor. The `D` object, `d`, will be bound to the `Base&` parameter in that constructor. The `Base` copy constructor will copy the base part of `d` into the object that is being created. Had the initializer for the base class been omitted,

```
// probably incorrect definition of the D copy constructor
// base-class part is default initialized, not copied
D(const D& d) /* member initializers, but no base-class initializer */ {
    //
}
```

the `Base` default constructor would be used to initialize the base part of a `D` object. Assuming `D`'s constructor copies the derived members from `d`, this newly constructed object would be oddly configured: Its `Base` members would hold default values, while its `D` members would be copies of the data from another object.



By default, the base-class default constructor initializes the base-class part of a derived object. If we want copy (or move) the base-class part, we must explicitly use the copy (or move) constructor for the base class in the derived's constructor initializer list.

## Derived-Class Assignment Operator

Like the copy and move constructors, a derived-class assignment operator must assign its base part explicitly:

```
// Base::operator=(const Base&) is not invoked automatically
D &D::operator=(const D &rhs) {
    Base::operator=(rhs); // assigns the base part
    // assign the members in the derived class, as usual,
    // handling self-assignment and freeing existing resources as appropriate
    return *this;
}
```

This operator starts by explicitly calling the base-class assignment operator to assign the members of the base part of the derived object. The base-class operator will (presumably) correctly handle self-assignment and, if appropriate, will free the old value in the base part of the left-hand operand and assign the new values from `rhs`. Once that operator finishes, we continue doing whatever is needed to assign the members in the derived class.

It is worth noting that a derived constructor or assignment operator can use its corresponding base class operation regardless of whether the base defined its own version of that operator or uses the synthesized version.

For example, the call to `Base::operator=` executes the copy-assignment operator in class `Base`. It is immaterial whether that operator is defined explicitly by the `Base` class or is synthesized by the compiler.

### Derived-Class Destructor

Recall that the data members of an object are implicitly destroyed after the destructor body completes (§ 13.1.3, p. 278). Similarly, the base-class parts of an object are also implicitly destroyed. As a result, unlike the constructors and assignment operators, a derived destructor is responsible only for destroying the resources allocated by the derived class:

```
class D: public Base {
public:
    // Base::~Base invoked automatically
    ~D() { /* do what it takes to clean up derived members */ }
};
```

Objects are destroyed in the opposite order from which they are constructed: The derived destructor is run first, and then the base-class destructors are invoked, back up through the inheritance hierarchy.

### Calls to Virtuals in Constructors and Destructors

As we've seen, the base-class part of a derived object is constructed first. While the base-class constructor is executing, the derived part of the object is uninitialized. Similarly, derived objects are destroyed in reverse order, so that when a base class destructor runs, the derived part has already been destroyed. As a result, while these base-class members are executing, the object is incomplete.

To accommodate this incompleteness, the compiler treats the object as if its type changes during construction or destruction. That is, while an object is being constructed it is treated as if it has the same class as the constructor; calls to `virtual` functions will be bound as if the object has the same type as the constructor itself. Similarly, for destructors. This binding applies to `virtuals` called directly or that are called indirectly from a function that the constructor (or destructor) calls.

To understand this behavior, consider what would happen if the derived-class version of a `virtual` was called from a base-class constructor. This `virtual` probably accesses members of the derived object. After all, if the `virtual` didn't need to use members of the derived object, the derived class probably could use the version in its base class. However, those members are uninitialized while a base constructor is running. If such access were allowed, the program would probably crash.



If a constructor or destructor calls a `virtual`, the version that is run is the one corresponding to the type of the constructor or destructor itself.

### Exercises Section 15.7.3

**Exercise 15.26:** Define the `Quote` and `Bulk_quote` copy-control members to do the same job as the synthesized versions. Give them and the other constructors print statements that identify which function is running. Write programs using these classes and predict what objects will be created and destroyed. Compare your predictions with the output and continue experimenting until your predictions are reliably correct.

### 15.7.4 Inherited Constructors

Under the new standard, a derived class can reuse the constructors defined by its direct base class. Although, as we'll see, such constructors are not inherited in the normal sense of that term, it is nonetheless common to refer to such constructors as “inherited.” For the same reasons that a class may initialize only its direct base class (§ 15.4, p. 302), a class may inherit constructors only from its direct base. A class cannot inherit the default, copy, and move constructors. If the derived class does not directly define these constructors, the compiler synthesizes them as usual.

A derived class inherits its base-class constructors by providing a `using` declaration that names its (direct) base class. As an example, we can redefine our `Bulk_quote` class (§ 15.4, p. 302) to inherit its constructors from `Disc_quote`:

```
class Bulk_quote : public Disc_quote {
public:
```

```

using Disc_quote::Disc_quote; // inherit Disc_quote's constructors
double net_price(std::size_t) const;
};

```

Ordinarily, a `using` declaration only makes a name visible in the current scope. When applied to a constructor, a `using` declaration causes the compiler to generate code. The compiler generates a derived constructor corresponding to each constructor in the base. That is, for each constructor in the base class, the compiler generates a constructor in the derived class that has the same parameter list.

These compiler-generated constructors have the form

```
derived(parms) : base(args) { }
```

where `derived` is the name of the derived class, `base` is the name of the base class, `parms` is the parameter list of the constructor, and `args` pass the parameters from the derived constructor to the base constructor. In our `Bulk_quote` class, the inherited constructor would be equivalent to

```

Bulk_quote(const std::string& book, double price, std::size_t qty, double disc):
    Disc_quote(book, price, qty, disc) { }

```

If the derived class has any data members of its own, those members are implicitly initialized (§ 7.1.4, p. 201).

### Characteristics of an Inherited Constructor

Unlike `using` declarations for ordinary members, a constructor `using` declaration does not change the access level of the inherited constructor(s). For example, regardless of where the `using` declaration appears, a `private` constructor in the base is a `private` constructor in the derived; similarly for `protected` and `public` constructors.

Moreover, a `using` declaration can't specify `explicit` or `constexpr`. If a constructor in the base is `explicit` (§ 7.5.4, p. 224) or `constexpr` (§ 7.5.6, p. 227), the inherited constructor has the same property.

If a base-class constructor has default arguments (§ 6.5.1, p. 179), those arguments are not inherited. Instead, the derived class gets multiple inherited constructors in which each parameter with a default argument is successively omitted. For example, if the base has a constructor with two parameters, the second of which has a default, the derived class will obtain two constructors: one with both parameters (and no default argument) and a second constructor with a single parameter corresponding to the left-most, non-defaulted parameter in the base class.

If a base class has several constructors, then with two exceptions, the derived class inherits each of the constructors from its base class. The first exception is that a derived class can inherit some constructors and define its own versions of other constructors. If the derived class defines a constructor with the same parameters as a constructor in the base, then that constructor is not inherited. The one defined in the derived class is used in place of the inherited constructor.

The second exception is that the default, copy, and move constructors are not inherited. These constructors are synthesized using the normal rules. An inherited constructor is not treated as a user-defined constructor. Therefore, a class that contains only inherited constructors will have a synthesized default constructor.

#### Exercises Section 15.7.4

**Exercise 15.27:** Redefine your `Bulk_quote` class to inherit its constructors.

## 15.8 Containers and Inheritance

When we use a container to store objects from an inheritance hierarchy, we generally must store those objects indirectly. We cannot put objects of types related by inheritance directly into a container, because there is no way to define a container that holds elements of differing types.

As an example, assume we want to define a `vector` to hold several books that a customer wants to buy. It should be easy to see that we can't use a `vector` that holds `Bulk_quote` objects. We can't convert `Quote` objects to `Bulk_quote` (§ 15.2.3, p. 296), so we wouldn't be able to put `Quote` objects into that `vector`.

It may be somewhat less obvious that we also can't use a `vector` that holds objects of type `Quote`. In this case, we can put `Bulk_quote` objects into the container. However, those objects would no longer be `Bulk_quote` objects:

```

vector<Quote> basket;
basket.push_back(Quote("0-201-82470-1", 50));
// ok, but copies only the Quote part of the object into basket

```

```

basket.push_back(Bulk_quote("0-201-54848-8", 50, 10, .25));
// calls version defined by Quote, prints 750, i.e., 15 * $50
cout << basket.back().net_price(15) << endl;

```

The elements in `basket` are `Quote` objects. When we add a `Bulk_quote` object to the vector its derived part (§ 15.2.2, p. 292) is ignored.



Because derived objects are “sliced down” (§ 15.2.3, p. 296) when assigned to a base-type object, containers and types related by inheritance do not mix well.

### Put (Smart) Pointers, Not Objects, in Containers

When we need a container that holds objects related by inheritance, we typically define the container to hold pointers (preferably smart pointers (§ 12.1, p. 274)) to the base class. As usual, the dynamic type of the object to which those pointers point might be the base-class type or a type derived from that base:

```

vector<shared_ptr<Quote>> basket;
basket.push_back(make_shared<Quote>("0-201-82470-1", 50));
basket.push_back(make_shared<Bulk_quote>("0-201-54848-8", 50, 10, .25));
// calls the version defined by Quote; prints 562.5, i.e., 15 * $50 * 0.75
cout << basket.back()->net_price(15) << endl;

```

Because `basket` holds `shared_ptr`s, we must dereference the value returned by `basket.back()` to get the object on which to run `net_price`. We do so by using `->` in the call to `net_price`. As usual, the version of `net_price` that is called depends on the dynamic type of the object to which that pointer points.

It is worth noting that we defined `basket` as `shared_ptr<Quote>`, yet in the second `push_back` we passed a `shared_ptr` to a `Bulk_quote` object. Just as we can convert an ordinary pointer to a derived type to a pointer to an base-class type (§ 15.2.2, p. 292), we can also convert a smart pointer to a derived type to a smart pointer to an base-class type. Thus, `make_shared<Bulk_quote>` returns a `shared_ptr<Bulk_quote>` object, which is converted to `shared_ptr<Quote>` when we call `push_back`. As a result, despite appearances, all of the elements of `basket` have the same type.

### Exercises Section 15.8.0

**Exercise 15.28:** Define a vector to hold `Quote` objects but put `Bulk_quote` objects into that vector. Compute the total `net_price` of all the elements in the vector.

**Exercise 15.29:** Repeat your program, but this time store `shared_ptr`s to objects of type `Quote`. Explain any discrepancy in the sum generated by the this version and the previous program. If there is no discrepancy, explain why there isn't one.

### 15.8.1 Writing a Basket Class

One of the ironies of object-oriented programming in C++ is that we cannot use objects directly to support it. Instead, we must use pointers and references. Because pointers impose complexity on our programs, we often define auxiliary classes to help manage that complexity. We'll start by defining a class to represent a basket:

```

class Basket {
public:
    // Basket uses synthesized default constructor and copy-control members
    void add_item(const std::shared_ptr<Quote> &sale) { items.insert(sale); }
    // prints the total price for each book and the overall total for all items in the basket
    double total_receipt(std::ostream&) const;
private:
    // function to compare shared_ptrs needed by the multiset member
    static bool compare(const std::shared_ptr<Quote> &lhs, const std::shared_ptr<Quote> &rhs) {
        return lhs->isbn() < rhs->isbn();
    }
    // multiset to hold multiple Quotes, ordered by the compare member
    std::multiset<std::shared_ptr<Quote>, decltype(compare)*> items{compare};
};

```



Our class uses a `multiset` (§ 11.2.1, p. 270) to hold the transactions, so that we can store multiple transactions for the same book, and so that all the transactions for a given book will be kept together.

The elements in our `multiset` are `shared_ptr`s and there is no less-than operator for `shared_ptr`. As a result, we must provide our own comparison operation to order the elements (§ 11.2.2, p. 270). Here, we define a `private static` member, named `compare`, that compares the `isbn`s of the objects to which the `shared_ptr`s point. We initialize our `multiset` to use this comparison function through an in-class initializer (§ 2.6.1, p. 57):

```
// multiset to hold multiple Quotes, ordered by the compare member
std::multiset<std::shared_ptr<Quote>, decltype(compare)*> items{compare};
```

This declaration can be hard to read, but reading from left to right, we see that we are defining a `multiset` of `shared_ptr`s to `Quote` objects. The `multiset` will use a function with the same type as our `compare` member to order the elements. The `multiset` member is named `items`, and we're initializing `items` to use our `compare` function.

## Defining the Members of Basket

The `Basket` class defines only two operations. We defined the `add_item` member inside the class. That member takes a `shared_ptr` to a dynamically allocated `Quote` and puts that `shared_ptr` into the `multiset`. The second member, `total_receipt`, prints an itemized bill for the contents of the basket and returns the price for all the items in the basket:

```
double Basket::total_receipt(ostream &os) const {
    double sum = 0.0; // holds the running total
    // iter refers to the first element in a batch of elements with the same ISBN
    // upper_bound returns an iterator to the element just past the end of that batch
    for (auto iter = items.cbegin(); iter != items.cend();
         iter = items.upper_bound(*iter)) {
        // we know there's at least one element with this key in the Basket
        // print the line item for this book
        sum += print_total(os, **iter, items.count(*iter));
    }
    os << "Total Sale: " << sum << endl; // print the final overall total
    return sum;
}
```

Our `for` loop starts by defining and initializing `iter` to refer to the first element in the `multiset`. The condition checks whether `iter` is equal to `items.cend()`. If so, we've processed all the purchases and we drop out of the `for`. Otherwise, we process the next book.

The interesting bit is the “increment” expression in the `for`. Rather than the usual loop that reads each element, we advance `iter` to refer to the next key. We skip over all the elements that match the current key by calling `upper_bound` (§ 11.3.5, p. 270). The call to `upper_bound` returns the iterator that refers to the element just past the last one with the same key as in `iter`. The iterator we get back denotes either the end of the set or the next book.

Inside the `for` loop, we call `print_total` (§ 15.1, p. 290) to print the details for each book in the basket:

```
sum += print_total(os, **iter, items.count(*iter));
```

The arguments to `print_total` are an `ostream` on which to write, a `Quote` object to process, and a count. When we dereference `iter`, we get a `shared_ptr` that points to the object we want to print. To get that object, we must dereference that `shared_ptr`. Thus, `**iter` is a `Quote` object (or an object of a type derived from `Quote`). We use the `multiset` count member (§ 11.3.5, p. 270) to determine how many elements in the `multiset` have the same key (i.e., the same ISBN).

As we've seen, `print_total` makes a virtual call to `net_price`, so the resulting price depends on the dynamic type of `**iter`. The `print_total` function prints the total for the given book and returns the total price that it calculated. We add that result into `sum`, which we print after we complete the `for` loop.

## Hiding the Pointers

Users of `Basket` still have to deal with dynamic memory, because `add_item` takes a `shared_ptr`. As a result, users have to write code such as

```
Basket bsk;
bsk.add_item(make_shared<Quote>("123", 45));
bsk.add_item(make_shared<Bulk_quote>("345", 45, 3, .15));
```

Our next step will be to redefine `add_item` so that it takes a `Quote` object instead of a `shared_ptr`. This new version of `add_item` will handle the memory allocation so that our users no longer need to do so. We'll define two versions, one that will copy its given object and the other that will move from it (§ 13.6.3, p. 283):

```
void add_item(const Quote& sale); // copy the given object
void add_item(Quote&& sale); // move the given object
```

The only problem is that `add_item` doesn't know what type to allocate. When it does its memory allocation, `add_item` will copy (or move) its `sale` parameter. Somewhere there will be a `new` expression such as:

```
new Quote(sale)
```

Unfortunately, this expression won't do the right thing: `new` allocates an object of the type we request. This expression allocates an object of type `Quote` and copies the `Quote` portion of `sale`. However, `sale` might refer to a `Bulk_quote` object, in which case, that object will be sliced down (§ 15.2.3, p. 296).

### Simulating Virtual Copy

We'll solve this problem by giving our `Quote` classes a `virtual` member that allocates a copy of itself.

```
class Quote {
public:
    // virtual function to return a dynamically allocated copy of itself
    // these members use reference qualifiers
    virtual Quote* clone() const & {
        return new Quote(*this);
    }
    virtual Quote* clone() && {
        return new Quote(std::move(*this));
    }
    // other members as before
};

class Bulk_quote : public Quote {
public:
    Bulk_quote* clone() const & {
        return new Bulk_quote(*this);
    }
    Bulk_quote* clone() && {
        return new Bulk_quote(std::move(*this));
    }
    // other members as before
};
```

Because we have a copy and a move version of `add_item`, we defined lvalue and rvalue versions of `clone` (§ 13.6.3, p. 283). Each `clone` function allocates a new object of its own type. The `const` lvalue reference member copies itself into that newly allocated object; the rvalue reference member moves its own data.

Using `clone`, it is easy to write our new versions of `add_item`:

```
class Basket {
public:
    void add_item(const Quote& sale) { // copy the given object
        items.insert(std::shared_ptr<Quote>(sale.clone()));
    }
    void add_item(Quote&& sale) { // move the given object
        items.insert(std::shared_ptr<Quote>(std::move(sale).clone()));
    }
    // other members as before
};
```

Like `add_item` itself, `clone` is overloaded based on whether it is called on an lvalue or an rvalue. Thus, the first version of `add_item` calls the `const` lvalue version of `clone`, and the second version calls the rvalue reference version. Note that in the rvalue version, although the type of `sale` is an rvalue reference type, `sale` (like any other variable) is an lvalue (§ 13.6.1, p. 283). Therefore, we call `move` to bind an rvalue reference to `sale`.



Our `clone` function is also virtual. Whether the `Quote` or `Bulk_quote` function is run, depends (as usual) on the dynamic type of `sale`. Regardless of whether we copy or move the data, `clone` returns a pointer to a newly allocated object, of its own type. We bind a `shared_ptr` to that object and call `insert` to add this newly allocated object to `items`. Note that because `shared_ptr` supports the derived-to-base conversion (§ 15.2.2, p. 292), we can bind a `shared_ptr<Quote>` to a `Bulk_quote*`.

### Exercises Section 15.8.1

**Exercise 15.30:** Write your own version of the `Basket` class and use it to compute prices for the same transactions as you used in the previous exercises.

## 15.9 Text Queries Revisited

As a final example of inheritance, we'll extend our text-query application from § 12.3 (p. 274). The classes we wrote in that section let us look for occurrences of a given word in a file. We'd like to extend the system to support more complicated queries. In our examples, we'll run queries against the following simple story:

```
Alice Emma has long flowing red hair.
Her Daddy says when the wind blows
through her hair, it looks almost alive,
like a fiery bird in flight.
A beautiful fiery bird, he tells her,
magical but untamed.
"Daddy, shush, there is no such thing,"
she tells him, at the same time wanting
him to tell her more.
Shyly, she asks, "I mean, Daddy, is there?"
```

Our system should support the following queries:

- Word queries find all the lines that match a given `string`:

```
Executing Query for:
Daddy Daddy occurs 3 times
(line 2) Her Daddy says when the wind blows
(line 7) "Daddy, shush, there is no such thing,"
(line 10) Shyly, she asks, "I mean, Daddy, is there?"
```

- Not queries, using the `~` operator, yield lines that don't match the query:

```
Executing Query for: ~(Alice)
~(Alice) occurs 9 times
(line 2) Her Daddy says when the wind blows
(line 3) through her hair, it looks almost alive,
(line 4) like a fiery bird in flight.
...
```

- Or queries, using the `|` operator, return lines matching either of two queries:

```
Executing Query for: (hair | Alice)
(hair | Alice) occurs 2 times
(line 1) Alice Emma has long flowing red hair.
(line 3) through her hair, it looks almost alive,
```

- And queries, using the `&` operator, return lines matching both queries:

```
Executing query for: (hair & Alice)
(hair & Alice) occurs 1 time
(line 1) Alice Emma has long flowing red hair.
```

Moreover, we want to be able to combine these operations, as in

```
fiery & bird | wind
```

We'll use normal C++ precedence rules (§ 4.12, p. 126) to evaluate compound expressions such as this example. Thus, this query will match a line in which both **fiery** and **bird** appear or one in which **wind** appears:

**Executing Query for: ((fiery & bird) | wind)**  
**((fiery & bird) | wind) occurs 3 times**  
**(line 2) Her Daddy says when the wind blows**  
**(line 4) like a fiery bird in flight.**  
**(line 5) A beautiful fiery bird, he tells her,**

Our output will print the query, using parentheses to indicate the way in which the query was interpreted. As with our original implementation, our system will display lines in ascending order and will not display the same line more than once.

### 15.9.1 An Object-Oriented Solution

### 15.9.2 The Query\_base and Query Classes

### 15.9.3 The Derived Classes

### 15.9.4 The eval Functions

## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

## Chapter 16

# Templates and Generic Programming

### Contents

---

16.1 Defining a Template .....	324
16.2 Template Argument Deduction .....	324
16.3 Overloading and Templates .....	324
16.4 Variadic Templates .....	324
16.5 Template Specializations .....	324
Chapter Summary .....	325
Defined Terms .....	325

---

## 16.1 Defining a Template

### 16.1.1 Function Templates

Instantiating a Function Template

Template Type Parameters

Nontype Template Parameters

inline and constexpr Function Templates

Writing Type-Independent Code

Template Compilation

Compilation Errors Are Mostly Reported during Instantiation

### 16.1.2 Class Templates

### 16.1.3 Template Parameters

### 16.1.4 Member Templates

### 16.1.5 Controlling Instantiations

### 16.1.6 Efficiency and Flexibility

## 16.2 Template Argument Deduction

### 16.2.1 Conversions and Template Type Parameters

### 16.2.2 Function-Template Explicit Arguments

### 16.2.3 Trailing Return Types and Type Transformation

### 16.2.4 Function Pointers and Argument Deduction

### 16.2.5 Template Argument Deduction and References

### 16.2.6 Understanding `std::move`

### 16.2.7 Forwarding

## 16.3 Overloading and Templates

## 16.4 Variadic Templates

### 16.4.1 Writing a Variadic Function Template

### 16.4.2 Pack Expansion

### 16.4.3 Forwarding Parameter Packs

## 16.5 Template Specializations

**Chapter Summary**

**Defined Terms**

# Part IV

## Advanced Topics

### Contents

Chapter 17 Specialized Library Facilities .....	327
Chapter 18 Tools for Large Programs .....	330
Chapter 19 Specialized Tools and Techniques .....	332
Appendix A The Library .....	335
Index .....	340



## Chapter 17

# Specialized Library Facilities

### Contents

---

17.1 The tuple Type .....	328
17.2 The bitset Type .....	328
17.3 Regular Expressions .....	328
17.4 Random Numbers .....	328
17.5 The IO Library Revisited .....	328
Chapter Summary .....	329
Defined Terms .....	329

---

## 17.1 The tuple Type

### 17.1.1 Defining and Initializing tuples

### 17.1.2 Using a tuple to Return Multiple Values

## 17.2 The bitset Type

### 17.2.1 Defining and Initializing bitsets

### 17.2.2 Operations on bitsets

## 17.3 Regular Expressions

### 17.3.1 Using the Regular Expression Library

### 17.3.2 The Match and Regex Iterator Types

### 17.3.3 Using Subexpressions

### 17.3.4 Using `regex_replace`

## 17.4 Random Numbers

### 17.4.1 Random-Number Engines and Distribution

### 17.4.2 Other Kinds of Distributions

## 17.5 The IO Library Revisited

### 17.5.1 Formatted Input and Output

### 17.5.2 Unformatted Input/Output Operations

### 17.5.3 Random Access to a Stream

Seek and Tell Functions

There Is Only One Marker

Repositioning the Marker

Accessing the Marker

Reading and Writing to the Same File

**Chapter Summary**

**Defined Terms**

# Chapter 18

## Tools for Large Programs

### Contents

---

18.1 Exception Handling .....	330
18.2 Namespaces .....	330
18.3 Multiple and Virtual Inheritance .....	330
Chapter Summary .....	331
Defined Terms .....	331

---

### 18.1 Exception Handling

#### 18.1.1 Throwing an Exception

#### 18.1.2 Catching an Exception

#### 18.1.3 Function try Blocks and Constructors

#### 18.1.4 The noexcept Exception Specification

#### 18.1.5 Exception Class Hierarchies

### 18.2 Namespaces

#### 18.2.1 Namespace Definitions

#### 18.2.2 Using Namespace Members

#### 18.2.3 Classes, Namespaces, and Scope

#### 18.2.4 Overloading and Namespaces

### 18.3 Multiple and Virtual Inheritance

#### 18.3.1 Multiple Inheritance

#### 18.3.2 Multiple Inheritance

#### 18.3.3 Class Scope under Multiple Inheritance

#### 18.3.4 Virtual Inheritance

#### 18.3.5 Constructors and Virtual Inheritance

**Chapter Summary**

**Defined Terms**

## Chapter 19

# Specialized Tools and Techniques

### Contents

---

19.1 Controlling Memory Allocation .....	333
19.2 Run-Time Type Identification .....	333
19.3 Enumerations .....	333
19.4 Pointer to Class Member .....	333
19.5 Nested Classes .....	333
19.6 union: A Space-Saving Class .....	333
19.7 Local Classes .....	333
19.8 Inherently Nonportable Features .....	333
Chapter Summary .....	334
Defined Terms .....	334

---

## 19.1 Controlling Memory Allocation

### 19.1.1 Overloading new and delete

### 19.1.2 Placement new Expressions

## 19.2 Run-Time Type Identification

### 19.2.1 The dynamic\_cast Operator

### 19.2.2 The typeid Operator

### 19.2.3 Using RTTI

### 19.2.4 The type\_info Class

## 19.3 Enumerations

## 19.4 Pointer to Class Member

### 19.4.1 Pointers to Data Members

### 19.4.2 Pointers to Member Functions

### 19.4.3 Using Member Functions as Callable Objects

## 19.5 Nested Classes

## 19.6 union: A Space-Saving Class

## 19.7 Local Classes

## 19.8 Inherently Nonportable Features

### 19.8.1 Bit-fields

### 19.8.2 volatile Qualifier

### 19.8.3 Linkage Directives: extern "C"



## Chapter Summary

## Defined Terms

# Appendix A

## The Library

### Contents

---

A.1 Library Names and Headers .....	336
A.2 Brief Tour of the Algorithms .....	339
A.3 Random Numbers .....	339

---

This Appendix contains additional details about the algorithms and random number parts of the library. We also provide a list of all the names we used from the standard library along with the name of the header that defines that name.

In Appendix10 we used some of the more common algorithms and described the architecture that underlies the algorithms. In this Appendix, we list all the algorithms, organized by the kinds of operations they perform.

In § 17.4 (p. 328) we described the architecture of the random number library and used several of the library's distribution types. The library defines a number of random number engines and 20 different distributions. In this Appendix, we list all the engines and distributions.

## A.1 Library Names and Headers

Our programs mostly did not show the actual `#include` directives needed to compile the program. As a convenience to readers, Table A.1 lists the library names our programs used and the header in which they may be found.

Table A.1: Standard Library Names and Headers

Name	Header
<code>abort</code>	<code>&lt;cstdlib&gt;</code>
<code>accumulate</code>	<code>&lt;numeric&gt;</code>
<code>allocator</code>	<code>&lt;memory&gt;</code>
<code>array</code>	<code>&lt;array&gt;</code>
<code>auto_ptr</code>	<code>&lt;memory&gt;</code>
<code>back_inserter</code>	<code>&lt;iterator&gt;</code>
<code>bad_alloc</code>	<code>&lt;new&gt;</code>
<code>bad_array_new_length</code>	<code>&lt;new&gt;</code>
<code>bad_cast</code>	<code>&lt;typeinfo&gt;</code>
<code>begin</code>	<code>&lt;iterator&gt;</code>
<code>bernoulli_distribution</code>	<code>&lt;random&gt;</code>
<code>bind</code>	<code>&lt;functional&gt;</code>
<code>bitset</code>	<code>&lt;bitset&gt;</code>
<code>boolalpha</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>cerr</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>cin</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>cmatch</code>	<code>&lt;regex&gt;</code>
<code>copy</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>count</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>count_if</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>cout</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>cref</code>	<code>&lt;functional&gt;</code>
<code>csub_match</code>	<code>&lt;regex&gt;</code>
<code>dec</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>default_float_engine</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>default_random_engine</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>deque</code>	<code>&lt;deque&gt;</code>
<code>domain_error</code>	<code>&lt;stdexcept&gt;</code>
<code>end</code>	<code>&lt;iterator&gt;</code>
<code>endl</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>ends</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>equal_range</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>exception</code>	<code>&lt;exception&gt;</code>
<code>fill</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>fill_n</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>find</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>find_end</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>find_first_of</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>find_if</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>fixed</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>flush</code>	<code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code>
<code>for_each</code>	<code>&lt;algorithm&gt;</code>
<code>forward</code>	<code>&lt;utility&gt;</code>
<code>forward_list</code>	<code>&lt;forward_list&gt;</code>
<code>free</code>	<code>&lt;cstdlib&gt;</code>
<code>front_inserter</code>	<code>&lt;iterator&gt;</code>
<code>fstream</code>	<code>&lt;fstream&gt;</code>
<code>function</code>	<code>&lt;functional&gt;</code>
<code>get</code>	<code>&lt;tuple&gt;</code>
<code>getline</code>	<code>&lt;string&gt;</code>
<code>greater</code>	<code>&lt;functional&gt;</code>
<code>hash</code>	<code>&lt;functional&gt;</code>

continued to Table

Name	Header
hex	<iostream>
hexfloat	<iostream>
ifstream	<fstream>
initializer_list	<initializer_list>
inserter	<iterator>
internal	<iostream>
ios_base	<ios_base>
isalpha	<cctype>
islower	<cctype>
isprint	<cctype>
ispunct	<cctype>
isspace	<cctype>
istream	<iostream>
istream_iterator	<iterator>
istringstream	<sstream>
isupper	<cctype>
left	<iostream>
less	<functional>
less_equal	<functional>
list	<list>
logic_error	<stdexcept>
lower_bound	<algorithm>
lround	<cmath>
make_move_iterator	<iterator>
make_pair	<utility>
make_shared	<memory>
make_tuple	<tuple>
malloc	<cstdlib>
map	<map>
max	<algorithm>
max_element	<algorithm>
mem_fn	<functional>
min	<algorithm>
move	<utility>
multimap	<map>
multiset	<set>
negate	<functional>
noboolalpha	<iostream>
normal_distribution	<random>
noshowbase	<iostream>
noshowpoint	<iostream>
noskipws	<iostream>
notl	<functional>
nothrow	<new>
nothrow_t	<new>
nunitbuf	<iostream>
nouppercase	<iostream>
nth_element	<algorithm>
oct	<iostream>
ofstream	<fstream>
ostream	<iostream>
ostream_iterator	<iterator>
ostringstream	<sstream>
out_of_range	<stdexcept>
pair	<utility>
partial_sort	<algorithm>
placeholders	<functional>
placeholders::_1	<functional>
plus	<functional>

continued to Table

Name	Header
priority_queue	<queue>
ptrdiff_t	<cstdint>
queue	<queue>
rand	<random>
random_device	<random>
range_error	<stdexcept>
ref	<functional>
regex	<regex>
regex_constants	<regex>
regex_error	<regex>
regex_match	<regex>
regex_replace	<regex>
regex_search	<regex>
remove_pointer	<type_traits>
remove_reference	<type_traits>
replace	<algorithm>
replace_copy	<algorithm>
reverse_iterator	<iterator>
right	<iostream>
runtime_error	<stdexcept>
scientific	<iostream>
set	<set>
set_difference	<algorithm>
set_intersection	<algorithm>
set_union	<algorithm>
setfill	<iomanip>
setprecision	<iomanip>
setw	<iomanip>
shared_ptr	<memory>
showbase	<iostream>
showpoint	<iostream>
size_t	<cstdint>
skipws	<iostream>
smatch	<regex>
sort	<algorithm>
sqrt	<cmath>
sregex_iterator	<regex>
ssub_match	<regex>
stable_sort	<algorithm>
stack	<stack>
stoi	<string>
strcmp	<cstring>
strcpy	<cstring>
string	<string>
stringstream	<sstream>
strlen	<cstring>
strncpy	<cstring>
strtod	<string>
swap	<utility>
terminate	<exception>
time	<ctime>
tolower	<cctype>
toupper	<cctype>
transform	<algorithm>
tuple	<tuple>
tuple_element	<tuple>
tuple_size	<tuple>
type_info	<typeinfo>
unexcepted	<exception>

continued to Table

Name	Header
uniform_int_distribution	<random>
uniform_real_distribution	<random>
uninitialized_copy	<memory>
uninitialized_fill	<memory>
unique	<algorithm>
unique_copy	<algorithm>
unique_ptr	<memory>
unitbuf	<iostream>
unordered_map	<unordered_map>
unordered_multimap	<unordered_map>
unordered_multiset	<unordered_set>
unordered_set	<unordered_set>
upper_bound	<algorithm>
uppercase	<iostream>
vector	<vector>
weak_ptr	<memory>

## A.2 Brief Tour of the Algorithms

### A.2.1 Algorithms to Find an Object

### A.2.2 Other Read-Only Algorithms

### A.2.3 Binary Search Algorithms

### A.2.4 Algorithms That Write Container Elements

### A.2.5 Partitioning and Sorting Algorithms

### A.2.6 General Reordering Operations

### A.2.7 Permutation Algorithms

### A.2.8 Set Algorithms for Sorted Sequences

### A.2.9 Minimum and Maximum Values

### A.2.10 Numeric Algorithms

## A.3 Random Numbers

### A.3.1 Random Number Distributions

### A.3.2 Random Number Engines

# Index